

TRÜBNER'S  
ORIENTAL SERIES.

THE  
SHÁHNÁMA OF FIRDAUSÍ

DONE INTO ENGLISH BY  
ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.  
AND  
EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

*"The homes that are the dwellings of to-day  
Will sink 'neath shower and sunshine to decay,  
But storm and rain shall never mar what I  
Have built—the palace of my poetry."*

FIRDAUSÍ

VOL. II

97897  
31/8/09.

LONDON  
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO. LTD  
DRYDEN HOUSE, GERRARD STREET, W.  
1906

*The rights of translation and of reproduction are reserved*

Printed by BALLANTYNE, HANSON & CO.  
At the Ballantyne Press

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
GENEALOGICAL TABLES . . . . .	3
ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	5
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	6

## THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY

### KAI KUBÁD—

#### SECT.

1. How Kai Kubád ascended the Throne and warred  
against Túrán . . . . . 11
2. How Rustam fought with Afrásiyáb . . . . . 13
3. How Afrásiyáb came to his Father . . . . . 16
4. How Pashang sued to Kai Kubád for Peace . . . . . 18
5. How Kai Kubád came to Istakhr of Párs . . . . . 22

### KAI KÁÚS—

#### PART I. THE WAR WITH MÁZANDARÁN

1. The Prelude . . . . . 29
2. How Káús sat upon the Throne and was tempted to  
invade Mázandarán . . . . . 30
3. How Zál gave Counsel to Káús . . . . . 36
4. How Káús went to Mázandarán . . . . . 38
5. The Message of Kai Káús to Zál and Rustam . . . . . 42

### THE SEVEN COURSES OF RUSTAM—

6. The First Course. How Rakhsh fought with a Lion 44
7. The Second Course. How Rustam found a Spring . 46
8. The Third Course. How Rustam fought with a  
Dragon . . . . . 48
9. The Fourth Course. How Rustam slew a Witch . 50
10. The Fifth Course. How Rustam took Úlád captive . 52

THE SEVEN COURSES OF RUSTAM (*continued*)—

SECT.	PAGE
11. The Sixth Course. How Rustam fought with the Dív Arzhang . . . . .	57
12. The Seventh Course. How Rustam slew the White Dív . . . . .	59
13. How Káuś wrote to the King of Mázarán . . . . .	63
14. How Rustam went on an Embassy to the King of Mázarán . . . . .	66
15. How Káuś fought with the King of Mázarán . . . . .	70
16. How Káuś returned to the Land of Írán and fare- welled Rustam . . . . .	76

PART II. THE DOINGS OF KAI KÁÚŚ IN THE LAND OF BAR-  
BARISTÁN AND OTHER TALES—

1. How Kai Káuś warred with the King of Hámávarán . . . . .	82
2. How Káuś asked to Wife Súdába, the Daughter of the King of Hámávarán . . . . .	86
3. How the King of Hámávarán made Káuś Prisoner . . . . .	88
4. How Afrásiyáb invaded the Land of Írán . . . . .	91
5. How Rustam sent a Message to the King of Hámá- varán . . . . .	93
6. How Rustam fought with Three Kings and delivered Káuś . . . . .	95
7. How Káuś sent a Message to Afrásiyáb . . . . .	98
8. How Káuś ordered the World . . . . .	101
9. How Káuś, beguiled by Iblis, ascended the Sky . . . . .	102
10. How Rustam brought back Káuś . . . . .	104

## THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF THE SEVEN WARRIORS—

11. How Rustam went with the Seven Warriors to the Hunting-ground of Afrásiyáb . . . . .	107
12. How Rustam fought with the Túránians . . . . .	111
13. How Pilsam fought with the Íránians . . . . .	112
14. How Afrásiyáb fled from the Battlefield . . . . .	116

## PART III. SUHRÁB—

1. The Prelude . . . . .	119
2. How Rustam went to the Chace . . . . .	120
3. How Rustam came to the City of Samangán . . . . .	122
4. How Tahmína, the Daughter of the King of Samangán, came to Rustam . . . . .	123

PART III. SUHRÁB (*continued*)—

SECT.	PAGE
5. The Birth of Suhráb . . . . .	126
6. How Suhráb chose his Charger . . . . .	127
7. How Afrásiyáb sent Bármán and Húmán to Suhráb .	129
8. How Suhráb came to White Castle . . . . .	131
9. How Suhráb fought with Gurdáfrid . . . . .	132
10. The Letter of Gazdaham to Káuś . . . . .	136
11. How Suhráb took White Castle . . . . .	137
12. How Káuś wrote to Rustam and summoned him from Zábulistán . . . . .	138
13. How Káuś was wroth with Rustam . . . . .	142
14. How Káuś and Rustam led forth the Host . . . .	148
15. How Rustam slew Zhanda Razm . . . . .	149
16. How Suhráb asked Hajír the Names of the Chiefs of Írán . . . . .	152
17. How Suhráb attacked the Army of Káuś . . . .	159
18. How Rustam fought with Suhráb . . . . .	162
19. How Rustam and Suhráb returned to Camp . . .	165
20. How Suhráb overthrew Rustam . . . . .	168
21. How Suhráb was slain by Rustam . . . . .	172
22. How Rustam asked Káuś for an Elixir . . . .	177
23. How Rustam lamented for Suhráb . . . . .	179
24. How Rustam returned to Zábulistán . . . . .	182
25. How Suhráb's Mother received the Tidings of his Death . . . . .	184

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH—

1. The Prelude . . . . .	191
2. The Story of the Mother of Siyáwush . . . . .	193
3. The Birth of Siyáwush . . . . .	195
4. How Siyáwush arrived from Zábulistán . . . .	197
5. The Death of the Mother of Siyáwush . . . .	199
6. How Súdába fell in Love with Siyáwush . . . .	200
7. How Siyáwush visited Súdába . . . . .	202
8. How Siyáwush visited the Bower the second Time .	206
9. How Siyáwush visited the Bower the third Time .	210
10. How Súdába beguiled Káuś . . . . .	211
11. How Súdába and a Sorceress devised a Scheme .	214
12. How Káuś inquired into the Matter of the Babes .	215
13. How Siyáwush passed through the Fire . . . .	218
14. How Siyáwush begged Súdába's Life of his Father .	222

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (*continued*)—

SECT.	PAGE
15. How Káuś heard of the Coming of Afrásiyáb . . . . .	224
16. How Siyáwush led forth the Host . . . . .	226
17. The Letter of Siyáwush to Kai Káuś . . . . .	229
18. The Answer of Kai Káuś to the Letter of Siyáwush . . . . .	230
19. How Afrásiyáb had a Dream and was afraid . . . . .	232
20. How Afrásiyáb inquired of the Sages concerning his Dream . . . . .	234
21. How Afrásiyáb took Counsel with the Nobles . . . . .	235
22. How Garsíwaz came to Siyáwush . . . . .	238
23. How Siyáwush made a Treaty with Afrásiyáb . . . . .	239
24. How Siyáwush sent Rustam to Káuś . . . . .	242
25. How Rustam gave the Message to Káuś . . . . .	243
26. How Káuś sent Rustam to Sístán . . . . .	246
27. The Answer of Káuś to the Letter of Siyáwush . . . . .	247
28. How Siyáwush took Counsel with Bahráṃ and Zanga . . . . .	249
29. How Zanga went to Afrásiyáb . . . . .	252
30. How Afrásiyáb wrote to Siyáwush . . . . .	255
31. How Siyáwush gave up the Host to Bahráṃ . . . . .	257
32. The Interview of Siyáwush with Afrásiyáb . . . . .	261
33. How Siyáwush displayed his Prowess before Afrá- siyáb . . . . .	263
34. How Afrásiyáb and Siyáwush went to the Chase . . . . .	267
35. How Pírán gave his Daughter to Siyáwush . . . . .	268
36. How Pírán spake to Siyáwush about Farangís . . . . .	270
37. How Pírán spake with Afrásiyáb . . . . .	272
38. The Wedding of Farangís and Siyáwush . . . . .	274
39. How Afrásiyáb bestowed a Province on Siyáwush . . . . .	276
40. How Siyáwush built Gang-dizh . . . . .	279
41. How Siyáwush discoursed with Pírán about the Future . . . . .	282
42. How Afrásiyáb sent Pírán into the Provinces . . . . .	285
43. How Siyáwush built Siyáwushgird . . . . .	285
44. How Pírán visited Siyáwushgird . . . . .	287
45. How Afrásiyáb sent Garsíwaz to Siyáwush . . . . .	289
46. The Birth of Farúd, the Son of Siyáwush . . . . .	291
47. How Siyáwush played at Polo . . . . .	292
48. How Garsíwaz returned and spake Evil before Afrásiyáb . . . . .	296
49. How Garsíwaz returned to Siyáwush . . . . .	301
50. The Letter of Siyáwush to Afrásiyáb . . . . .	306

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (*continued*)—

SECT.	PAGE
51. How Afrásiyáb came to fight with Siyáwush . . . . .	307
52. How Siyáwush had a Dream . . . . .	308
53. The Parting Words of Siyáwush to Farangís . . . . .	310
54. How Siyáwush was taken by Afrásiyáb . . . . .	312
55. How Farangís bewailed herself before Afrásiyáb . . . . .	317
56. How Siyáwush was slain by Gurwí . . . . .	320
57. How Pírán saved Farangís . . . . .	323
58. The Birth of Kai Khusrau . . . . .	325
59. How Pírán entrusted Kai Khusrau to the Shepherds . . . . .	328
60. How Pírán brought Kai Khusrau before Afrásiyáb . . . . .	330
61. How Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird . . . . .	333

PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH AND HOW GÍV  
BROUGHT KAI KHUSRAU TO ÍRÁN—

1. Firdausí's Lament over his old Age . . . . .	336
2. How Káuś heard of the Case of Siyáwush . . . . .	337
3. How Rustam came to Káuś . . . . .	338
4. How Rustam slew Súdába and led forth the Host . . . . .	340
5. How Farámarz slew Warázád . . . . .	341
6. How Surkha led his Troops to fight with Rustam . . . . .	344
7. How Afrásiyáb led forth the Host to avenge his Son . . . . .	348
8. How Pílsam was slain by Rustam . . . . .	350
9. How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam . . . . .	353
10. How Afrásiyáb sent Kai Khusrau to Khutan . . . . .	355
11. How Rustam reigned over Túrán for Seven Years . . . . .	357
12. How Zawára went to the Hunting-ground of Siyá- wush . . . . .	359
13. How Rustam harried the Land of Túrán . . . . .	360
14. How Rustam returned to Írán . . . . .	361
15. How Gúdarz had a Dream of Kai Khusrau . . . . .	363
16. How Gív went to Túrán in Quest of Kai Khusrau . . . . .	365
17. The Finding of Kai Khusrau . . . . .	369
18. How Gív and Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird . . . . .	373
19. How Kai Khusrau won Bihzád . . . . .	374
20. How Farangís went with Kai Khusrau and Gív to Írán . . . . .	377
21. How Kulbád and Nastíhan fled from Gív . . . . .	378
22. How Pírán pursued Kai Khusrau . . . . .	380
23. How Pírán contended with Gív . . . . .	382



## CONTENTS

PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH AND HOW GÍV  
BROUGHT KAI KHUSRAU TO ÍRÁN (*continued*)—

SECT.	PAGE
24. How Pírán was taken by Gív . . . . .	385
25. How Farangís delivered Pírán from Gív . . . . .	386
26. How Afrásiyáb found Pírán on the Way . . . . .	388
27. How Gív disputed with the Toll-man . . . . .	390
28. How Kai Khusrau crossed the Jíhúu . . . . .	392
29. How Kai Khusrau came to Ispahán . . . . .	394
30. How Kai Khusrau came to Káuś . . . . .	397
31. How Túś refused Allegiance to Kai Khusrau . . . . .	399
32. How Gúdarz was wroth with Túś . . . . .	402
33. How Gúdarz and Túś went before Káuś on the Matter of the Kingship . . . . .	403
34. How Túś and Fariburz went to the Castle of Bah- man and came back foiled . . . . .	405
35. How Kai Khusrau went to the Castle of Bahman and took it . . . . .	406
36. How Kai Khusrau returned in Triumph . . . . .	409
37. How Káuś set Khusrau upon the Throne of King- ship . . . . .	411

INDEX . . . . .	413
-----------------	-----

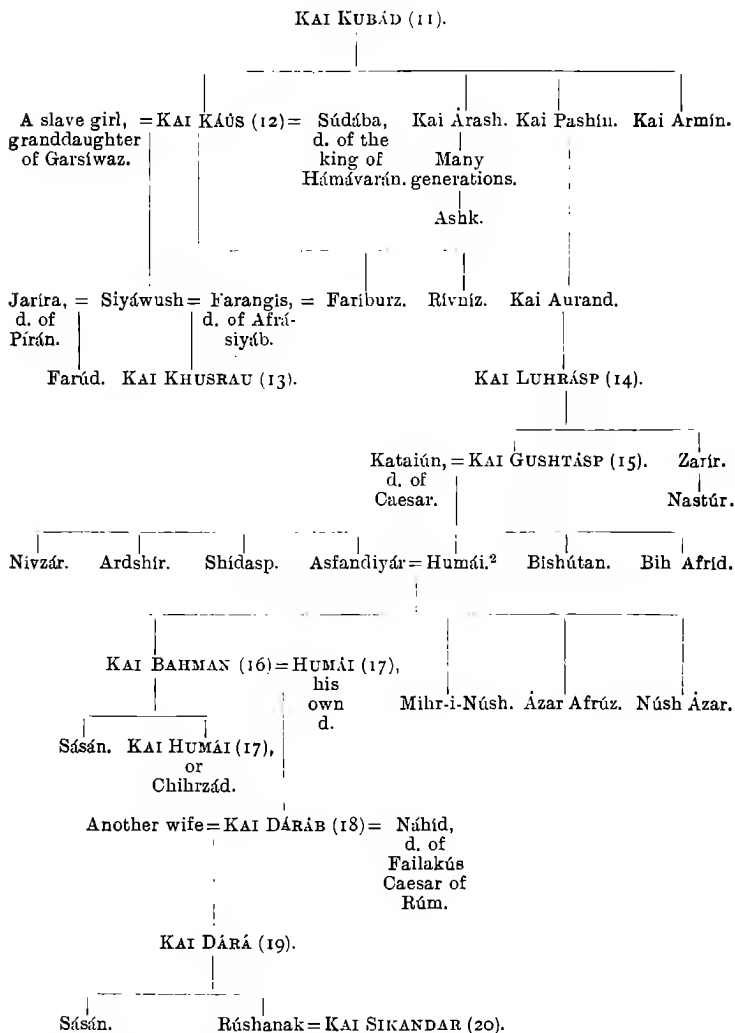
# THE SHÁHNÁMA

VOL. II.

A

# GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE KAIÁNIANS<sup>1</sup>

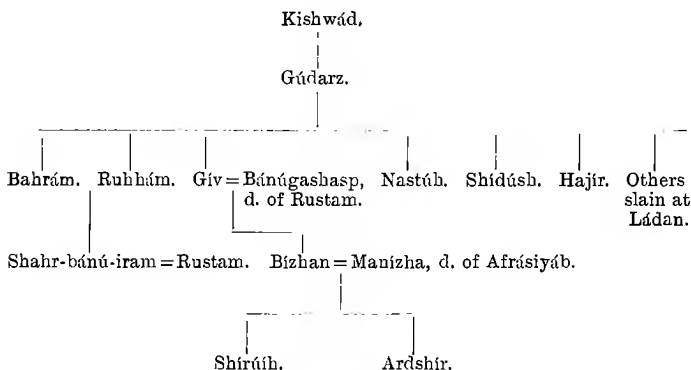
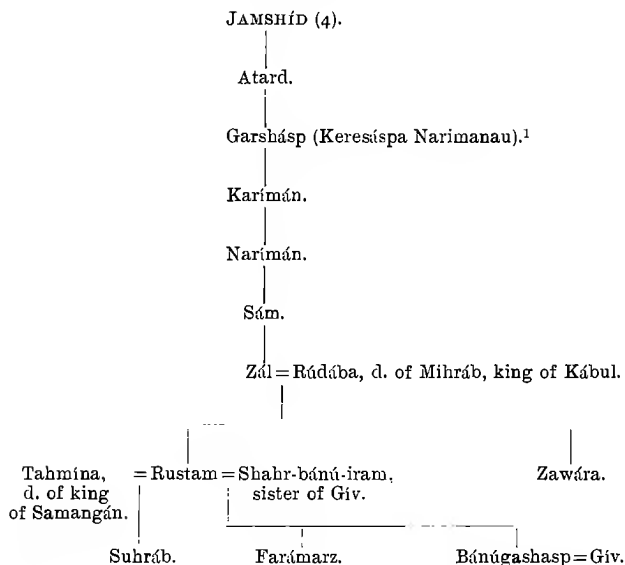
(ACCORDING TO THE SHÁHNÁMA)



<sup>1</sup> The Bundahish occasionally interpolates a generation, but the variations are not of importance.

<sup>2</sup> Dakíkí is the authority for this marriage, and his account comes from older sources. Firdausi ignores the marriage, and his story is inconsistent with it.

# GENEALOGICAL TABLES OF THE ÍRÁNIAN HEROES



<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 172.

# ABBREVIATIONS

C.—Macan's edition of the Sháhname.	
L.—Lumsden's	do.
P.—Mohl's	do.
T.—Tihrán	do.
V.—Vullers'	do.

- DEI. J. Darmesteter, *Études Iraniennes*.
- DHA. The History of Antiquity. From the German of Professor Max Duncker. By the late Evelyn Abbott, M.A.
- DZA. Professor Darmesteter's Trans. of the Zandavasta in the Sacred Books of the East. References to Parts<sup>1</sup> and pages.
- GHP. Histoire des Perses par le Comte de Gobineau.
- GKS. Kleine Schriften von Alfred von Gutschmid.
- HEP. Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsis. By Martin Haug, Ph.D. Edited and enlarged by E. W. West, Ph.D.
- KUR. Kitab-i-Yamini of Al Utbi. Translated by the Rev. James Reynolds, B.A.
- MHP. History of Persia. By Sir John Malcolm, G.C.B.
- MM. Maçoudi: Les Prairies d'Or texte et traduction par C. Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille.
- MSJP. A Second Journey through Persia, &c. By James Morier, Esq.
- NIN. Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke.

---

<sup>1</sup> The second edition of Part I. is referred to unless otherwise specified.

- RP. Professor Rawlinson's Parthia in The Story of the Nations' Series.
- SAC. The Chronology of Ancient Nations . . . of Albírúni . . . translated . . . by Dr. C. Edward Sachau.
- WPT. Dr. E. W. West's Trans. of the Pahlaví Texts in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts and pages.
- ZT. Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid Tabari. Traduite sur la version Persane d'Abou-'Ali Mo'hammed Bel'ami par M. Hermann Zotenberg.

## NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION

*i* as in "water."

*î* as in "pique."

*û* as in "rude."

*a* as in "servant."

*i* as in "sin."

*u* as in "foot."

*ai* as *i* in "time."

*au* as *ou* in "cloud."

*g* is always hard as in "give."

*kh* as *ch* in the German "buch."

*zh* as *z* in "azure."

## II

# THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY

The poet continues and ends the story of the great feud between the descendants of Íraj and Túr. It is set out at large and ends with the triumph of the former.

He then tells of the coming of Zarduhsht (Zoroaster), of his evangel, and of the religious wars that ensued, taking occasion in this connexion to rescue from oblivion the name of the poet Dakíkí.

He next narrates the extinction of the heroic race of Írán, and the circumstances that led to the conquests of Sikandar (Alexander the Great), with whose death the Kaiánian dynasty comes to an end. <sup>b</sup>

## NOTE

The word Kai, from which the adjective Kaiánian is derived, is found in the Vedas under the form of Kavi, where it means a seer or priest, and is especially applied to the priest who, by drinking the intoxicating juice of the Soma plant,<sup>1</sup> became inspired. In the *Zandavasta* Kai is used in two very different senses. In one of these, and particularly in the sacred hymns known as the *Gáthas*, it is synonymous with 'heretic,' in the other it forms a part of the names of a whole dynasty of Íránian heroes, who are known collectively as the *Kávyans* or *Kaians*. This two-fold use has been appealed to by Haug to support his theory that Zoroastrianism sprang from a schism among the Brahmins—a theory which has been much disputed.<sup>2</sup>

In the *Sháhnáma* also the word is used in two senses, as a general term for a great king or ruler, and as the distinctive title of the royal house of Kubád, the founder of the Kaiánian dynasty. This consists of ten Sháhs, who fall into two groups. The first contains three Sháhs—Kubád himself, his son Káuś, and his great grandson

---

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 8.

<sup>2</sup> For the above, see HEP, 289 *seq.*; DZA, i. xxx.



Khusrau. With the last of these the old epic cycle of the poem comes to an end, and up to this point the Kaiánian may be regarded as the complement of the Pishdádian dynasty. We are then introduced to the second group—the Sháhs of the house of Luhrásp—Luhrásp himself, Gushtásp, Bahman, Humái, Dáráb, Dárá, and Sikandar. Lulirásp, though of Kaian race, is represented as owing his accession to the throne to the nomination of Khusrau. With the accession of Luhrásp a new epic motive is introduced—a religious one—and the scene of action is shifted to Balkh. A very noticeable feature of this part of the poem is the prevalence of the termination ‘asp,’ the Persian word for ‘horse,’ in the names of the chief characters. Thus we have Luhrásp himself, his son Gushtásp, and the great minister Jámásp, while we know from other sources that the name of the father of Zarduhsht (Zoroaster) was Paurúshasp.<sup>1</sup> It is, however, still more remarkable to find that the reigning king of Túrán of the period is named Arjásp.<sup>2</sup> It looks as if the wars, admittedly religious, between Gushtásp and Arjásp were not waged between the Íránians and Túránians at all, though they came in time to be looked back upon as such, but were wars between the Íránians themselves due to the dissensions caused by the evangel of Zarduhsht.

Professor Duncker, who is concerned to antedate the Zandavasta as far as possible, is inclined to regard Luhrásp and Gushtásp as kings of an ancient dynasty flourishing at Balkh about 1000 B.C.<sup>3</sup> This of course is opposed to the old notion which sought to identify and to synchronise the chief characters and events of the Kaiánian dynasty with the accounts found in Greek authors of the so-called Median, and first Persian, empires.<sup>4</sup> So far as authentic history is concerned, however, it may be stated broadly that there is no common ground between the Sháhnáma and the works of ancient Greek writers till we reach the epoch of Sikandar—Alexander the Great—and even then the consensus is due to the fact that Firdausí derived his information from the modified version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes—a romantic legendary history of Alexander the Great—which he found ready to his hand among his other authorities. With regard to legend the case is different. The two main Greek versions of the youth of Cyrus the Great may be identified in the Sháhnáma, that of Herodotus in the account of the birth and bringing up of Kai Khusrau, and that of Ctesias in the account of

<sup>1</sup> WPT, i. 141.

<sup>2</sup> An Arjásp appears among the chiefs of Afrásiyáb as early as the reign of Kai Káuś. See p. 264.

<sup>3</sup> DHA, v. 48.

<sup>4</sup> See, for instance, MHP, i. 512 *seq.*

the early days of Ardshír Pápakán, the founder of the Sásánian dynasty.<sup>1</sup> This does not imply, as in the case of Sikandar, that Firdausí was in any way indebted to Greek sources, but that he and the Greek writers both availed themselves of the same cycle of legend at intervals many centuries apart. The same may be said of the charming story of Gushtásp in Rúm, which will appear in a later volume of this translation. A Greek version of the love-interest in this story is preserved for us in the *Deipnosophistæ* of Athenæus,<sup>2</sup> who quotes Chares of Mytilene—an official at the court of Alexander the Great—as his authority. Similarly in Humái, the seventeenth Sháh, we may have a reminiscence of Semiramis.

With regard to the Kaiánian dynasty in general we may say that in no other part of the poem is the epic subject-matter so abundant or of finer quality, nor in any part of this long dynasty superior to what is to be found in the reign of Kai Káuś in this volume.

---

<sup>1</sup> See NIN, 3; GKS, iii. 133; and for the accounts of Herodotus and Ctesias, DHA, v. 335 *seq.*

<sup>2</sup> Bk. xiii., ch. 35, ed. A. Meineke.

# ERRATA

Page 61, line 9, *for* 'bears' *read* 'bear.'

Page 69, line 20, *add* semicolon at end.

Page 157, line 7, *for* 'spoken' *read* 'unspoken.'

Page 221, line 13, *for* 'unled' *read* 'unsoiled.'

Page 257, line 2 from bottom, *delete* full stop *and insert* comma at end.

Page 265, line 18, *delete* comma at end.

Page 281, line 22, *for* 'Irán' *read* 'Túrán.'

Page 306, line 14, *add* comma at end.

Page 384, line 7 from bottom, *delete* comma *and insert* full stop at end.

Page 390, bottom, *delete* " *and insert* ' '.

## KAI KUBÁD

HE REIGNED ONE HUNDRED YEARS

## ARGUMENT

Kai Kubád ascends the throne, and defeats the Túránians. Rustam in this his first campaign greatly distinguishes himself, and nearly takes Afrásiyáb prisoner. Pashang, the father of Afrásiyáb and ruler of Túrán, sues for peace and terms are arranged. Kai Kubád rewards Zál, Rustam, and others for their services, and makes Istakhr his capital. At the end of a long and glorious reign he dies after appointing his son Kai Káuś as his successor.

## NOTE

Kai Kubád is mentioned at least twice in the Zandavasta, where he appears under the name of Kaváta, or Kavi Kaváta, and the name of his son Kai Káuś appears both there and in the Vedas. We have no accounts of Kai Kubád's ancestry in the poem beyond the vague statement that he was descended from Faridún.<sup>1</sup> He is described indeed as being brought by Rustam from Mount Alburz—the great mythical range which was supposed to encircle the earth. According to the Bundahish, Kai Kubád, like Dáráb after him, was exposed at birth and was found and adopted by Zav, the son of Tahmásp, the ninth Sháh.<sup>2</sup> The same authority describes him as reigning for fifteen years.<sup>3</sup>

## § I

*How Kai Kubád ascended the Throne and warred  
against Túrán*

WHEN Kai Kubád acceded to the throne,  
And donned the jewelled crown, chiefs such as Zál,  
Káran the warrior, Kishwád, Kharrád,

V. 298

<sup>1</sup> For Kai Kubád's genealogy, see ZT, i. 407.

<sup>2</sup> WPT, i. 136.

<sup>3</sup> *Id.* 150.

And valorous Barzín, flocked round and scattered  
Gems over that new crown. They said: "O Sháh  
Prepare to fight the Turkmans."

Hearing this

He went, reviewed his host, and on the morrow  
Marched forth while shouts rose from his tent-enclosure.  
Then Rustam armed and like an angry elephant  
Sent up the dust, the troops arrayed their ranks,  
And girt their loins for bloodshed. On one wing  
Mihráb the master of Kábul was stationed,  
Upon the other doughty Gustaham.  
Káran the warrior was in the centre  
With bold Kishwád the shatterer of hosts,  
While Rustam led the van with chiefs and heroes,  
And Zál and Kai Kubád as their supports.  
Here there was fire, there storm, while Káwa's standard  
Amid the van made earth red, violet,  
And yellow, and the seated world was like  
A wave-tossed barque upon the sea of Chín.  
The deserts and the dales were carpeted  
By shields on shields, the falchions gleamed like lamps,  
And all the world became a sea of pitch  
Whereon a hundred thousand tapers burned.  
Thou wouldst have said: "The sun hath lost its

way

Frayed by the trumpets' blare and warriors' shouts!"  
The hosts encountered, none knew van from rear.

Káran o'erthrew ten warriors at each charge;  
Now wheeling to the left, now to the right,  
And seeking to wreak vengeance on all sides,  
He made earth mountain-like with slain, astounding  
The bravest Turkmans. Seeing Shamásás,  
Who raised the war-cry lion-like, he charged,  
Unsheathed his sword, smote his foe's head, and  
shouted:—

"The famed Káran am I," while Shamásás

V. 299

V. 300

Sank to the ground and perished in a breath.  
 The manner of this ancient sky is so,  
 At whiles like arrow and at whiles like bow !

## § 2

*How Rustam fought with Afrásiyáb*

When Rustam saw the doings of Káran,  
 And what war is, he went to Zál and said :—  
 " Tell me, O paladin of paladins !  
 Where doth malevolent Afrásiyáb  
 Stand in the fight ? Describe his garb and banner.  
 I see a fluttering flag of violet.  
 Describe him that I may encounter him,  
 And so exalt my head among the chieftains.  
 To-day will I lay hold upon his girdle  
 And bring him hither haled upon his face."

V. 301

Zál answered : " Hearken unto me, my son !  
 And run no risks to-day. He is a Dragon,  
 Whose breath is fire—a Cloud of bale in war.<sup>1</sup>  
 His flag and mail are black, his helm and brassards  
 Of iron flecked with gold, his plume is sable.  
 Avoid him, he is brave, his fortune sleepless."

" Be not concerned for me," was Rustam's answer.  
 " With God mine aid, heart, sword, and arm my ramparts, V. 302  
 Although he be a Dragon and a dív  
 Yet will I bring him by the belt, and thou  
 Shalt see me make him lifeless in the mellay,  
 So dealing that Pashang's troops shall bewail him."

That lion-youth—the shelter of the host—  
 Urged on his steed—Rakhsh of the brazen hoofs—  
 And shouting mid the trumpet-blare approached  
 The army of Túrán. Afrásiyáb  
 Beheld amazed the lad not fully grown  
 And asked : " Who is he, for I know him not—

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 53.

Yon Dragon broken loose in such a fashion?"

One said: "The son of Zál the son of Sám.  
Dost thou not see him with his grandsire's mace?  
He is a youth and eager for distinction."

Then like a vessel lifted by the waves  
Afrásiyáb came forth while Rustam clipped  
Rakhsh firmly, shouldering his massive mace,  
But hung it to his saddle when he closed;  
Then, having caught the monarch by the belt,  
And dragged him from his poplar saddle, hoped  
To carry him to Kai Kubád to tell  
The story of this first day's fight; but through  
The chieftain's weight and Rustam's grasp the girdle  
Snapped, and the king came headlong to the ground,  
Whereat his cavaliers surrounded him,  
While Rustam, when the chief escaped his clutch,  
Gnawed at his hand's back in chagrin and cried:—  
"Why did I take him not beneath the armpit  
And simply make him handfast with his girdle?"

While from the elephants' backs the sound of bells  
Rose, and the drums were heard for miles, men brought  
The Sháh glad tidings: "Rustam," they reported,  
"Brake through the centre of the Turkman host  
And reached their general whose standard now  
Hath disappeared, for Rustam seized his girdle  
And flung him easily. The Turkmans yelled,  
The valiant chiefs formed round their fallen king,  
And bare him off. When vanquished thus he mounted  
A fleet steed, fled toward the plain, and left  
His host to save his life."

At this good news  
The Sháh gave orders to his troops to fall  
In mass like wind upon the enemy  
And utterly o'erthrow them, fruit and root.  
He rose himself like fire, and all his host  
Heaved like a stormy sea. Zál and Mihráb,

The Lion, went forth keen and valorous ;  
 The din of battle rose with falchion-flash  
 And thud of shaft, while heads grew dazed as axes  
 Crashed on gold helm and shield. Thou wouldst  
 have said:—

V. 304

“ A cloud somewhence hath risen and is flecking  
 Yon oranges with magic cinnabar ! ”  
 Upon that day of battle sank and rose  
 Blood to the Fish and dust-clouds to the Moon,  
 While through the horse-hoofs on that spacious plain  
 One earth flew up to make another heaven !<sup>1</sup>  
 Heroic Rustam in the fight that day  
 With dirk and lasso, mace and scimitar,  
 Clave into pieces, rent and brake and bound  
 The heads, breasts, feet, and hands of warriors,  
 For eight and fifty score of gallant chiefs  
 That Lion slaughtered in a single charge.

Zál gazing on his son illustrious  
 In Grace and might felt his heart throb with joy  
 To see such prowess, while the Turkmans pressed  
 Thus by the Magian host sought Dámaghán,  
 And thence fled toward Jíhún with stricken hearts,  
 With din and dudgeon, with their weapons broken  
 And girdles snapped—a trumpless, drumless mob.

V. 305

The paladins that led the Íránian host  
 Turned from pursuing and drew near the Sháh,  
 All plunder-wearied, bringing band on band  
 Of captive Turkmans. When the troops were back  
 In camp again the mighty men approached  
 The monarch of the world, extolling him,  
 While Rustam also went before the Sháh,  
 Who seated him on one side of the throne  
 And famous Zál upon the other one.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, “ The earth became six and the heaven eight.” Firdausí is speaking of the Seven Climes, and of the heavens of the Seven Planets only, in this passage. Cf. vol. i. pp. 71, 72.



## § 3

*How Afrásiyáb came to his Father*

Upon the Turkman side Afrásiyáb  
 Fled to the river-bank and tarried there  
 For seven days, made ready on the eighth,  
 And gat him to his sire, all rage and grief;  
 His tongue was long although his hands were shortened.  
 "O famous king!" said he, "the fault was thine  
 In seeking war; the mighty men of old  
 Gave kings no precedent for breach of faith.  
 The offspring of Íraj polluteth still  
 The earth; that poison gnaweth yet; they come  
 Without a break to lord it o'er the world.  
 Now 'tis Kubád; he hath assumed the crown  
 And flung the gates of vengeance wide again.  
 A cavalier of Sám's seed hath appeared,  
 By Zál named Rustam. Like a crocodile  
 Enraged he charged, and thou hadst said: "His breath  
 Will burn the world." He sped o'er hill and dale,  
 And plied mace, sword, and stirrup. All the air  
 Rang with his crashing mace. Life was not worth  
 A pinch of dust to me. He overthrew  
 Our host; none ever saw a sight so strange!  
 He spied my flag, put down his massive mace,  
 And snatched me from my poplar saddle so  
 That thou hadst said I was not one gnat's weight!  
 My girdle and my hauberk's fastening snapped,  
 I tumbled from his grasp beneath his feet.  
 No lion hath such strength, his feet touch earth,  
 His head is in the clouds. My cavaliers  
 Came up and saved me from that Mountain's clutches.  
 Thou know'st how kingly are my heart and hand,  
 My prowess, deeds, and enterprise, yet I  
 Am but a fibre in his grasp. Such worship

Perturbeth me. I saw a monstrous form  
 With lion's claws. My wits and senses fled.  
 Hill, cave, and level road were one to him  
 When his mad Elephant was put to speed.  
 A thousand maces in good sooth and more  
 Fell on his famous helm: thou wouldst have said:—  
 'They fashioned him of iron, brought him up  
 On stones and brass!' What is a sea or mountain,  
 Fierce lion or mad elephant to him?  
 He pricketh forth as on a hunting-day,  
 And battle is his pastime. Had such might  
 Been Sám's no Turkman chief would now survive.  
 We can but sue for peace, because thy troops  
 Give way before him. I, an atheling,  
 Thine army's stay and thine own help in need,  
 Have no strength left to fight with him. Go to,  
 Take counsel and make peace. They gave the land,  
 Assigned of old by Farídún to Túr,  
 To me; and that apportionment was just.<sup>1</sup>  
 Revive not ancient feuds for, if we pass  
 The boundary and prosecute the war,  
 We shall but make the world strait to ourselves.  
 Thou know'st that sight is better than report,  
 For hearsay's belly is an empty one.  
 To fight Írán appeared a jest to thee,  
 The soldiers think that it hath gone too far.  
 Defer not to to-morrow this day's work;  
 Who knoweth what to-morrow may bring forth?  
 The roses blooming in the garden now  
 To-morrow thou wouldst pluck—when they are  
 worthless!  
 Mark what a wealth of golden equipage,  
 Of golden helmets and of golden shields,  
 How many Arab steeds with golden bits,  
 What Indian scimitars with golden scabbards,

V 307

<sup>1</sup> Referring to the partition in the days of Zav. Vol. i. p. 371.

V. 308

And, over and above these, what famed chieftains  
 The blast hath vilely borne away—Kulbád,  
 And bold Bármán who hunted lions only,  
 And Kharzarwán, whom Zál hath dashed to pieces  
 And shown his massive mace's mastery,  
 Fierce Shamásás—the shelter of the host—  
 Slain by Káran upon the battlefield,  
 And, in addition to these famous men,  
 Ten thousand others slaughtered in this war;  
 Worse still, observe the breach of fame and honour  
 That we can never bind. Though I have slain  
 One famous chief—illustrious Ighríras—  
 Let fortune's good and ill cry quits to-day,  
 And leave to-morrow for the reckoning;  
 Because the haughty chiefs have come to me,  
 The heroes, each one with his flag behind him,  
 And told me much that happened when I fled  
 In dudgeon and they followed. Now revive not  
 The memory of the past, but strive to make  
 A peace with Kai Kubád, lest hosts should come  
 Upon thee from four sides: on this side Rustam,  
 Whose prowess in the fight outshineth Sol;  
 On that Káran, whose eye ne'er saw defeat;  
 Upon the third Kishwád, the golden-helmed,  
 Who brought the captives from Ámul; Mihráb  
 Is on the fourth, next to the Sháh in place,  
 Lord of Kábul, a man of rede and Grace."

## § 4

*How Pashang sued to Kai Kubád for Peace*

V. 309

The chieftain of Túrán, whose eyes were tearful,  
 Was all astonished at Afrásiyáb  
 That he should have bethought him of such words,  
 And that his soul had turned to what was just.  
 He chose a prudent envoy for Irán,

And wrote a letter worthy of the Artang,<sup>1</sup>  
 Decked with a hundred colours and designs:—  
 "In the name of Him who ruleth sun and moon,  
 And gave to us the faculty of praise!  
 May He accept the soul of Farídún,  
 From whom our race deriveth, warp and woof.  
 Hear now, O famous Kai Kubád! and I  
 Will utter words of kingly rede and right.  
 Túr brought calamity on blest Íraj  
 Upon a question touching crown and throne.  
 On this I say that feuds should not endure  
 For ever, and if vengeance for Íraj  
 Was owing it was wreaked by Minúchihr.  
 In that first settlement by Farídún,  
 Whose object was a just apportionment,  
 It will be well for us to acquiesce  
 And not transgress the precedents of kings.  
 From Turkestán to Má wara 'u'n-Nahr,  
 Whose boundary is Jíhún, that is our share.  
 When Farídún was Sháh Íraj ne'er saw it,  
 But had from him his blessing and Írán.  
 If we transgress these boundaries and fight  
 We make earth strait to us, the scimitars  
 Will clash, God will be wroth, and we shall lose  
 Our portion in both worlds. What Farídún  
 Divided unto Salm, Túr, and Íraj,  
 Let us retain and then be friends henceforth,  
 For earth itself is worth not so much bale.  
 The reverend head of Zál hath grown like snow,  
 The dust is crimson with our warriors' blood,  
 And yet a man will only own at last  
 His body's length of all that he possesseth!

V. 310

<sup>1</sup> The name of the house where the famous Persian painter Mání, the founder of Manicheism, lived; also of a book written by him. Both house and book were elaborately adorned. Manichean MSS. in general were finely written and illuminated. Cf. Professor Bloomfield, "The Long-lost Mani Bible," in *Harper's Monthly Magazine* for March 1906.

We with a shroud for robe, a grave for home,  
 Shall own but some five cubits' length of earth ;  
 All other wishes are but care and toil—  
 A cause for trouble in this Wayside Inn.  
 If Kai Kubád doth acquiesce in this,  
 And if that sage's head ensueth right,  
 Not one of us shall dream of the Jíhún,  
 But let the Íránians keep to their own side.  
 It may be that good will and intercourse  
 Will make both realms contented with this pact."

V 311 He sealed and sent this to the Íránian host  
 With jewels, crowns, gold thrones, fair damsels girt  
 With gold, Arabian steeds with golden trappings,  
 And Indian swords in silvern sheaths besides  
 The goodliest native wares. The envoy reached  
 Kubád and gave the letter and the message.  
 The king of kings read and replied at large :—  
 " We did not recommence ; this war was caused  
 Directly by Afrásiyáb. The wrong  
 Began with Túr when he bereaved a prince  
 Such as Íraj was of the throne, and now  
 It is Afrásiyáb that crosseth over  
 The river to invade us. Thou hast heard  
 His treatment of Naudar, which filled wild beasts  
 With grief and pain, while on wise Ighrírás  
 He did a deed unworthy of a man.  
 Yet if ye do repent I will renew  
 The compact, though I well could take revenge,  
 Armed as I am for all emergencies,  
 Thus leaving you the lands beyond the river,  
 And then perchance Afrásiyáb will rest."

The Sháh drew up the treaty and thus planted  
 A fresh tree in the garden of his greatness.  
 The envoy went and brought with leopard's speed  
 The letter to Pashang, who packed his baggage,  
 Marched back, and sent the dust-clouds heavenward.

He crossed Jíhún like wind, and news thereof  
 Reached Kai Kubád, who joyed because the foe  
 Withdrew without a fight, but Rustam said :—  
 “Look not, O Sháh ! for peace in time of war.  
 Of old we ne’er had rest from their assaults ;  
 My mace it was that made them thus to-day.”

V. 312

Thus to that noble chief spake Kai Kubád :—  
 “Naught have I seen more goodly than the right.  
 Pashang, a scion of blest Farídún,  
 Avoideth strife for he hath had enough,  
 And men of wisdom must not look upon him  
 Askance and with injustice. I will draw  
 A deed of gift on silk for thee of all  
 Between the Indus and Zábulistán.  
 Go take the throne and crown too of Nímruz,  
 And lighten all the world. Upon this side  
 Give to Mihráb Kábul, and keep thy spearpoints  
 Sharp, for where’er a king is there is war  
 Though earth is broad enough.”

The Sháh prepared  
 Gifts both for Rustam and for Zál whose head  
 He crowned, whose loins he girt, with gold, and gave  
 Half of the world to him. He kissed the ground.  
 Kubád the fortune-favoured further said :—  
 “Ne’er may the throne of majesty lack Zál,  
 One hair of whom outweigheth all the world ;  
 He is the heirloom left us by the great.”

They furnished forth five elephants with litters  
 Inlaid with turquoise brighter than Nile-water,  
 And spread upon the litters cloth of gold,  
 Besides unreckoned wealth, a royal robe  
 Of gold, a crown and girdle wrought of jewels  
 And turquoise, all of which he sent to Zál,  
 And said : “I fain had sent a greater gift,  
 And, should long life be mine, I will not leave  
 A wish of thine unsatisfied on earth.”

V. 313

Moreover on Káran the warrior,  
 Upon Kishwád, Kharrád, Barzín, Púlád,  
 He showered robes of honour as was fit,  
 And to the rest that seemed to him deserving  
 Gave money, shields, and swords, or, if he felt  
 Their merit greater still, a sword and belt.

## § 5

*How Kai Kubád came to Istakhr of Párs*

Thence Kai Kubád departed unto Párs  
 Where lay his treasury. The capital  
 Was then Istakhr—the glory of the Kaians.  
 With general assent he claimed the crown  
 And, mounted on the Kaian throne, held sway  
 By justice and the customs of the wise.  
 He thus addressed the chiefs: "The world is mine.  
 For elephants to war on gnats would make  
 A breach in Faith and justice. I will have  
 Naught but the right, for of God's anger cometh  
 Disaster. I have brought men peace by toil  
 And justice, and where earth and water are  
 My treasure is. Kings are my bodyguard;  
 I hold the citizen and soldier equal.  
 Make God your refuge, be ye wise and harmless,  
 Enjoy what ye possess, give liberally,  
 And thank me too for that which ye enjoy;  
 While they that want and cannot live by work  
 Shall pasture at my court."

He gathered troops,  
 And went about inspecting everywhere.  
 Thus for ten years he roved and ministered  
 All justice publicly and privily.  
 He built him many cities—jocund seats—

Such as the hundred that surrounded Rai,  
 But when the hand of time had fallen upon him  
 He set his face toward Párs, sat on the throne  
 'Mid archimages, readers of the stars,  
 And sages, gathered too his warriors,  
 And gazing on them with a wounded heart  
 Talked of the mighty who had passed away.  
 His gifts and justice made the world rejoice,  
 And thus he reached his hundredth year in joy.  
 See if the world hath any king like him.  
 He had four sons, all men endowed with wisdom,  
 To keep his memory alive on earth :  
 The first was glorious Káuś, the second  
 Was Kai Árash, the third was Kai Pashín,  
 The fourth was Kai Armín. They walked the world  
 In peace and great content.

A century passed,  
 A change of fortune came to crown and throne,  
 For when the Sháh perceived that death drew near,  
 And that the green leaf was about to wither,  
 He summoned noble Kai Káuś, spake much  
 Of justice and of generosity,  
 And said : " I load the baggage to depart.  
 Perform mine obsequies and take the throne,  
 Though as for me I seem but just arrived  
 Rejoicing with my men from Mount Alburz !  
 Oh ! what a thing is fortune thus to leave us  
 Without a warning ! They that worship it  
 Lack wisdom. Thou, if thou art just and upright,  
 Wilt have thy guerdon in the other world,  
 While if thy passions shall ensnare thy wits  
 Thou wilt unsheathe a sword whose edge is keen—  
 A sword wherewith thou first wilt wound thyself  
 And afterward resign it to the foe :  
 Thy dwelling there will be a place of fire ;  
 Here bitterness of heart and grief be thine."



He spake these words and leaving this wide world  
Exchanged his palace for a sepulchre :  
It hath been this world's way time out of mind  
To form of dust and scatter to the wind.

The tale of Kai Kubád is at an end ;  
To that of Kai Káu's attention lend.

## KAI KÁÚS

HE REIGNED ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY  
YEARS

## ARGUMENT

Kai Káús on ascending the throne abandons the path of wisdom. He invades Mázandarán and is taken prisoner, but is rescued by Rustam. He wars against the king of Hámávarán, whose daughter he marries, and is taken prisoner again, this time by treachery. Rustam again rescues him. Afterward he attempts to fly to heaven, and is a third time saved by Rustam. The poet then tells two episodic stories, that of the Seven Warriors, and that of Subráb, in both of which Rustam takes a leading part. We next learn what evil came of the marriage of Kai Káús with the daughter of the king of Hámávarán as exemplified in the tragic tale of Siyáwush. The poet then tells how Rustam took vengeance on Afrásiyáb for the execution of Siyáwush, how Gív went to Túrán in quest of Kai Khusrau, the son of Siyáwush, and how Kai Khusrau became joint Sháh with Kai Káús.

## NOTE

Kai Káús appears in the Vedas as Kávya Ushaná, *i.e.* Ushaná the son of Kavi. He is said to have installed Agni (fire) as the high-priest of mankind, to have been the leader of the heavenly cows (the clouds) to pasturage, and to have wrought the iron club with which the god Indra slew the demon Vritra.<sup>1</sup>

The conception is therefore mythological. In the Zandavasta Kai Káús appears as Kavi Usa. "We sacrifice unto Verethraghna,<sup>2</sup> made by Ahura. . . . He carries the chariot of the lords; he carries the chariot of the lordly ones, the chariots of the sovereigns. He carried the chariot of Kavi Usa."<sup>3</sup> With the exception of this

---

<sup>1</sup> HEP, 278.

<sup>2</sup> The raven.

<sup>3</sup> DZA, ii. 240-2.

reference to his attempt to fly to heaven the remainder of his legend is lost so far as the *Zandavasta* itself is concerned, but a brief summary of what it once contained is extant in the *Dinkard*,<sup>1</sup> where we also find a strange story, of which no trace is to be found in the *Sháhnáma*, that Kai Káuś possessed a wonderful ox, to whose judgment all disputes as to the frontier-line between Írán and Túrán were referred. As the decision was generally adverse to the Túránians they conceived the idea of beguiling Káuś into slaying the ox, and succeeded in their purpose.<sup>2</sup> The story is characteristic of Kai Káuś, who is represented in the poem as a very imperfect character, and easily led astray by passion, wrong-headedness, and evil counsels.

According to the genealogy of the *Bundahish*, Káuś was the grandson of Kai Kubád.<sup>3</sup> *Firdausí* omits the intermediate generation.

The length of the reign is the same in both cases, and the *Bundahish* places Káuś' attempt to reach the sky after he had been on the throne for seventy-five years,<sup>4</sup> and was, so to speak, at his meridian.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 81.

<sup>2</sup> WPT, v. 31.

<sup>3</sup> *Id.* i. 136.

<sup>4</sup> *Id.* i. 150.

# PART I

## THE WAR WITH MÁZANDARÁN.

### ARGUMENT

The poet, after bewailing the death of Kai Kubád and that an evil shoot should spring from so good a root, tells how Kai Káuś was seduced by a dív into invading Mázararán, how he and all his host were taken captive and blinded by the White Dív, how Rustam went to their rescue, what adventures befell him by the way, and how he delivered the Sháh and host.

### , NOTE

Mázandarán, the ancient Hyrcania, lay, in the scheme of the old cosmogony, beyond the limits of the Central Clime<sup>1</sup> from which it was cut off by the great range of the Alburz Mountains, and extended from their northern scarp to the shores of the Caspian. Being abundantly supplied with moisture by the clouds which are stopped by, and the snow-fields which form upon, the Alburz Mountains, and the soil moreover being warmed by volcanic heat, the country is extremely fertile and the climate semi-tropical in character. "The lagunes of the coast are succeeded by marsh forests; higher up are fields of rice and plantations of sugar-cane, and beyond these fertile meadows, above which splendid forests of oaks, planes, and elms clothe the heights of Elburz. There is abundance of water fruits, figs and mulberries, olives and oranges, and the vigorous creepers of the vines run even to the summits of the trees."<sup>2</sup> On the other hand the climate is unhealthy and the air of the marshes blanches the inhabitants,<sup>3</sup> who for this reason were known to the Íránians as white dívs or demons. They are referred to in the Zandavasta and in the Pahlaví texts. "These are the words," we read in the former, with reference to a sacred formula which had to be recited several times, "that sunite down

<sup>1</sup> Vol. i. p. 71.

<sup>2</sup> DHA, v. 9.

<sup>3</sup> *Id.* 10.

Angra Mainyu,<sup>1</sup> . . . these are the words that smite down the daévas of Mázarán."<sup>2</sup>

In the Dínkard they seem to be described as inhabiting burrows and caves, and as being of filthy habits.<sup>3</sup> In the Sháhnáma we find this blanched race personified as the White Div whom Rustam in his expedition into Mázarán encounters in the cave.<sup>4</sup>

The approach to Mázarán from Írán was difficult and romantic. Communication between western and eastern Írán depends on two routes which, branching from Tihrán, run to the south of, and parallel to, the Alburz range, an outlying spur of which they cross at two passes named the Firúzi Kuh and the Girduni Sirdarra respectively. At a distance of about seventy miles from Tihrán the route that runs through the Firúzi Kuh sends off a branch northward toward Mázarán. This branch is a mere fissure, a few feet wide, in the mountain-wall, with a stream running at the bottom and water trickling down the precipitous sides, while here and there the fissure opens out into natural grottos and narrow valleys. This route, which abounds with game and is one of the favourite hunting-grounds of the Sháhs, is known as the Girduni Sawachi. Subsequently the pass of the Firúzi Kuh, six miles to the east of the mountain of that name, after traversing a tremendous gorge, sends off another branch to Mázarán of a somewhat less romantic character than that of the Girduni Sawachi, and runs on to Astrábád, whence also Mázarán may be reached.<sup>5</sup>

It was on emerging from the gloom of one of these passes that Rustam, we may imagine, reached the smiling land where he encountered Úlád, whose account of the extent of Mázarán is of course enormously exaggerated.<sup>6</sup> The reader will see on looking at a map of Persia that Mázarán is a region of quite moderate dimensions. Accuracy in matters geographical is not one of Firdausí's strong points.

With regard to Rustam's route we are told that by Zal's advice<sup>7</sup> he took the short road, not the long one taken by Kai Káús. Of course he would not take the latter, for Kai Káús, we may presume, started from Istakhr in Párs, to the west of the central desert, while Rustam started from Zábúl, to the east of it. Firdausí merely means to indicate that Rustam did not follow the ordinary route, but cut as the crow flies across the waste. This route took, we are told, fourteen days, but Rustam ran a two days' journey into one

<sup>1</sup> *i.e.* Áhriman.

<sup>3</sup> WPT, iv. 216.

<sup>5</sup> MSJP, 363 *seq.* At p. 349 a map of these various routes is given.

<sup>6</sup> § 10, and cf. NIN, 49.

<sup>2</sup> DZA, i. 141.

<sup>4</sup> § 12.

<sup>7</sup> § 5.

and made seven stages of it, in the course of each of which he met with an adventure. This expedition of his is accordingly known as the "Haft Khwán," the former word meaning seven and the latter the tray on which food is served up. His expedition therefore may be regarded as being a meal with seven courses. It has also been suggested that in the account of the seven buildings of Kai Káús, described in Part II. § 8 of this reign, we have the origin of the Haft Khwán of Rustam, and also of the similar expedition, which occurs much later in the poem, of Asfandiyár against Arjásþ.<sup>1</sup>

We may add that in the Pahlaví the word used for these buildings is "mán." "Mán" comes from the same root as our word "mansion." In the Pahlaví form of the legend Rustam's expedition may have been known as the Haft Mán. In the translations from the Pahlaví legend, if such existed, this would naturally become "Haft Khán," the seven stopping-places or rest-houses, and this might easily be corrupted into the "Haft Khwán," the seven meals partaken of therein. Our text, however, has "Haft Khwán," which we translate "The Seven Courses," keeping the collocation of "The Seven Stages" for the corresponding expedition of Asfandiyár.

With regard to the opposition of the chiefs to the expedition of Kai Káús to Mázarán as being unprecedented,<sup>2</sup> we can only suppose it to be a rhetorical flourish put into their mouths by the poet, who has already told us that Farídún and Minúchihr resided there.<sup>3</sup>

At the present day "Dív" is a title of honour among the nobles of that region.<sup>4</sup>

## § 1

### *The Prelude*

If ever mortal injury befall  
A fruitful tree, when it hath waxen tall,  
Its leaf will fade, its root become unsound,  
Its head begin to bend toward the ground;  
And when the stem is snapped off at the root  
'Twill yield its station to some fresh young shoot,

V. 316

<sup>1</sup> WPT, iv. 220 and *note*.

<sup>3</sup> See vol. i. pp. 177, 230, 289.

<sup>2</sup> §§ 2 and 3.

<sup>4</sup> DHA, v. 262.

Resign thereto the garden's burgeoning  
 And all the lamp-like lustre of the spring ;  
 But if, my friend ! an evil shoot should rise,  
 Let not the good root suffer in thine eyes.  
 So when a father leaveth to his son  
 The world, and showeth him the course to run,  
 If he shall flout his father's regimen  
 Call him no longer son but alien.  
 He that abandoneth his teacher's path  
 Deserveth every evil that he hath.  
 This ancient hostelry is fashioned so  
 That thou canst not distinguish top from toe,  
 And he that wotteth of its evil way  
 Doth well to quit it with what speed he may.

Now let the stories which an ancient sage  
 Of prudent mind once told thy thoughts engage.<sup>1</sup>

## § 2

*How Káuś sat upon the Throne and was tempted to  
 invade Mázandarán*

Káuś, succeeding to his father's throne  
 With all the world to serve him, looked upon  
 Heaped hoards of treasures manifold, and knew  
 That he had not his peer on earth for wealth  
 Of necklaces, of earrings, and of thrones,  
 High-crested Arab steeds, and golden crowns  
 Inlaid with emeralds.

Now as it chanced  
 He sat one day and quaffed delicious wine  
 Within a pleasure-palace arabesqued  
 With gold, and sat upon the golden throne,  
 Whose feet were crystal, master of the world,  
 Discussing many matters great and small  
 In converse with the Íránian paladins,

<sup>1</sup> There is no break here in the original.

And spake on this wise: "Who is Sháh but I,  
 Who worthy of the throne except myself?  
 I rule the world with none to say me nay."

The Sháh was thus conversing in his cups,  
 What while the captains wondered, when a dív  
 In minstrel's guise addressed the chamberlain.  
 "A native of Mázarán am I,"

He said, "a noted bard. If I am worthy  
 To serve the Sháh let me approach his throne."

V. 317

The chamberlain walked stately to the Sháh,  
 And said: "There is a minstrel at the gate—  
 A rare musician—and he hath his harp."

The Sháh bade fetch the man and set him down  
 Among the harpers. When his harp was tuned  
 He sang a ditty of Mázarán:—

"Mázarán, my native land!  
 May I forget it never,  
 And may its fields and fells abide  
 As populous as ever,

"For on its heights the hyacinth  
 And tulip bloom, while roses  
 Are ever blossoming anew  
 Within its garden-closes.

"The landscape is fulfilled with charm,  
 The atmosphere is pleasant,  
 And there is neither heat nor cold,  
 But spring is ever present.

"While in each garth the nightingale  
 Discourseth musically,  
 The deer are pacing daintily  
 In every mountain valley



“ Throughout the year without a break  
Intent upon their questing,  
And evermore the hues are bright,  
And scents exhale unresting.

“ As for the rivers thou wouldst say :—  
‘ They run rose-water surely !’  
And at the fragrance breathing thence  
The soul rejoiceth purely.

“ There when the year is young and when  
’Tis many a month the older,  
A soil all tulips and a-bloom  
Saluteth the beholder.

“ The livelong year the streamlet’s lips  
Are laughing, and the foray  
Of hawk and hunter after game  
Will never fail of quarry.

“ The provinces are gaily dight  
Throughout their whole dimensions  
With golden coins and with brocade,  
And goodliest inventions ;

“ The handmaids there, as idols fair,  
Are crowned with crowns all golden,  
And there the loins of all the great  
With belts of gold are holden.

“ He that is not in that fair land  
Of joy exceeding measure,  
Delighting heart and mind alike,  
What can he know of pleasure ? ”

The words roused Kai Káús, he was resolved  
 To lead a host against Mázandarán,  
 And thus harangued his warriors : “ We have been  
 Too fond of feast. The brave but indolent  
 Will never tire of leisure and of home.  
 In fortune, Grace, and birth I pass Jamshíd,  
 Zahhák, and Kai Kubád, and must surpass them  
 In prowess too : crowned heads should be ambitious.”

V 318

The nobles heard and liked it not, turned pale,  
 And frowned, for no one wished to fight the dívs,  
 Though daring not to say so openly.  
 They sadly sighed—Tús, Gív, Gúdarz, Kishwád,  
 Kharrád, Gurgín, and brave Bahrám—and said :—  
 “ Thy slaves are we and walk earth by thy will.”

They met thereafter and spake out their minds :—  
 “ What is this turn of fortune ? If the Sháh  
 Remembereth the words said in his cups  
 ’Twill be the ruin of us and of Írán,  
 And leave the land not even dust and water.  
 Jamshíd possessed the crown and finger-ring,  
 With dív and fowl and fay to do his will,  
 Yet spake he never of Mázandarán,  
 Or sought to fight against the valiant dívs,  
 While Farídún with all his craft and wisdom  
 Ne’er guided us to any such desire.  
 Had it been something fitting to achieve  
 By dint of manliness, name, gems, and treasure,  
 Then Minúchihr would have forestalled the matter  
 And not repressed his wishes. We must find  
 Some scheme to turn this evil from Írán.”

Then Tús addressed the chiefs : “ Brave veterans !  
 One remedy there is, and let us use it,  
 For ’tis not hard. Send we a cameleer  
 In haste to Zál the son of Sám to say :—  
 ‘ If now thy head be soiled stay not to wash it,  
 But whet thy wits and let us see thy face.’

V. 319

- He may suggest some wise rede to the Sháh,  
And tell him: 'Áhriman hath prompted this:  
The portal of the dívs must ne'er be opened.'  
Unless Zál can divert him from such talk  
An end will come to all our ups and downs."

They talked it o'er, then sent a cameleer,  
Who went apace toward Nímruz, and when  
He came to Zál—the lustre of the world—  
Gave thus the nobles' message: "High-born son  
Of Sám! a parlous case confronteth us,  
And one that knowledge cannot estimate!  
Bestir thyself or else we shall not have  
Folk, field, or fell. A fancy hath arisen  
Within the Sháh's heart. Áhriman hath turned him  
From what is right, he is not satisfied  
• With travail such as his forefathers had,  
But would have treasure where he hath not toiled,  
And so must throne it in Mázandarán!  
If thou delayest but to scratch thy head  
He will have gone and given to the winds  
Thy travail at the first with Kai Kubád,  
V. 320 \ When thou with Rustam—that insatiate Lion—  
Didst like a valiant lion gird thy loins;  
All which is now as wind to Kai Káuś,  
Whose evil purposes distract his mind."

Zál when he heard grieved sorely that the leaves  
Upon the royal tree were growing sere,  
And said: "Káuś, that man of headstrong will,  
And not approved in this world's heat and cold,  
Will hearken not to what the experienced say,  
And sleepeth not upon his own designs.  
If one who is the monarch of the world,  
Whom years and sun and moon still circle o'er,  
One at the thought of whose sword everywhere  
Alike the nobles and the people tremble,  
Will not obey me 'tis not wonderful;

Still it would grieve me if he hearkened not.  
 If I think of myself, not of the Sháh,  
 Then God, the Sháh, and all the warriors  
 Throughout Írán, will be displeased at me.  
 I will set out and offer mine advice ;  
 If he accepteth it so much is gained ;  
 If he is headstrong then our course is clear,  
 And Rustam now will be among the troops."

He mused all night, and when the sun displayed  
 Its crown on high begirt himself and journeyed,  
 Escorted by the chiefs, toward the Sháh.  
 Intelligence reached Tús, Gúdarz, and Gív,  
 Bahrám, Gurgín, and others : "Zál approacheth ;  
 E'en now his royal standard is in sight."

The army-leaders, helmed as paladins,  
 Went forth to meet him and, when he was near,  
 Dismounted, went to him afoot, and blessed him.  
 Now, as they fared together to the Sháh,  
 Tús said to Zál : "So then, O noble chief !  
 Thou hast endured a journey of much toil,  
 And for the sake of us Íránian nobles  
 Hast chosen travail rather than repose !  
 We are devoted to thee : all of us  
 Feel honoured by thy crown and Grace."

V. 321

Zál answered :

"The maxims of the men of old recur  
 To one whom years have worn, and later on  
 The course of heaven will justify his conduct.  
 We must not keep our counsel from the Sháh,  
 For he hath need thereof. If he rejecteth  
 The words of wisdom he will rue it sorely."

They cried : "We are agreed and will not hear  
 Another's words," then sought with one accord  
 The crown and throne and presence of their lord.

## § 3

*How Zál gave Counsel to Káuś*

Attended by the lords with golden girdles  
 Zál led the way and, when he saw Káuś  
 Rejoicing on the throne, approached the state  
 With downcast eyes and folded arms, then said :—  
 “ O worldlord, who art mightiest of the mighty !  
 Throne hath not heard of, nor crown seen, thy peer,  
 Revolving heaven hath heard not of such fortune,  
 As thine. Be victor all thy years and glad  
 With heart all wisdom and with head all justice.”

The famous Sháh received Zál graciously,  
 And, giving him a seat upon the throne,  
 V. 322 Asked him about the toil of that long journey,  
 About the chieftains and exalted Rustam.  
 He answered : “ Ever live and conquer, Sháh !  
 We all are blithe and brightened by thy fortune,  
 And have our heads exalted by thy throne.”

He then began his well considered speech :—  
 “ O monarch of the world ! thou well deservest  
 To have the throne and crown of mighty men.  
 Thou art the memory of Sháh Farídún,  
 And may this age ne’er rob thee of its love.  
 Now I have heard grave tidings that the Sháh  
 Hath some design upon Mázandarán.  
 V. 323 None of thy mighty predecessors thought  
 Of such a journey. Minúchihr in dying  
 Left here much wealth and many palaces ;  
 So too did Zav, Naudar, and Kai Kubád  
 (How many a chief our memories recall  
 With massive maces and with mighty hosts !)  
 Yet they attempted not Mázandarán—  
 The home of warlock-dívs and under spells  
 Which none hath power to loose ; so give not thou

Men, wealth, and money to the winds. That land  
 Can not be conquered by the scimitar,  
 Nor will it come to hand through wit and treasure.  
 To go or e'en to think of going thither  
 Is held unlucky! Thou must not invade  
 Those parts because no Sháh hath thought it good,  
 Who if less great than thou was still God's slave:  
 Then do not for the sake of covetise  
 Plant with the blood of such a famous head  
 A tree whose growth and fruit will prove a curse,  
 And break the precedents of former Sháhs."

Káús replied: "I need thy views hereon,  
 But nathless I in courage, Grace, and treasure  
 Surpass Jamshíd and Farídún as well  
 As Minúchihr and Kai Kubád, who never  
 Made mention of Mázandarán; my heart  
 And host are greater, and the world is 'neath  
 My trenchant scimitar. The world was won  
 When thou didst brandish thine; let it see ours.  
 I shall go thither, snare them all, maintaining  
 The credit of myself and scimitar,  
 Then tax them heavily or leave all dead,  
 So vile and wretched do I hold that crew  
 Of dívs and sorcerers, and thou wilt hear  
 That earth is void of them. Do thou and Rustam  
 Be regents of Írán and slumber not.  
 God is my Helper and the prince of dívs  
 My quarry. Since thou wilt not go with me  
 Bid me not dally on my throne."

V. 324

Zál heard,  
 And baffled answered: "Thou art Sháh, and we  
 Are slaves who speak in love and, right or wrong,  
 Must move and breathe according to thy will.  
 I have relieved my heart as knowledge prompted.  
 No one can root out death, sew up the eyes  
 Of destiny with needles, or escape

From want by abstinence; in this regard  
 E'en princes must submit. May this bright world  
 Prove prosperous to thee, and mayst thou never  
 Have reason to recall these words of mine;  
 May thine own doings cause thee no remorse,  
 And be thy heart and Faith and rule resplendent."

Grieved that the Sháh would go Zál took his leave  
 In haste, and as he left the monarch's presence  
 Both sun and moon were darkened in his eyes.  
 The gallant nobles—Tús, Gúdarz, Bahrám,  
 And Gív—went with him, and Gív said to Zál :—  
 "May God direct us! Were Káuś not Sháh  
 I should esteem him naught. May greed, death, want,  
 Be far from thee, foes' hands too short to reach thee.  
 Where'er we be or go we hear thy praises,  
 And next to God trust thee who hath so toiled  
 For us."

Thus Gív. Zál, clasping to his heart  
 The warriors, made ready to depart.

#### § 4

##### *How Káuś went to Mázandarán*

Next day arose the tymbals' din, Gúdarz  
 And Tús led on the troops. Káuś, their lustre,  
 Went with them, and upon a shaded spot  
 Set up his throne before Mount Ispurúz  
 For rest and sleep, while terror everywhere  
 Fell on the brutish dívs. Upon the heights  
 The Sháh spread cloth of gold; the air was fragrant  
 With luscious wine; the favoured paladins  
 Sat by his throne and spent the night together.  
 At dawn they woke and entered helmed and armed  
 The presence of the Sháh, who ordered Gív :—  
 "Choose from the warriors two thousand men—

Mace-wielders—to prepare for us a path  
 Mázararán-ward, slaughter young and old,  
 Fire all the settlements, turn day to night,  
 And slay the warlocks ere they are aware.”

Gív girt him, left the portal of the Sháh,  
 Chose valiant warriors, and when he reached  
 Mázararán showered scimitars and maces.  
 The women, children, and old men with staves,  
 Received no quarter from his sword ; he sacked  
 And burned the cities, scattering bane instead  
 Of antidote. He lighted on a spot  
 Like Paradise, replete with all delights,  
 And in each street and quarter countless slaves  
 With necklaces and earrings, and still more  
 With casques and faces like the shining moon.  
 In every place were treasures stored away,  
 Here gold, there gems. The cattle were past count.  
 Thou wouldst have said : “ ’Tis Paradise itself ! ”  
 They told Káús the news, who cried : “ Live happy  
 The man who said : ‘ Mázararán may match  
 With Paradise, and thou wouldst say that all  
 The country is an Idols’ temple decked  
 With wreaths of roses and brocade of Chín ;  
 Its Idols come from Paradise with faces  
 Bathed in pomegranate-blossoms by Rizwán.’ ” <sup>1</sup>

V. 327

The Íránians plundered for one week, then ceased.  
 The monarch of Mázararán received  
 The news ; his heart was sad, his head was heavy.  
 There was a dív named Sanja at the court,  
 Who also grieved. The monarch said to him :—  
 “ Go swift as Sol in yonder circling heaven  
 And tell the White Dív : ‘ There hath come a host  
 Out of Írán to spoil Mázararán ;  
 They have burnt up our cities and inflamed  
 Our vengeance by the outrage. Kai Káús,

<sup>1</sup> The door-keeper of Paradise.



With many young and brave, is in command  
Without thy help we shall be all destroyed.'"

When Sanja heard the message he sped forth  
And carried to the *dív* the king's appeal.  
The White *Dív* answered: "Be not in despair,  
For I am coming with a mighty host  
To cut the Sháh's foot from *Mázandarán*."

He spake and like a mountain rose erect;  
His head was level with the turning sky.

V. 328

Night came, a cloud involved the *Íránian* host,  
The world grew like a negro's face for blackness,  
And thou hadst said: "'Tis like a sea of pitch,  
And all its light is lost."

V. 329

The White *Dív* spread  
Above their heads a tent of pitchy smoke,  
Air dusked and eyes were darkened. From the sky  
He showered stones and darts, the *Íránian* troops  
Dispersed abroad, and many sought *Írán*,  
Heart-broken at the doings of *Káuś*.  
When day had come the ambitious Sháh and most  
Among his warriors were blind. The nobles  
Were wroth with him, his troops were prisoners,  
His treasures pillaged, and his fortunes old.  
It is a ne'er to be forgotten tale,  
For at such wonders wonder's self must fail!  
Now when the Sháh perceived his plight he said:—  
"A prudent minister is more than treasure;  
Alas that I accepted not the counsel  
Of *Zál* the worldlord but misdoubted it."

When he had passed seven days in misery  
And looked on no *Íránian*, on the eighth  
The White *Dív* thundered at him: "O thou Sháh,  
As fruitless as a willow! thou wouldst have  
Complete supremacy and seize our pastures.  
Like to a maddened elephant's appeared  
Thy strength to thee, thou wouldst not yield to any!

Content not with the crown above thy throne  
 Thou hast perverted wisdom and hast wrought  
 Ill in Mázarán, and slaughtered many  
 With massive mace. The news of mine achievements V. 330  
 Perchance ne'er reached thee, such a dullard thou  
 On thine imperial throne! Now thou hast gained  
 The fitting outcome of thy heart's desire."

Then of the valiant dívs that drew the sword  
 He chose twelve thousand, setting them to guard  
 The Íránians, and afflicted grievously  
 Those headstrong men. He gave them food enough  
 To keep them living on from day to day,  
 While all the treasures of the Sháh and host,  
 The jewelled diadems and turquoise thrones,  
 All that he saw, he gave o'er to Arzhang,  
 The general of Mázarán, and said:—  
 "Convey these to the king and say to him:—  
 'Blame not thou Áhriman, for I have done  
 All that was needed, and have brought yon folk  
 To dust. The Sháh and paladins will never  
 Behold the bright sun or the moon again.  
 I have not threatened him with death, but taught him  
 The ups and downs of fortune. He will grow  
 Wise through his troubles, and hereafter none  
 Will listen to such schemes.'"

Thereat Arzhang V. 331  
 Went to the monarch of Mázarán,  
 And took with him the treasure and the troops,  
 The captives and the steeds caparisoned.  
 This done the White Dív went back to his home  
 As glorious as the sun, while Kai Káús  
 Remained within Mázarán to moan:—  
 "I was to blame for this and I alone."

## § 5

*The Message of Kai Káuś to Zál and Rustam*

Káuś with stricken heart sent to Zábul  
 To Zál a warrior, like a bird that flew  
 As swift as smoke, to say: "What hap is mine!  
 My crown and throne have tumbled to the dust,  
 And heaven hath given to the dívs my treasures  
 And troops arrayed like roses in the spring;  
 The wind, thou wouldst say, rose and bore them off.  
 Mine eyes are blinded and my fortunes shent,  
 My crown and throne are both o'erturned, and I  
 Lie stricken in the hand of Áhriman,  
 Who rendeth me asunder, soul from body.  
 I often sigh to think on thine advice,  
 Which I rejected foolishly, thus causing  
 The present trouble. If thou dost not act  
 Both capital and interest will be lost."

V. 332

He went as 'twere a bird as swift as smoke  
 And told what he had seen and heard to Zál,  
 Whose skin burst at the tidings, but he kept  
 The news from friend and foe. His shrewd heart  
 showed him

The ills that fate would bring upon Káuś.  
 "The scimitar is all but out," he said  
 To Rustam. "We must not thus feed at ease,  
 But make provision for the crown itself,  
 Because the Sháh is in the Dragon's breath:  
 How great a bale is on the Íránians!  
 Thy part is now to saddle Rakhsh and seek  
 For vengeance with the world-allotting sword.  
 God surely made thee for a time like this,  
 And thou art fitted for such labours now,  
 While I, I have outlived two centuries!  
 Thou wilt gain high renown and save the Sháh.

Thou must not in this Áhriman's own business  
 Take matters leisurely or stop to breathe,  
 But don the tiger-skin and purge thy head  
 Of sleep and thought. When one hath seen thy spear  
 Will any say: 'His soul will rest?' If thou  
 Shouldst fight the sea 'twould turn to blood, thy voice  
 Will level mountains. Thou must make Arzhang,  
 And the White Dív no less, despair of life.  
 As for the monarch of Mázandarán  
 Go smash him, neck and spine, with thy great mace."

He answered thus: "The way is long, and I . . . V. 333  
 How shall I go to take revenge?"

Said Zál:—

"There are two routes both hard and dangerous;  
 One, which is long, was taken by Káús;  
 The other is a journey of two weeks,  
 The haunt of dív and lion, and all gloom;  
 Its murk will maze thine eyes. Choose thou the short,  
 And see its wonders; God will be thine aid.  
 What though the way be hard? An end will come,  
 The feet of glorious Rakhsh will traverse it,  
 And I will pray all night to see again  
 Thy limbs and iron mace; while if the Worldlord  
 Shall let the dívs' grip close upon thy life,  
 Who can resist His word? 'Tis said and done.  
 None can abide here though he tarry long,  
 And one whose fame embraceth all the world  
 Is not cast down at going."

Rustam answered:—

"I gird me to obey although the great  
 Of yore walked not to Hell advisedly,  
 And only one grown sick of life will counter  
 The rending lion. Think of me as girt  
 And gone. I ask no help but God's, will give  
 Both soul and body for the Sháh, and break  
 The talismans that guard those sorcerers.

V. 334

All that survive among the Íránians there  
 Will I bring back and gird their loins again ;  
 I will not spare the White Dív nor Arzhang,  
 Nor Sanja nor Púlád son of Ghundí,  
 Nor Bíd. I swear by God, the only God,  
 Not to quit Rakhsh till I have bound Arzhang  
 With yoke on neck and hands as firm as rocks,  
 Have trod the brains and headpiece of Púlád,  
 And shaken earth beneath the feet of Rakhsh."

He donned the tiger-skin and stretched himself,  
 While Zál called many blessings down on him,  
 Then mounted on his elephantine steed  
 With steadfast heart and mien. Rúdába came  
 With tearful cheeks while Zál too wept. She said :—  
 "So thou wilt go and leave me here to grieve!  
 How canst thou hope in God?"

He said : "Good mother !  
 I did not choose my course ; 'tis destiny.  
 Do thou commit to God my soul and body."

The people came to him to say farewell ;  
 Who knew if he should look on Rustam more ?

Uncounted by the wise the moments fly,  
 And, when an evil day hath passed thee, try  
 To reckon that the world hath gained thereby.

## THE SEVEN COURSES OF RUSTAM

### § 6

#### THE FIRST COURSE

##### *How Rakhsh fought with a Lion*

V. 335

Then Rustam, that world-brightening paladin,  
 Departed from his sire and, treating night  
 Like day, made two days' journey into one,

Not giving Rakhsh repose. Now as his body  
 Failed him through lack of food he reached a plain  
 Where onager abounded, and urged Rakhsh  
 To whom their speed was slow : no beast could 'scape  
 From Rustam's lasso and his horse's feet.

The Lion with his royal lasso caught  
 A gallant onager and, striking sparks  
 Upon an arrow's point, enkindled fire  
 With stubble, thorns, and wood to roast the beast.

He ate the flesh and threw away the bones ;

The onager itself was pot and tray.

He spied some pasture, slipped off Rakhsh's bridle,

Turned him out loose upon the meadow-land,

And made himself a couch within a reed-bed ;

He deemed it safe though it was fear's own door,

For in it was a lion's lair ; no elephant

Dared pluck a reed. One watch passed, then the lion V. 336

Came boldly forth and was amazed to see

An elephantine form among the reeds,

Reposing with a charger standing by.

"First," said the lion, "I must maim the steed,

Then I can take the rider when I please."

He sprang at glossy Rakhsh, who raged like fire

And lashed out at the lion's head, then fixed

His sharp teeth in its back and dashed the beast

To pieces by a shift that made it shiftless.

When Rustam, deft of hand, awoke and saw

How earth was straitened to that ravening beast

He said : "O foolish Rakhsh ! who bade thee fight

A lion ? Hadst thou perished 'neath its claws

Could I have carried to Mázandarán

My helmet, tiger-skin, bow, lasso, sword,

And massive mace ? Had my sweet sleep been  
 broken

Thy combat with the lion had been brief."

He slept and rested long, and when the sun

Rose o'er the darksome hills awoke still drowsy ;  
 He rubbed down Rakhsh and saddled him, then prayed  
 To God, the Author of all good, for aid.

## § 7

## THE SECOND COURSE

*How Rustam found a Spring*

He had to face all dizzy as he was  
 A desert waterless, a heat intense  
 That dried the birds to powder ; plain and waste  
 V. 337 Were as they had been scorched thou wouldst have said.  
 Rakhsh was exhausted, while his rider's tongue  
 Failed through the heat and drought, and Rustam,  
 clutching

A double-headed dart, went staggering  
 Like one bemused, and saw no means of safety.  
 He looked up saying : " O all-righteous Judge !  
 Thou bring'st all toil and hardship on my head,  
 And if Thou findest pleasure in my pains  
 My hoard is great indeed ! I fare in hope  
 That God will grant deliverance to the Sháh,  
 And that the Ruler of the world will free  
 The Íránians from the clutches of the Dív,  
 Unscathed. They sinned, and Thou hast cast them out,  
 But still they are Thy slaves and worshippers."

V. 338 This said, that elephantine form became  
 Weak and distraught with thirst, and fell, with tongue  
 All cracked and blistered, on the burning dust.  
 Anon a well-fed ram passed by. The hero  
 On seeing thought : " Where is its watering-place ?  
 In sooth God's mercy is extended to me !"  
 Then in the Worldlord's strength rose to his feet  
 And followed up the ram, with scimitar

In one hand while the other grasped the reins,  
Until he saw the spring, for thither went  
That stately ram. Then Rustam looked toward heaven,  
And said: "O Judge, that ever speakest sooth!  
The ram hath left no tracks about the spring!  
It is no desert-sheep of flesh and blood!"

When hardships press on thee, in thy concern  
Flee unto God, the Just One; they who turn  
Away from Him have wisdom still to learn.

He blessed that ram and said: "Ne'er may mishap  
From circling heaven be thine; green be thy pastures;  
May cheetah never mark thee for its prey;  
Snapped be the bow and dark the soul of him  
That shooteth at thee who hath rescued Rustam,  
Else were he thinking of his shroud; but now  
He is not in the mighty dragon's maw  
As yet, or in the clutches of the wolf,  
So that the fragments of his clothes and limbs  
Should serve as tokens to his enemies."

His praises offered he unsaddled Rakhsh,  
Washed him, and made him shining as the sun.  
Then Rustam much refreshed filled up his quiver  
And as he hunted dropped an onager  
Huge as an elephant, removed the entrails,  
The hide, and feet, lit up a blazing fire,  
And having washed the carcase roasted it.  
This done he feasted, breaking up the bones,  
And having quenched his thirst prepared for sleep.  
He said to Rakhsh: "Fight not and make no friends.  
If any foe approacheth run to me,  
But venture not to counter dívs and lions."

V. 339

He lay and slept, his lips in silence bound,  
While Rakhsh till midnight grazed and strayed around.



## § 8

## THE THIRD COURSE

*How Rustam fought with a Dragon*

A dragon, such an one as, thou hadst said,  
 No elephant could 'scape, came from the waste.  
 Its haunt was there; no div dared pass thereby.  
 It came, beheld the atheling asleep,  
 A charger near him, and was wroth. It thought:—  
 "What do I see? Who dareth to sleep here?"  
 Because no lions, dívs, or elephants  
 Dared pass that way or, if they did, escaped not  
 The clutches of that dragon fierce and fell.  
 It turned on glossy Rakhsh, who ran to Rustam,  
 Stamped with his brazen hoofs upon the ground,  
 Whisked with his tail, and gave a thundering neigh.  
 The hero woke up furious, looked about  
 Upon the waste, perceived not that fell dragon,  
 And wreaked his wrath on Rakhsh for waking him.  
 He slept again, again the worm approached  
 Out of the gloom; Rakhsh ran to Rustam's couch,  
 And kicked the earth about and trampled it.  
 The sleeper woke, his cheeks rose-red with passion,  
 Looked round and, seeing nothing but the gloom,  
 Said to affectionate and watchful Rakhsh:—  
 "Thou canst not blink the darkness of the night  
 Yet wakest me again impatiently!  
 If thou disturb me more I will behead thee  
 With my sharp scimitar, and carry it,  
 My helmet, and my massive mace, on foot.  
 I said: 'Should any lion come at thee  
 I will encounter it.' I never said:—  
 'Rush on me in the night!' Leave me to slumber."  
 Then for the third time with his tiger-skin

Upon his breast he set himself to sleep.  
 The fearsome dragon roared and, thou hadst said,  
 Breathed fire. Rakhsh left the pasturage forthwith,  
 But dared not to approach the paladin.  
 Yet was his heart distracted by his fears  
 For Rustam with that dragon, till at length,  
 O'ermastered by affection for his lord,  
 He rushed swift as a blast to Rustam's side  
 And neighed and fretted, pawed upon the ground,  
 And stamped the earth to pieces with his hoofs.  
 Then Rustam, wakened from his sweet repose,  
 Raged at his docile steed; but now the Maker  
 Willed that the dragon should be seen, and Rustam,  
 Perceiving it amid the gloom, unsheathed  
 The keen sword at his girdle, thundered out  
 Like spring-clouds, and filled earth with battle-fire.  
 Then said he to the dragon: "Tell thy name;  
 Earth is no longer thine, yet must not I  
 Rob thy dark form of life, thy name untold."

V. 341

The laidly dragon said: "None scapeth me.  
 For centuries this waste hath been my home,  
 And mine its firmament; no eagle dareth  
 To fly across or star to dream thereof."  
 It further said: "What is thy name, for she  
 Will have to weep that bare thee?"

"I am Rustam,"

He answered, "sprung from Zál—the son of Sám—  
 And Narímán withal. I am myself  
 A host, and trample earth 'neath dauntless Rakhsh.  
 Thou shalt behold my prowess; I will lay  
 Thy head in dust."

The dragon closed with him,  
 And in the end escaped not though it strove  
 So fiercely with the elephantine hero  
 That thou hadst said: "He will be worsted." Rakhsh,  
 On seeing the dragon's might, and how it battled

With Rustam, laid his ears back, joined the fray,  
 Bit at the dragon's shoulders, tore its hide  
 As though he were a lion, and amazed  
 The valiant paladin, who with keen glaive  
 Smote off the dragon's head ; blood jetted out  
 In rivers, and its carcase hid the earth.  
 The matchless one, astonished at the sight,  
 Invoked God's name and bathed him in the spring.  
 Desiring conquest through God's strength alone  
 He said : " O righteous Judge ! me Thou hast given  
 Grace, might, and wisdom ; what care I for lion,  
 Dív, elephant, parched desert, and blue sea ?  
 When I am wroth all foes are one to me."

V. 342

## § 9

## THE FOURTH COURSE

*How Rustam slew a Witch*

Thanksgivings done, he harnessed rose-cheeked Rakhsh  
 And mounting came in time where sorcerers dwelt.  
 Long had he fared and saw, as Sol declined,  
 Trees, grass, and stream—the very spot for youth.  
 There was a spring as bright as pheasant's eyes ;  
 Beside it were a golden bowl of wine,  
 A roasted mountain-sheep with bread thereon,  
 And salts and sweetmeats. Rustam thanked the Lord  
 For showing him a place so opportune,  
 Dismounted from his steed, took off the saddle,  
 And marvelled at the loaves and venison.  
 It was a sorcerers' meal, and when he came  
 His voice had caused those dívs to disappear.  
 He sat beside the rushy stream and brimmed  
 A jewelled cup with wine. A dainty lute

V. 343

Was there, the desert seemed a banquet-hall!  
He took the lute up, touched the chords, and sang:—

“ Oh ! Rustam is an outcast still  
And hath no days of pleasure,  
Marked out for every kind of ill  
And not a moment's leisure.

“ Be where he may it is his plight  
With battle still to harden,  
And wilderness and mountain-height  
Must serve him for a garden.

“ His combatings are never done  
And there is no assuagement,  
'Tis dragon, dív, and desert—one  
Perpetual engagement !

“ The wine and cup, the scented rose,  
And where lush herbage groweth—  
Such things are not at his dispose,  
These fortune ne'er bestoweth

“ On one that with the crocodile  
Is still engaged in fighting,  
Save when the leopard for a while  
The combat is inviting.”

The sound of music reached a witch's ears ;  
She made her cheeks like spring, although by rights  
She was not fair, and then, perfumed and decked,  
Approached, saluted, and sat down by Rustam,  
Who gave God thanks at finding in the desert  
Board, wine, and lute, and youthful boon-companion.  
Not knowing that she was a wicked witch,  
An Áhriman beneath her bravery,

He handed her a cup of wine, invoking  
 The Giver of all good. Now when he named  
 The Lord of love her favour changed ; no soul  
 Had she for gratitude, no tongue for praise,  
 But blackened at God's name, while Rustam, flinging  
 His lasso quicker than the wind, ensnared,  
 And questioned her : " What art thou ? Speak and show  
 Thy proper favour."

In the lasso's coils  
 There was a fetid hag all guile and wrinkle,  
 Calamitous. He clave her with his blade  
 And made the hearts of sorcerers afraid.

V. 344

## § 10

## THE FIFTH COURSE

*How Rustam took Úlúd captive*

He journeyed on and reached a place of gloom  
 Black as a negro's face—a murky night  
 Without a star or moon ; thou wouldst have said :—  
 " The sun is captive and the stars are lassoed !"  
 He gave the rein to Rakhsh and journeyed on,  
 Not seeing height or river for the murk.  
 When he emerged to light he saw a land,  
 Like painted silk with crops, where all was verdure  
 And streams ; the old world had renewed its youth.  
 His clothes were drenched, and longing for repose  
 He took off his cuirass of tiger-skin,  
 And dripping helm, to dry them in the sun,  
 Unbridled Rakhsh, and loosed him in the corn,  
 Then, donning his dried helmet and his breastplate,  
 Couched like a mighty lion in the grass,  
 His shield his pillow and his hand on hilt.  
 The watchman of the plain, on seeing Rakhsh  
 Among the crops, ran up with hue and cry ;  
 He smote the hero smartly with a stick

Upon the foot and said, as Rustam woke:—  
 “O Áhriman! why didst thou loose thy steed  
 Among the corn to eat where others toiled?”  
 But Rustam, angered, seized the watchman’s ears,  
 Wrung them and tore them off without a word.  
 The watchman howled and snatched them up, aghast V. 345  
 At Rustam. Now Úlád was marchlord there—  
 A brave and famous youth. To him the watchman  
 Went howling with his hands and head all bloody,  
 And ears wrung off, and said: “There is a man,  
 Like the Black Dív, with leopard-skin cuirass  
 And iron casque, a perfect Áhriman,  
 Or else a dragon was asleep in mail!  
 I went to drive his charger from the corn,  
 He would not suffer it but, when he saw me,  
 Rose without word, wrung off mine ears, and slept!”

Úlád was hunting there with other nobles,  
 But when he heard the watchman and beheld  
 The Lion’s track in his preserves, they rode  
 Toward where the peerless Rustam had been seen  
 To find out who he was, and why he served  
 The watchman of the plain so scurvily.  
 Úlád in threatening wise drew near to Rustam,  
 Who mounted Rakhsh, unsheathed his trenchant sword,  
 And then came onward like a thunder-cloud.  
 As they drew near they questioned one another.  
 “What is thy name?” Úlád cried. “Who art thou?  
 Who is thy king and who is backing thee?  
 Hence is no passage to the warrior-dívs.  
 Why didst thou tear away the watchman’s ears  
 And turn thy charger loose among the corn?  
 Just so will I make black the world to thee  
 And lay thy helm in dust.”

“My name is ‘C’oud,”<sup>1</sup> V. 346

Said Rustam, “if a cloud hath lion’s claws,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 13.

With swords and maces only for its fruit,  
 And beareth on its lap the heads of chieftains.  
 My real name, should it reach thine ears, would freeze  
 Thy life's breath and heart's blood. Hast thou not heard  
 Of the elephantine warrior's bow and lasso  
 In every company? We call the mothers  
 Of sons like thee shroud-stitchers, wailing-women.  
 Thou comest thus against me with a troop,  
 But only throwest walnuts on a dome."

With that he drew his baleful Crocodile,  
 Hung his coiled lasso to the saddle-bow,  
 Came like a lion midst a flock, and slew  
 All that were in his reach. At every stroke  
 He sheared two chieftains' heads and strewed the dust  
 Beneath his feet therewith. The troops thus broken  
 Fled in dismay, and wilderness and dale  
 Were filled with dust-clouds by the cavaliers  
 As they dispersed among the rocks and hollows.  
 Then Rustam, like an elephant enraged,  
 With sixty coils of lasso on his arm,  
 Pressed forward and, when Rakhsh was near Úlád,  
 Whose day was darkened, flung his mighty lasso,  
 Ensnared that chieftain's head, and then alighting  
 Made fast his hands, drave him in front and, mounting,  
 Said: "If thou speak the truth, and if I find  
 No guile at all in thee from first to last,  
 If thou wilt show me where the White Dív dwelleth,  
 Where dwell Púlád son of Ghundí and Bíd,  
 And where Káu's, who caused these ills, is bound;  
 If thou dost show this truly and art faithful,  
 Then from the monarch of Mázandarán  
 Will I take crown and throne and massive mace,  
 And thou shalt be the ruler of the land;  
 But if thy words prove guileful I will make  
 Thine eyes run blood."

Úlád said: "Be not wroth,

But gracious just for once and slay me not  
 In wantonness, and I will answer thee.  
 I will point out to thee the roads and city  
 Wherein Káús is bound, the White Dív's dwelling  
 And Bíd's, since thou hast reassured my heart.  
 Know, O thou worshipful dív-hearted hero !  
 That God hath fashioned thee of noble clay !  
 There are between us now and Kai Káús  
 A hundred leagues, O thou of gracious feet !  
 Whence to the White Dív is another hundred.  
 The road is bad and dangerous, through a gorge—  
 A fearful spot o'er which no eagle flieth.  
 There is a cavern midst two hundred others,  
 A wondrous place beyond all measurement,  
 And there twelve thousand warriors, all dívs,  
 Keep watch by night upon the mountain-top ;  
 Their captain is Púlád son of Ghundí,  
 While Bíd and Sanja are their outpost-guards.  
 Of all the dívs the White Dív is the chief ;  
 At him the mountains shake like willow-leaves,  
 And thou wilt find his person mountain-tall,  
 With shoulders, breast, and neck ten cords across.  
 E'en with such arms and hands and reins as thine,  
 And though thou brandishest sword, mace, and spear,  
 And hast such stature, mien, and energy,  
 It is not well for thee to fight that dív.  
 Beyond are rocks that no gazelle could pass,  
 And then a river two leagues wide and more  
 Watched by the dív in charge of all that province  
 With all the other dívs at his command.  
 Call it three hundred leagues to the Narmpái<sup>1</sup>  
 From the Buzgúsh,<sup>2</sup> whence to Mázandarán  
 The journey is a foul and tedious one.

V. 348

<sup>1</sup> The name of a tribe, "the Bandy-legged" ; *ἱμανρόποδες*, loripedes.  
 Cf. p. 63.

<sup>2</sup> The name of a tribe, "the Goat-ears."



A myriad of cavaliers at least  
 Are posted through the realm, so armed and paid  
 That thou wilt not see one dissatisfied.  
 There are twelve hundred elephants of war;  
 The city cannot hold them. 'Thou'rt but one,  
 Though iron, and but gratest on the file  
 Of Áhriman."

The words made Rustam laugh.  
 "If thou wilt be my comrade," he replied,  
 "Thou shalt see how one elephantine chief  
 Will treat yon famous band by help of God,  
 The Prosperer, and fortune, arms, and prowess.  
 When they behold my might of breast and neck,  
 And mace-blows in the fight, their feet and hides  
 Will burst in sheer dismay, they will not know  
 A stirrup from a rein; so point me out  
 Káuś, where'er he be, and step along."

This said, he sprang on Rakhsh, while swift as wind  
 Úlád ran on beside him, day or night  
 Not resting till he reached Mount Ispurúz,  
 Where dívs and warlocks had o'erthrown Káuś.  
 At midnight shoutings went up from the plain,  
 The folk lit watch-fires in Mázandarán  
 And torches everywhere. Then matchless Rustam  
 Asked of Úlád: "What is the cause that fires  
 Are springing up to right and left of us?"

"It is the entrance to Mázandarán,"  
 Úlád replied. "The more part of each night  
 None dareth sleep; the dív Arzhang is there  
 And he is ever noisy."

Rustam slept  
 Till dawn, then took Úlád, bound him in anguish  
 Against a tree, and, hanging on the saddle  
 The mace his grandsire had been wont to use,  
 Departed confident and full of ruse.

## § 11

## THE SIXTH COURSE

*How Rustam fought with the Dív Arzhang*

In royal helm and sweat-soaked tiger-skin  
 He sought, intent on fight, the chief Arzhang,  
 And shouted in the middle of the host ;  
 Thou wouldst have said : "The hills and seas are  
     rent !"

The dív Arzhang came leaping from the camp  
 At that tremendous shout, while Rustam spurring  
 Came on him like Ázargashasp, grasped boldly  
 His head and ears and neck, then lion-like  
 Tore off his head and flung it at his troops.  
 The dívs' hearts burst in terror at the sight  
 Of Rustam's iron mace, and son and sire,  
 Forgetting land and crops, went off pell mell,  
 While Rustam drew his vengeful scimitar  
 And cleared the neighbourhood. At set of sun  
 He made all speed back to Mount Ispurúz,  
 Untied Úlád, and, as they sat beneath  
 The lofty tree, asked how to reach the city  
 Where Sháh Káús was, and then hurried on  
 Led by Úlád afoot. When he arrived  
 Rakhsh gave a thundering neigh, which Kai Káús,  
 Who heard it, understood and told the Íránians :—  
 "Our evil days are all but over now ;  
 I heard the neigh of Rakhsh ; it made my heart  
 And spirit young. Thus neighed he in the wars  
 Of Kai Kubád against the Turkman king."

V. 350

The soldiers said : "His mind hath gone through  
     hardship,  
 And he hath lost his wisdom, sense, and Grace !  
 Thou wouldest say : 'He talketh in his sleep.'"

But in these grievous bonds we can do naught ;  
In good sooth fortune hath abandoned us."

Anon that ardent lover of the fray,  
The elephantine chief, approached Káuś,  
And all the noble paladins—Gúdarz,  
Tús, gallant Gív, Bahráṃ the Lion, Shídúsh,  
And Gustaham—flocked round while Rustam wept  
Right sorely, did obeisance to the Sháh,  
And asked about his longsome toils. Káuś,  
Embracing him, inquired concerning Zál,  
And all his travail, then said privily :—

"Let not these sorcerers get sight of Rakhsh,  
For when the White Dív is apprised : ' Arzhang  
Is dead and Rustam is with Kai Káuś !'  
The valiant dívs will gather, earth will teem  
With them, and then thy toils will bear no fruit.  
Seek the White Dív's abode, exert thyself  
With sword and arrow ; holy God may aid thee  
In bringing to the dust these sorcerers' heads.  
O'er seven mountains must thou pass, and troops  
Of dívs throng everywhere. At length a cavern  
Of frightful aspect will appear before thee,  
A fearsome place, as I have heard : the approach  
Is held by warrior-dívs equipped like pards  
For fight. That cavern is the White Dív's home :  
He is the hope and terror of his troops.  
May'st thou have strength to put an end to him  
Because he is that army's chief and stay.  
My soldiers' eyes are blinded by their griefs ;  
I am in darkness too. Our leeches trust  
To blood extracted from the White Dív's vitals,  
In which regard a wise physician said :—  
' Let three drops of his blood descend like tears  
Upon the eyes and it will banish blindness.'"

He made him ready, and in setting forth  
Spake thus to the Íránians : " Be alert,

For 'tis the White Dív that I go against—  
 That Elephant of war, full of resource,  
 And compassed by a host of warriors.  
 If he shall catch my body with his noose  
 A shameful sorry plight will long be yours,  
 But if the Lord and my good star shall aid me  
 Our country and our throne will we restore,  
 And this our royal Tree shall fruit once more."

## § 12

## THE SEVENTH COURSE

*How Rustam slew the White Dív*

He went girt up—all battle and revenge;  
 He took Úlád and made Rakhsh go like wind.  
 As soon as Rakhsh had reached the seven mountains,  
 With all their troops of valiant dívs, the chieftain  
 Drew near the abysmal cave, saw them on guard,  
 And spake thus to Úlád: "Thou hast been faithful,  
 So now that we must act point out the way."

V. 352

Úlád made answer: "When the sun is hot  
 The dívs will sleep and thou wilt overcome them;  
 So bide thy time and thou wilt see no dívs,  
 Except some few on duty, and may'st triumph  
 If He that giveth victory shall aid thee."

So Rustam paused till noon, then, having bound  
 Úlád fast with the lasso, mounted Rakhsh,  
 Unsheathed his warlike Crocodile, and shouted  
 His name like thunder, came like flying dust  
 Among the troops, and parted heads from trunks.  
 None sought for glory by withstanding him.  
 Thence radiant as the sun he went to seek  
 The White Dív, found a pit like Hell, but saw not  
 The sorcerer for the murk. There sword in hand

V. 353

He paused ; no room was there for fight or flight.  
 He rubbed his eyelids, bathed his eyes, and searched  
 The cave till in the gloom he saw a Mountain  
 That blotted all within, with sable face  
 And hair like lion's mane—a world to see !  
 Now Rustam hasted not to slay the dív  
 Asleep, but roused him with a leopard's roar.  
 He charged at Rustam, like a gloomy mountain  
 With iron helm and brassards, seized a millstone  
 And drave at him like smoke. The hero quailed,  
 And thought : " Mine end is come ! " Yet like a  
 lion

Enraged he struck full at the dív and lopped  
 From that enormous bulk a hand and foot,  
 So mighty was he with his trenehant sword !  
 As 'twere some lofty-crested elephant  
 And lion in its wrath the maimed dív closed  
 With Rustam, and one-footed wrecked the eave.  
 They wrestled, tearing out each other's flesh,  
 Till all the ground was puddled with their blood,  
 And Rustam thought : " If I survive this day  
 I ne'er shall die."

The White Dív also thought :—  
 " Life hath no hopes for me, for, should I scape  
 This Dragon's claws, maimed as I am and torn,  
 None great or small within Mázandarán  
 Will look at me."

V. 354

Such was his wretched comfort !  
 But still they wrestled, streaming blood and sweat,  
 While elephantine Rustam in God's strength  
 Strove mightily in anguish and revenge,  
 Till sore bestead, bold Lion that he was,  
 He reached out, elutched the dív, raised him neck-  
 high,  
 And dashed the life-breath from him on the ground,  
 Then with a dagger stabbed him to the heart

And plucked the liver from his swarthy form :  
 The carcase filled the cave, and all the world  
 Was like a sea of blood. Then Rustam freed  
 Úlád, put back the lasso in the straps,  
 And, giving him the liver of the dív  
 To carry, went back to Sháh Kai Káús.

"O Lion!" said Úlád, "thou hast subdued  
 The world beneath thy sword, and I myself  
 On my bruised body bears thy lasso's marks,  
 So now I hope that thou wilt keep thy promise,  
 For lion-fierceness and a royal mien  
 Sort not with broken faith."

V. 355

"I give thee all  
 Mázandarán," he answered. "I have yet  
 Long toils before me, many ups and downs,  
 For I must hale its monarch from his throne  
 And fling him in a ditch, behead a myriad  
 Of sorcerer-dívs with my relentless sword,  
 And then, it may be, tread the ground again,<sup>1</sup>  
 But if not I will still keep faith with thee."

He reached Káús while all in gladness cried:—

"The chief of ardent spirit hath returned!"  
 And ran to him with thanks and praise past count.  
 He said: "O Sháh, thou seeker after knowledge!  
 Rejoice, thy foe is slain. I have ripped out  
 The White Dív's liver, and his king hath naught  
 To hope from him. What would my lord the Sháh?"

V. 356

Káús blessed Rustam. "Ne'er may crown and host  
 Lack thee," he said. "The mother of such offspring  
 Must not be mentioned but in terms of praise.  
 Now may a thousand blessings be on Zál,  
 And on the country of Zábulistán,  
 Because they have produced so brave a chief.  
 In sooth the age hath not beheld thy like,

<sup>1</sup> In war-time he would ride, and he had sworn to ride till he had triumphed. Cf. p. 44.

But brighter still is my lot since I have  
For liege this lion-slaying Elephant."

When he had made an end of praise he said :—  
"O warrior of blessed steps ! now put  
The White Dív's blood upon mine eyes and those  
Of all my folk ; God willing, we may see  
Thy face again."

They anointed his dim eyes,  
Which grew as bright as Sol, and forthwith Rustam  
Anointed all the others with the blood.  
Their eyes grew bright, and all the world to them  
A rosary. They hung the crown and set  
Káuś beneath it on an ivory throne  
As monarch of Mázandarán, with Rustam,  
Tús, Faríburz, Gúdarz, Ruhhám, and Gív,  
Gurgín, and brave Bahrám. One week he revelled,  
The eighth day mounted with his chiefs and troops,  
Who spread themselves like fire among dry reeds  
Throughout the land and plied the massive mace  
According to the bidding of the Sháh.  
They scorched the realm with their keen scimitars,  
And of the warlocks slew so many that blood  
Flowed in a river. When night fell the warriors  
All rested and Káuś proclaimed : "The wrong  
Hath been avenged, the dívs have their deserts,  
'Tis time to cease from slaughter. Now we need  
A man of weight and sense, with sense to wait  
Yet prompt, to work upon and overawe  
The monarch of Mázandarán."

The son  
Of Zál and all the other chiefs agreed  
On this that such a letter should be sent  
To give his darkened mind enlightenment.

## § 13

*How Káús wrote to the King of Mázarán*

A skilled scribe wrote upon white silk a letter  
 Both kind and harsh, inspiring hope and fear,  
 First praising God, the Source of every good,  
 "Who gave man wisdom, made the turning sky,  
 Revealing hardship, cruelty, and love,  
 Who gave to us to compass good and ill,  
 And ruleth o'er the circling sun and moon. . . .  
 If thou art upright and thy Faith is pure  
 All men will praise thee, but the curse of heaven  
 Will fall on thee if ill-disposed and hurtful.  
 If God is just why should His laws be broken?  
 Observe how He in punishment for sin  
 Is sending dust from dív and sorcerer!  
 So now if news hath reached thee of their fate,  
 And mind and wisdom are thy monitors,  
 Quit thou thy throne and from Mázarán  
 Come, like our other subjects, to our court,  
 And, as thou canst not strive with Rustam, pay  
 Such tax and tribute as we may demand.  
 Thus haply thou mayst still retain thy throne;  
 But if thou wilt not pay despair of life,  
 E'en as the White Dív and Arzhang despaired."

V. 358

The letter done, the Sháh affixed his seal  
 Of musk and spicery, and called Farhád—  
 Him of the mace of steel, a favourite  
 Among the nobles of the land, and one  
 Who had not shared the warfare and the toil—  
 To whom he said: "Convey to yonder dív  
 Escaped from bonds this letter of advice."

He kissed the ground, bare the Sháh's letter forth,  
 And reached the valiant horsemen, the Narmpái.<sup>1</sup>  
 The people there with leathern feet appear,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 55.



Hence their nickname Narmpái for many a year.  
There lived among his chiefs and men of war  
The monarch of Mázandarán of yore.

Farhád sent on a man to tell the king  
Of his approach and business, who on hearing :—

“A prudent envoy cometh from the Sháh,”

Sent forward to receive him a great host,

V. 359

Selected by the king to show his power,

To whom he said : “We must make known to-day

How great the difference is ’twixt man and dív,

So act the pard and get these sages’ leader

Within your clutches that he may repent

Himself in terror at the sight of you.”

They went forth frowning but their purpose failed.

On coming to Farhád one of the chiefs—

A mighty man—took hold upon his hand,

Wrung it, and pained him, yet he did not blench,

Or flush. They carried him before the king,

Who asked about Káuś and that long journey,

Then set the document before a scribe,

And sprinkled wine and musk upon the silk.

He read the letter to the king who writhed ;

But when he heard of Rustam and the dív

Blood filled his eyes, his heart throbbed, and he  
thought :—

“’Tis sunset and night cometh, ’tis the time

For rest, but Rustam will not let earth rest,

His name will always be in evidence.”

He mourned Arzhang and the White Dív, the slaying  
Of Bíd and of Púlád son of Ghundí,

Then entertained the envoy for three days

Among the warriors and men of name,

And on the fourth said : “Go back to the Sháh,

That witless youth, and bear to him this answer :—

‘Is wine unmingled in the cup of fortune ?

Am I such that thou sayest : “Quit thy land,

V. 360

Thy throne and country, and attend my court ?”  
 My court is more exalted than thine own,  
 Mine are a thousand thousand troops and more,  
 And wheresoe’er they turn them in the fight  
 They leave not stone or colour or perfume.  
 Prepare thyself forthwith ; I shall be ready ;  
 I will lead forth an army lion-like  
 And rouse those heads of yours from their sweet  
 slumbers.

I have twelve hundred elephants of war,  
 While thou hast none, and I will send dark dust  
 Up from Írán till hills and vales seem one.’”

Farhád, perceiving his defiance, pride,  
 And arrogance, was much concerned to get  
 An answer to the letter, hastened back,  
 And told the Sháh what he had seen and heard :—  
 “The king is higher than heaven and his purpose  
 Is not less high. He would not listen to me ;  
 The world is nothing worth in his regard.”

Thereat Káús called Rustam and repeated  
 Farhád’s report. The Elephantine said :—  
 “I will relieve our nation from disgrace ;  
 Let me bear back this answer : ‘I will draw  
 My trenchant sword.’ We need a trenchant letter,  
 A message like a thundering cloud. Myself  
 Will go to him as envoy ; at my words  
 The rivers shall run blood.”

V. 361

The Sháh replied :—  
 “The signet and the crown gain light from thee,  
 Who art at once ambassador, bold Tiger,  
 And haughty Lion of the battlefield.”

With that he called a scribe, whose pen he made  
 An arrowhead, and wrote : “Such talk is futile  
 And cometh ill from one of sober sense.  
 If thou canst purge thy head of arrogance  
 Do as thou art commanded like a slave.

Thou wilt not wreck thy realm but pay me tribute  
 Unvexed by war, enjoy Mázandarán,  
 And 'scape with life from Rustam ; but if thou  
 Refusest I will march upon thee, stretch  
 My host from sea to sea, and then the soul  
 Of thy malevolent White Dív will bring  
 The vultures to enjoy thy brains, O king !”

## § 14

*How Rustam went on an Embassy to the King of Mázandarán*

V. 362

The letter sealed, aspiring Rustam flung  
 His mace upon the saddle and approached  
 Mázandarán, whose monarch heard : “ Káuś  
 Hath sent another letter and an envoy—  
 One like a savage lion—with a lasso  
 Of sixty coils within the straps. Beneath him  
 There is a speedy charger ; one would say :—  
 ‘ It bulketh like a mighty elephant.’ ”

On hearing this the king selected chiefs  
 And bade them go to meet this savage Lion.  
 As Rustam saw them he beheld beside  
 The road a spreading tree, seized on two branches,  
 And twisting round the tree with might and main  
 Uprooted it, himself unscathed the while,  
 Then poised it like a dart, while all the troops  
 Looked on astound. As they came up he hurled  
 The tree, whose boughs hid many cavaliers.  
 One of the chiefest of Mázandarán  
 Seized Rustam’s hand and squeezed it to assay  
 His fortitude in pain, but Rustam laughed  
 While all the company looked on in wonder,  
 And as he laughed he crushed the other’s hand.  
 That strength-assayer lost all strength himself,  
 Paled, and fell off his steed. One went before

And told the monarch of Mázarán  
 That which had chanced. There was a cavalier  
 Hight Kaláhúr, whose fame rang through the land,  
 And who, like some fierce pard, loved fighting only.  
 The king, who mightily esteemed his valour,  
 Called him and sent him forth to counter Rustam,  
 Thus saying: "Meet the envoy, give fresh proofs  
 Of prowess, shame him, make him weep hot tears."

V. 363

So Kaláhúr came lion-like to Rustam  
 With louring looks and with a leopard's greeting,  
 Then took and squeezed the Elephantine's hand  
 Till it turned blue with pain, who bore it lightly,  
 As holding manhood's patent from the sun,  
 And stoutly wrung the hand of Kaláhúr,  
 Whose nails fell off like leaves. He went and showed  
 The king his mangled hand. "I cannot hide,"  
 He said, "the anguish that I feel. Enjoy  
 Thyself in peace; thou canst not fight this hero.  
 If he is willing let us pay the tribute,  
 Submitting to preserve Mázarán,  
 And portion out the tax to great and small  
 To make this heavy travail light; 'tis better  
 Than quaking for our lives."

The matchless Rustam

That moment came like some fierce elephant  
 Before the king who, seeing him, assigned him  
 A place of honour, asked about Káús,  
 The host, the travail of the longsome road,  
 Its ups and downs, and then said: "Thou art Rustam;  
 Thy breast and arm befit a paladin."

He said: "I am a slave if fit to serve.  
 Where Rustam, that brave paladin, is present  
 There I am useless. Since God made the world  
 A chief so eminent hath not appeared.  
 In fight he is a mountain. What and how  
 Am I to speak about his mace and Rakhsh ?

V. 364

What army can withstand him when he warreth ?  
 He maketh mountains seas, and seas like mountains.  
 What lion, elephant, or dív will raise  
 The battle-cry against him when he fighteth ?  
 He is a noble army in himself  
 And not a messenger ; 'twas he that sent me  
 To say : ' If thou are prudent sow not seed  
 Of evil. Thou hast sown it in abundance,  
 And lightly left the path of manliness.  
 How hast thou used the monarch of Írán,  
 His troops, and paladins in thy revenge ?  
 Thou hast not heard perchance of Rustam's name,  
 Who hath the welkin for his meanest thrall ;  
 But if I had permission from the Sháh  
 To come to this thy folk I would not leave  
 One of thy host alive, and thine own head  
 Should be upon a spear.' "

He gave the letter—

A message from ambition to self-will—  
 And said : " The scimitar is bearing fruit,  
 It beareth on its lap the heads of nobles."

The king when he had heard the embassy,  
 And read the letter, was displeased and marvelled.  
 He spake to Rustam, saying : " To what end  
 Are all these frivolous demands of thine ?  
 Say to Káuś : ' Thou art indeed the Sháh,  
 But, though thou hast the heart and claws of lions,  
 Still I am monarch of Mázandarán,  
 Possess a host, sit on the golden throne,  
 And wear the crown. To summon me absurdly  
 Before thee thus is neither right nor royal.  
 Think, and ambition not the thrones of kings,  
 For in the quest dishonour will befall thee.  
 Ride thou Íránward or a lance's point  
 Shall end thy days. If I lead forth my host  
 Thou'lt know not head from foot. 'Tis thy conceit ;

Be wise and cast away thy bow, for when  
 We meet thy talk and violence will cease.'  
 Say too for me to Rustam: 'Famous chief!  
 Whatever Kai Káús may give to thee  
 I will bestow a hundred to his one,  
 Will make thee chief of chiefs, rich past desire,  
 Exalt thy head above the sun and moon,  
 And give to thee command of all my troops.' "

But Rustam, with his shrewd mind contemplating  
 Throne, host, and court, esteemed the king's speech  
 brainless.

Such insults angered him, and he replied:—  
 "O witless king! good sooth thy fortunes lour!  
 Hath Rustam, that exalted paladin,  
 Need of thy treasury and of thy troops?  
 The son of Zál is monarch of Nímrúz  
 And hath no peer; so cease to wag thy tongue  
 Or he will pluck it out."

The king was wroth;  
 His evil nature turned his thoughts to bloodshed  
 He cried: "Arrest the envoy in my presence,  
 Disseat him and behead him."

Instantly  
 An executioner approached the throne  
 To seize his wrists and hale him from his seat,  
 But Rustam, roaring like a lion, caught  
 The executioner's wrists and dragged him close,  
 Then flung him down and, holding one foot fast,  
 Set his own foot upon the other one  
 And rent the man asunder! None e'er saw  
 A sight like that! Then noble Rustam cried:—  
 "If I had but permission from the Sháh  
 To war against thine army I would put thee  
 This instant into pitiable plight."

V. 366

He spake and went forth from the court, his eyes  
 Like bowls of blood, while quaking at his words

And might the king made ready royal gifts  
 Of raiment, steeds, and gold, and proffered them  
 To Rustam, but he would accept of naught,  
 Because such presents would involve disgrace,  
 And left the country of Mázarán,  
 Concerned at these grave doings. Full of vengeance,  
 And in hot blood, he came before the Sháh,  
 Told his experience in Mázarán,  
 And said to him: "Be not concerned one whit,  
 Show courage and prepare to fight the dívs.  
 I do not value them a single grain  
 Of dust, and I will make this mace their bane."

## § 15

*How Káuś fought with the King of Mázarán*

When Rustam left, the king of sorcerers  
 Prepared for war, brought out his tent-enclosure,  
 And led the whole host forth upon the waste;  
 Their dust hid sun and desert, plain and mountain,  
 While earth reeled 'neath the tramp of elephants.  
 He marched like rushing wind. Káuś on hearing,  
 "The dívs' host is in sight," first ordered Rustam  
 To arm for fight and then to Tús, Gúdarz,  
 Son of Kishwád, and to Gurgín and Gív,  
 Those men of noble lineage, he gave  
 The arraying of the host, the ordering  
 Of spear and shield. They pitched the camp-enclosures  
 Upon the deserts of Mázarán.  
 Upon the right was Tús, son of Naudar,  
 Whose clarion-blasts thrilled to the mountains' hearts;  
 Gúdarz was on the left wing with Kishwád,  
 And clad the heights in iron; Kai Káuś,  
 In chief command, was posted at the centre.  
 The troops drew up while elephantine Rustam,

Who never saw disaster, led them on.

Juyá, a noble of Mázandarán,  
A fame-ensuer, a mace-brandisher,  
And bragger likewise, by his monarch's leave  
Confronted Kai Káús. The warrior's mail  
Shone brilliantly, his falchion seared the ground ;  
He passed along the Íránian line with shouts  
That plain and mountain echoed : " He must send  
Dust up from water who would fight with me."

Not one came out against him, thou wouldst say :—  
" Their veins pulsed not with blood." Then cried

Káús :—

V. 368

" Why hath this dív's voice, valiant warriors !  
Thus dazed your hearts and made your faces dark ? "

They answered not a word, and thou hadst said :—  
" The host is withered up before Juyá."

Then Rustam took the reins and shouldering  
His shining spear said : " Will the Sháh permit me  
To face this caitiff dív ? "

Káús replied :—

" Be thine the task, for none will seek it else.  
Go ! May the Maker aid thee, be all dívs  
And sorcerers thy quarry."

Rustam urged

His gallant Rakhsh and grasped his weighty spear,  
Came on the scene like some mad elephant,  
A Pard beneath him and in hand a Dragon,  
Sent dust-clouds flying as he wheeled about,  
And shouting shook the battle-field. " O knave !"  
He cried, " thy name is cancelled 'mong the great.  
This is no time of peace and ease for thee,  
But pity ; she shall weep who bare thee, nurtured,  
And chastened thee."

" Be not too sure," he answered

" About Juyá and his head-reaping sword ;  
Thy mother's liver shall be split anon,



And she shall wash thy mail and casque with tears."

V. 369

When Rustam heard he raised his battle-cry,  
Proclaimed his name, and as he charged appeared  
A moving mountain, while his foe dismayed  
Wheeled round unwilling to contend with him,  
But Rustam following, swift as dust, and aiming  
The spearpoint straight against the girdlestead,  
So speared the mail that straps and buckles burst,  
Unseated him, raised him aloft, and turned him  
Like bird on spit,<sup>1</sup> then flung him down dust-choked,  
With shivered mail. The warriors of the foe  
Looked on astound, faint-hearted, pale of face,  
And babble filled the field. Their king commanded  
The whole host, saying: "Lift your heads and fight  
Like leopards in this strife."

The warriors heard

His warlike words, and of that countless host  
A vengeful throng advanced. The Sháh perceived it  
And came on too in orderly array.  
Both armies drew their swords and closed amid  
The din of trump and drum, the sky was ebon,  
Earth indigo, while swords and maces gleamed  
Like lightning flashing from a murky cloud.  
The air was crimson, black, and violet,  
With spears and flags. The shouting of the dívs,  
The clouds of dust, the roar of kettledrums,  
And neigh of steeds, rent earth and shook the moun-  
tains;

V. 370

None e'er saw such a fight. Arose the din  
Of arrow, mace, and sword, the plain became  
A pool of heroes' blood, earth like a sea  
Of pitch whose waves were maces, swords, and arrows.  
Swift steeds sped on like ships upon the deep,  
And thou hadst said of them: "They founder fast!"  
While maces rained upon the casques and helms

<sup>1</sup> Cf. vol. i. p. 386 and *note*.

As autumn-blasts shower leaves from willow-trees.  
 Thus for a week those glory-seeking hosts  
 Encountered, on the eighth day Sháh Káús  
 Took from his head the royal casque and stood  
 Before the Judge and Guide of this world, weeping,  
 Then falling prostrate he exclaimed: "O Judge  
 Whose word is truth, who madest sea and land !  
 Give me to quell these dívs who fear not Thee,  
 And grace for me the throne of king of kings."

V. 371

He donned his helm and joined his famous troops.  
 There rose a shout and trumpet-blare, the host  
 Moved like a mountain. He commanded Gív  
 And Tús to bring the tymbals to the front.  
 Gúdarz with Zanga son of Sháwarán,  
 Ruhhám, Gurgín, all eager for the fray,  
 Guráza like a wild boar, with a flag  
 Eight cubits high, Farhád, Kharrád, Barzín,  
 Rushed on the field to seek revenge anew.  
 First, matchless Rustam charging on the centre  
 Bathed earth with warriors' blood. Upon the right  
 Gúdarz fetched with Kishwád arms, drums, troops,  
     baggage,  
 While from the right wing to the left Gív fared—  
 A wolf among the sheep. From dawn till sunset  
 Blood ran in streams, all looks were fierce and grim,  
 And thou hadst said: "The sky is raining maces."  
 The slain were heaped on every side, the grass  
 Was smirched with human brains. The drums and  
     trumpets  
 Were like a thunder-clap, an ebon veil  
 Concealed the sun. Then elephantine Rustam  
 Charged with a mighty power against the quarter  
 Where stood the monarch of Mázandarán,  
 Who with his dívs and elephants of war  
 Awhile maintained his ground. Then Rustam gave  
 His pointed lance to one to hold, invoked

V. 372

The name of God, raised high his mace, and raged ;  
 His voice filled all the air, the dívs became  
 Dispirited, the elephants confounded ;  
 Their trunks were scattered over all the plain,  
 And naught but corpses could be seen for miles.  
 Then calling for a spear he charged the king ;  
 Both roared like thunder. When the king beheld  
 The spear of Rustam wrath and courage failed,  
 While Rustam, seething with revenge, sent up  
 A mighty lion's roar, struck the king's girdle,  
 And pierced him through the mail. The sorcerer  
 Turned to a boulder by his magic arts  
 Before the Íránian host, while matchless Rustam  
 Stood in amaze, then shouldered his sharp lance.  
 The Sháh came up with drums and elephants,  
 With standards and with troops, and said to Rustam :—  
 " Why tarry here so long, exalted chief ! "

He answered : " When victorious fortune showed  
 Amid the stress the monarch seeing me  
 Took up his massive mace, I gave to Rakhsh  
 The rein and speared the monarch through the mail.  
 Methought : ' Now will he tumble from his saddle.'  
 He turned to stone before me, as thou seest,  
 And recketh not of aught that I can do,  
 But I will carry him to camp, perchance  
 He will resume his shape."

The Sháh bade some  
 To bear and set the stone before his tent.  
 Then all the strongest of the host essayed  
 In vain to move the mass, howbeit Rustam  
 Raised it unaided to the troops' amaze,  
 Then shouldering the rock walked off therewith  
 With all the people shouting at his back.  
 They praised the Almighty, scattering gems and gold  
 O'er Rustam as he bare the stone and threw it  
 Before the tent-enclosure of the Sháh.

He set a guard and said : "Quit these black arts  
And sorceries to take thy proper shape,  
Or else with this sharp steel and battle-ax  
Will I break up the stone."

The sorcerer heard,  
The stone dissolved like mist, the king was seen  
In helmet and cuirass, and Rustam seizing  
His hand turned laughing to the Sháh and said :—  
"Permit me to present this piece of rock,  
Which feared mine ax and quaketh in my grasp."

The Sháh on looking saw him not the man  
For crown and throne ; he had a loathly face,  
A lanky shape and boar's head, neck, and tushes.  
Káús recalled the past with pain and sighs,  
Then bade a headsman hew the dív in pieces,  
Whom matchless Rustam taking by the beard  
Haled from the presence of Káús. They hewed  
The dív to pieces as the great king bade.  
They gathered all the booty from the camp,  
And put together thrones and crowns and girdles,  
Steeds, jewelry, and arms. The troops attended,  
And each received according to his meed.  
The impious dívs, whom all beheld with horror,  
Were then beheaded by the Sháh's command  
And flung beside the way. He said in prayer :—  
"O righteous Judge ! Thou hast not left a wish  
Of mine unsatisfied, hast made me conquer  
These sorcerers, and revived my hoary fortune."

V. 375

He spent a week before the Lord in prayer,  
Upon the eighth day oped the treasury-door,  
And gave to all that lacked ; another week  
So passed while every man received his meed.  
The third week still within Mázandarán  
He called for amber cups and ruby cups,  
And spent a night in revel. Thus rethroned  
He said to Rustam : "Chief of paladins !

Thou hast displayed thy prowess everywhere,  
 And now I have received my throne from thee.  
 Bright be thy heart, thy Faith, and thine allegiance."

Then Rustam answered: "All men have their uses.  
 Whate'er I did was owing to Úlád,  
 My faithful guide, who hopeth now to rule  
 Mázandarán, for so I promised him  
 If he did well. Perchance the king of kings,  
 Who tendereth lieges, will exalt him thus?  
 First let the Sháh grant him investiture  
 By solemn covenant and under seal  
 As monarch of Mázandarán, and then  
 Let all the other chieftains do him homage.  
 He will approve himself thy faithful liege  
 And send to thee the tribute that is due."

The Sháh, on hearing what his servant said,  
 Assented, summoned from Mázandarán  
 The chiefs, and said in speaking of Úlád:—  
 "Do as he counselleth and bear no grudge."

He gave Úlád a special robe of honour,  
 And said: "Good worketh constantly unseen,"  
 Bestowed on him the royal crown, and then  
 Set his own face to go to Párs again.

V. 376

## § 16

*How Káuś returned to the Land of Írán and  
 farewelled Rustam*

Now when Káuś was entering Írán,  
 And when the army's dust concealed the world,  
 The excitement reached the sun, and men and women  
 Met him with loud acclaim; they decked the land  
 And called for wine and harp and minstrelsy.  
 The world grew young through him, and there arose  
 A New Moon from Írán. Glad and triumphant

He sat enthroned, unlocked his ancient hoards,  
And summoned almoners. A shout went up  
Before the gate of elephantine Rustam,  
And all the captains of the host assembled  
Rejoicing in the presence of the Sháh.  
Then matchless Rustam, casque on head, drew near  
And seated by the Sháh asked leave to go  
To Zál. The worldlord gave him costly gifts,  
Such as he merited—a throne with rams' heads  
All jewelled in turquoise, a royal crown  
Of gems, a robe of gold worn by the Sháh,  
A splendid torque and armlet, and withal  
A hundred moon-faced boys with golden girdles,  
A hundred lovely damsels musky-haired,  
A hundred noble steeds in golden harness,  
A hundred black-haired mules with golden bridles  
All laden with brocade of royal fashion  
From Rúm, Pahlav, and Chín, a hundred purses  
Filled with dínárs, bright stuffs, perfumes, and trinkets,  
A ruby goblet full of purest musk,  
Another of turquoise filled with rose-water,  
And therewithal a patent writ on silk  
With ink of musk, wine, ambergris, and aloes.  
Upon that chief—the Light of earth—the Sháh  
Bestowed anew the whole realm of Nímruz,  
So that thenceforth none else should have the throne,  
And blessed him, saying: "May none see sun and  
moon  
Without thee, be the chiefs' hearts warm to thee,  
And be thy soul fulfilled with love and kindness."  
Then Rustam leaped down, kissed the throne, made  
ready  
For his departure, and bound on the baggage.  
The din of kettledrums rose from the city,  
And all partook his joy. They put up garlands  
While bells and clarions sounded. Rustam went,

V. 377

The Sháh remained, illumining the world  
 With laws and usages. When thus returned  
 He portioned out the earth among his chieftains,  
 Appointing Tús the captain of the host.  
 "Avert," he said, "disaster from Írán,"  
 While Ispahán bestowed he on Gúdarz,  
 Gave him the throne and lordship of that march,  
 And then disposed himself for mirth and wine,  
 Displayed his majesty and smote the neck  
 Of sorrow with the scimitar of justice.  
 None thought of death, the earth grew full of verdure—  
 A garden of Iram<sup>1</sup>—with streams and dew,  
 And rich by justice and security;  
 The hand of Áhriman was stayed from ill,  
 And day and night the fruits and foliage  
 Invoked a blessing on the crown and throne:—  
 "A hundred thousand blessings every hour  
 From the Creator be upon the Sháh,  
 Who by his justice civilizeth earth  
 And in his justice mindeth bounteousness."

'Twas noised abroad: "Káús the Sháh hath taken  
 The crown and throne out of Mázandarán."

v. 378 All wondered that he should achieve such greatness,  
 The loyal with their gifts and offerings  
 Drew up in rank before the monarch's door,  
 And all the world was decked like Paradise,  
 Fulfilled with wealth and justice.

Thou hast heard

About the warfare with Mázandarán,  
 Now hear the contest with Hámávarán.

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 100.

## PART II

### THE DOINGS OF KAI KÁÚS IN THE LAND OF BARBARISTÁN AND OTHER TALES

#### ARGUMENT

Káús makes a progress through his realm. He wars against the kings of Barbar, Misr, and Hámávarán; he marries Súdába, the daughter of the king of Hámávarán, and through treachery is taken captive by him. On this the Arabs and Afrásiyáb both invade Írán and fight for its possession. The Íránians in despair appeal to Rustam, who rescues Kai Káús, defeats Afrásiyáb, and reinstates the Sháh, who, warned by past experience, rules justly for a time, rises to the height of his power, and builds himself great palaces on Mount Alburz. Afterward he falls again into temptation, tries to mount to heaven, is rescued again by Rustam, again repents, and again is restored to power. The Part concludes with an account of one of Rustam's raids into Túrán.

#### NOTE

§§ 1-6. In the accounts of Kai Káús' two expeditions to Barbaristán we have a duplication of tradition.

The late Professor Darmesteter has thrown considerable light on that obscure subject, Firdausi's geography in this part of the poem.<sup>1</sup> There are several Barbars, and he points out that the one here intended is the Berbera nearly opposite Aden in the British Somali Coast Protectorate. It is the Pun-t of the Egyptian hieroglyphs, and was then and is still a great trading station. When the south-west monsoon changes into the north-east wind thousands of traffickers begin to arrive, and the place is kept busy from October to April. Further, he points out with regard to Hámávarán that it is a form of the word Himyar, which is another name for Yaman. We may therefore conclude that Firdausi's notion was

---

<sup>1</sup> DEI, ii. 221-224.



that Kai Káuś marched from Nímruz to the sea-coast of Makrán (Balúchistán), there built his fleet, sailed past the southern shores of Arabia, and reached some spot north of Berbera on the western shore of the Red Sea. He would then, as Firdausí says, have Misr (Egypt) on his left hand, Barbar on his right, and the sea between him and his objective Hámávarán (Yaman), which confronted him across it. The matter has become confused from the fact that Firdausí had just stated that the people of Misr and Shám (Syria) had rebelled against Kai Káuś, and therefore Hámávarán has been assumed to mean Syria. We may add that the two historians Tabarí and Mas'údi both mention Kai Káuś' expedition to Yaman, and so far, though their accounts differ considerably from Firdausí's, support Professor Darmesteter's elucidation of this episode.<sup>1</sup>

The matter has been further confused by Firdausí's use of the word "Zirih" in this part of his work. The word is usually employed in connexion with the lakes and swamps of Sistán, which formally were much more extensive.<sup>2</sup> The word, however, is merely an older (Pahlavi) form of the modern Persian "daryá," a sea, lake, or river. It has come, however, to be regarded as a proper name, and such an expression as "the sea of Zirih" is not only tautological but distinctly misleading. We translate "Zirih" sea. The expedition of Kai Káuś looks like an attempt to capture an ancient trade-route.

The marriage of Kai Káuś with the daughter of the king of Hámávarán is the cause of serious trouble later on, as will appear in Part IV.

The reference to Syria and a certain similarity of circumstance suggest that in the account of the treacherous capture of Kai Káuś by the king of Hámávarán we have a distorted historical reminiscence of the overthrow of Antiochus Sidetes in the early spring of B.C. 128 or 129. Mithridates I., in the course of a reign of thirty-eight years (B.C. 174-136), had extended the narrow bounds of the Parthian kingdom both eastward and westward, to the Hindu Kush and to the Euphrates respectively. Westward the increase had taken place at the expense of the Seleucid kingdom of Syria. The successor of Mithridates—Phraates II.—made no attempt to enlarge his empire, but the king of Syria—Antiochus Sidetes—took the first opportunity to attempt to recover the provinces of which he had been deprived by Mithridates. He led a large and splendidly equipped host into Babylonia and thrice defeated Phraates II., who, though worsted, was not conquered, and still maintained himself with an army in the country. The three great cities of Babylon, Seleucia, and Ctesiphon, however, fell into the hands of

<sup>1</sup> ZT, i. 465. MM, ii. 119.

<sup>2</sup> See vol. i. p. 4.

the Syrians. Winter came on, and Antiochus Sidetes, resolved to maintain his advantage, distributed his forces throughout the cities and towns of Babylonia with the intention of renewing operations in the spring. The Syrian troops with their motley entourage of camp-followers, cooks, actors, etc., soon made themselves intolerable to the natives among and upon whom they were quartered. An understanding was entered into with Phraates II., who promised to be at hand with his army, and at a given signal the Syrian invaders, who were thoroughly enjoying themselves after their campaign and had been kept wholly ignorant of the impending danger, were attacked throughout Babylonia, and either massacred or taken captive. Antiochus Sidetes himself perished, his son Seleucus was taken prisoner and his niece as well, whom Phraates II. married.<sup>1</sup>

§§ 4 and 7. In the account of the invasion of Írán by the Arabs during the captivity of Kai Káús in Hámávarán, and their defeat by Afrásiyáb, we seem to have a reference to the invasions and conflicts that were actually going on during the period when the *Zandavasta* was being compiled or reconstructed, *i.e.* during the third century after the Christian era.<sup>2</sup> In the *Zandavasta* we read: "We sacrifice unto the awful kingly Glory, made by Mazda. . . . It was that Glory that Thraétaona bore with him when Azi Daháka was killed; that Glory that Frangrasyan, the Turanian, bore when the wicked Zainigau was killed."<sup>3</sup>

In the greater *Bundahish* we read: "There was a fiend called Zínigáv who had poison in his eye: he had come from the country of the Arabs to reign on Iran-Shahr: any man he gazed at with his evil eye, he killed. The Íránians called Frásyáv into their country, he killed that Zínigáv."<sup>4</sup> In the *Bundahish* Zínigáv is said to have been the grandfather of Zahhák,<sup>5</sup> the great protagonist of the Arab race in the *Sháhnáma*.<sup>6</sup> The Íránians, when they had to choose between the Túránians and the Arabs, preferred the former. Even the arch-enemy Afrásiyáb is allowed to have possessed for a while the divine Grace of kingship<sup>7</sup> when he opposed the common foe, the Arabs.<sup>8</sup>

§§ 8-10. We are told in the *Dinkard* that Kai Káús built himself seven dwellings on Mount Alburz, one of gold, two of silver, two of steel, and two of crystal, that he warred against the dívs of Mázandarán and fell into a trap which they laid to destroy him. To this end one of them undertook to tempt him by making him

<sup>1</sup> RP, 91 *seq.*

<sup>2</sup> See vol. i. p. 61 *seq.*

<sup>3</sup> DZA, ii. 307, as amended in i. l., *note.*

<sup>4</sup> *Id.*

<sup>5</sup> WPT, i. 131.

<sup>6</sup> See vol. i. pp. 54, 141.

<sup>7</sup> *Id.* p. 82.

<sup>8</sup> For the Arab invasions see *id.* p. 11.

discontented with his earthly sovereignty and inducing him to aspire to that of the sky of the archangels. He yielded to the tempter. Consequently the divine Glory left him, and he was only saved from destruction by the fravashi, or immortal principle, of the as yet unborn Kai Khusrau. Néryósang, the messenger of Urmuzd, was about to smite Káuś when the fravashi cried out: "Thou shouldst not smite him, O Néryósang . . . for if thou shouldst smite this man . . . *there will not be afterwards . . . a thorough destroyer of the high priest of Túrán; because owing to this man will be born him whose name is Sáyavakhsh, and owing to Sáyavakhsh I shall be born, who am the Khúsrói . . . so that I may accomplish the destruction of his champions and troops, when I would occasion a distant flight of the sovereign of Túrán.*" Accordingly Káuś was released and became discreet.<sup>1</sup>

Underground dwellings, such as Kai Káuś is said to have excavated for stabling purposes in connexion with his buildings, are very numerous in northern Írán.<sup>2</sup>

The reader will note that in § 9 we have Iblís where we should expect Áhriman, showing that this story came to Firdausí through the Arabic.<sup>3</sup>

§§ 11-14. In the story of the Fight of the Seven Warriors with which this part concludes we have an account of a border-foray of the Chevy Chase order. More than seven Íránian warriors, however, are mentioned.

## § 1

### *How Kai Káuś warred with the King of Hámávarán*

V. 379

We have received it both from archimage  
 And ancient bard of rustic lineage  
 That afterward Káuś resolved to make  
 A progress through his kingdom. From Írán  
 He journeyed to Túrán and Chín, and after  
 Passed to Makrán, and thence down to the sea  
 In state; men's waists knew neither belt nor buckle.  
 The chiefs all paid their tribute and their dues,  
 The Ox took care not to provoke the Lion.  
 Thence to Barbar they went—a brilliant throng  
 With crown and diadem, intent on conquest.

<sup>1</sup> WPT, iv. 220-223.

<sup>2</sup> GHP, i. 25, *note*.

<sup>3</sup> See vol. i. p. 70.

The monarch of Barbar prepared for war,  
 And matters changed their hue. A host came forth  
 And stayed the revels of the great king's troops,  
 The elephants were hidden by the dust,  
 Men saw not hand or rein. The hosts encountered  
 Like mighty waves. Gúdarz beholding this  
 Took from the saddle-bow his mighty mace,  
 Urged on his steed and, with a thousand warriors  
 With javelins and with breastplate-piercing arrows,  
 Closed with and brake the centre of the foe.  
 Behind him charged the Sháh, thou wouldst have  
 said :—

V. 380

“There is not left a cavalier or spearman  
 Within Barbar.” The elders of the country,  
 On seeing that the blast of war had passed,  
 Came to Káús, heart-broken, to seek peace,  
 And said : “We are thy slaves and bow our necks  
 To tribute ; we will pay in gold and jewels  
 Instead of drachms, and earn thy treasurer's praise.”

Káús received them graciously and taught them  
 New laws and ways. Anon the sound of bells  
 And cymbals rose with shouts and clarion-blare,  
 And he departed westward toward Mount Káf.  
 The people when they heard about the Sháh  
 Came forth to him and proffered fealty,  
 While all the great men went to welcome him,  
 And laid a heavy tribute on themselves.  
 When men performed his will with due submission  
 He and his host passed by and hurt them not.  
 He led the army to Zábulistán

V. 381

As Rustam's guests and tarried there a month  
 With hawk and cheetah, song and minstrelsy.

Ere long a bramble grew among the roses.  
 To meet with trials is the lot of all,  
 And he that mounteth must expect a fall.  
 The Arabs rose when all seemed going well.

A wealthy and aspiring man of parts  
 Set up his standard both in Misr and Shám,  
 The people turned away from Kai Káuś,  
 Renouncing fealty, who when he heard  
 Bade the drums sound and marched forth from Nímrúz  
 Light-heartedly, the soldiers wrote his name  
 Upon their shields, their swords shook in their  
     scabbards.

Unnoticed by the foe he led his host  
 Down to the sea, built ships of war and transports  
 Beyond compute, embarked the host and sailed  
 A thousand leagues as thou wouldst count on land  
 Till he arrived to win his own again  
 Where three states met—Misr on his left ; Barbar  
 Upon his right ; 'twixt him and his objective  
 Hámávarán, which fronted him, the sea.  
 Each had a mighty host. News came to them :—  
 “ Káuś hath crossed the water with his troops.”  
 The three conferred, their troops met at Barbar—  
 An army such that desert, sea, and mountain  
 Were all aweary of the horses' hoofs.  
 There was no room left for the ravening lion,  
 Or path for onager across the plains ;  
 The fish in water and the pard on rock,  
 The cloud and flying eagle in the air,  
 Sought passage, but what passage could there be  
 For wild things in a region so bested ?

Now when Káuś had disembarked his host  
 One saw not plain or mount. “ The world is mailed,”  
 Thou wouldst have said, “ each spearpoint is a star !”  
 What with the golden helms and golden shields,  
 And glittering axes borne upon the shoulder,  
 Thou wouldst have said : “ The earth is running gold,  
 And Indian scimitars are raining souls.”  
 The army's dust made heaven like sandarach,  
 The whole world turned as black as ebony,

The mountains shivered at the trumpets' blast,  
 And earth was bent beneath the horses' hoofs,  
 The din of tymbals would have made thee say :—  
 " Earth is one camp."

When from the Íránian host  
 The trump and drum were heard Bahráw, Gurgín,  
 And Tús came forth and, where Gúdarz was stationed,  
 Shídúsh, Farhád, and Gív let fall their reins, V. 383  
 And steeped the heads of all their spears in bane.  
 The horsemen bent upon the saddlebow,  
 And shout and crash of battle-ax were heard ;  
 Thou wouldst have said : " They quarry stone and iron,  
 Or dash down heaven to earth." When at the centre  
 Káús advanced, and host encountered host,  
 The eyes of men grew dim, vermilion rained  
 On lapislazuli, and thou hadst said :—  
 " The air is hailing and is planting tulips  
 Among the rocks." The javelins' eyes flashed fire,  
 And earth became as 'twere a sea of blood.  
 The Íránians so dismayed the three allies  
 That end and middle were all one to them.  
 The monarch of Hámávarán was first V. 384  
 To drop the scimitar and massive mace,  
 Saw that the day was lost and sorrowing sought  
 Peace with the Sháh, agreeing to send tribute,  
 Steeds, implements of war, and thrones and crowns,  
 Provided that Káús, when all was paid,  
 Should go and keep his troops from harrying.  
 Káús replied : " I grant you all protection.  
 Seek not my crown and throne."

He then marched back  
 Well pleased to camp, and from Hámávarán  
 An envoy brought him treasures, stores of arms,  
 With emeralds and other gems and said :—  
 " O just and mighty lord ! we chiefs and commons  
 Are dust upon thy feet and slaves of thine."

Be joyful and triumphant all thy years,  
And be the heads and fortunes of thy foes  
O'erturned."

He kissed the ground and bore to Tús  
The store of gold and gems, who therewithal  
Gave to each man a largess great or small.

## § 2

*How Káuś asked to Wife Súlába, the Daughter of the  
King of Hámávarán*

v. 385

Anon one said to Kai Káuś: "This monarch  
Hath in his bower a daughter goodlier  
In stature than a cypress, crowned with musk,  
With locks like lassos, dagger-shaped of tongue,  
With lips like sugar, decked like Paradise  
With charms, or like bright Sol in jocund spring.  
None else should be the consort of the Sháh:  
How good it were for him to mate this Moon!"

His heart was stirred, he answered: "It is well.  
I will demand her from her sire; her beauty  
Will well become my ladies' bower."

He chose

A man of noble birth, shrewd, wise, and grave,  
Bade him set forward to Hámávarán,  
And said: "Dispose the king to favour me,  
And charm his intellect with honied words.  
Say thus to him: 'The most redoubted chiefs  
Throughout the world seek mine affinity  
Because the sun is lighted from my crown,  
Earth is the footing of mine ivory throne,  
And one that sheltereth not beneath my shade  
Hath little standing-room. I seek to be  
Affined to thee and wash the face of peace.  
Now I have heard that thou hast in thy bower

A daughter who is worthy of my state,  
 Immaculate in form and countenance,  
 Praised everywhere by all. Thou wilt obtain  
 The son of Kai Kubád as son-in-law,  
 For know that Sol thus favoureth thy cause.'"

This shrewd man with the ready tongue approached  
 The ruler of Hámávarín, adorned  
 His tongue with eloquence, his heart with zeal,  
 And furnished forth his lips with courtesies.  
 He gave that monarch greeting from Káús,  
 Then did the embassy, which pained the king,  
 Who thought: "Though he be king of kings and world-  
 lord

Victorious and obeyed, I have no daughter  
 But this, and she is dearer than sweet life ;  
 Yet if I slight and spurn this messenger  
 I cannot fight. 'Tis best to shut mine eyes  
 To this affliction and repress my wrath."

V. 386

He answered that fair-spoken envoy thus :—  
 "He asketh of me much—two things unequalled  
 In preciousness ; my wealth is my support,  
 My child my treasure ; being robbed of her  
 My very heart is gone, yet I resign them  
 And yield to his request."

He called Súdába,  
 And full of sorrow spake thus of Káús :—  
 "A courteous envoy hath arrived and brought  
 A letter from that mighty lord, who lacketh  
 Naught that is great and good, to this effect :—  
 He would deprive me, though I wish it not,  
 Of heart-repose and all my peace of mind.  
 What dost thou say now ? What is thine own wish ?  
 What is thy shrewd decision in this case ?"

Súdába answered : "If this must be so  
 There is no need to sup on grief to-day.  
 Why grieve at union with the king of earth,



Who can deprive the mighty of their lands?  
This is not grief but joy."

V. 387

The king perceived  
That she was not unwilling, called the envoy,  
And gave him the chief place. They made a compact,  
Each with the rites and sanctions then obtaining.  
The broken-hearted monarch and his chiefs  
Were busied for a week, and then brought forth  
Two scores of litters and three hundred slaves,  
A thousand each of camels, steeds, and mules,  
Whose loads were of dínárs and of brocade,  
And 'neath the haudahs hung embroidered trappings.  
An escort was drawn up in long defile;  
The New Moon graced one litter; following her  
There came her marriage-portion, then the escort  
Arrayed like Paradise; thou wouldst have said:—  
"The heaven hath planted tulips in the earth!"

Now when that fair-faced troop and Heart's Delight  
Approached the presence of Sháh Kai Káuś  
A New Moon issued from the haudah like  
A new-throned monarch robed. There musk and rose  
Contrasted, and the earrings hung on civet;  
Eyes languished, cheeks were ruby-red, and eyebrows  
Sprang from a column like a silvern reed.  
Káuś in rapt amaze invoked God's name,  
He called the hoary, shrewd, and wise archmagés,  
And having judged her fit to be his consort  
He sanctioned his desires with legal rites.  
"I knew thee at first sight," he told his spouse,  
"Fit to adorn mine Idols' golden house."

## § 3

*How the King of Hámávarán made Káuś Prisoner*

Meanwhile the father grieved and sought a cure;  
So eight days afterward he sent at dawn

A messenger to Kai Káús to say:—

“If now the Sháh will be mine honoured guest  
The people of Hámávarán will be  
Much honoured too when they behold his face.”

In this wise sought he to entrap Káús,  
And being bad of heart and shrewd of wit,  
Thought to retain his kingdom and his child,  
And to escape all tribute. Now Súdába  
Knew that her sire meant outrage at a feast,  
And said to Kai Káús: “This is not well.  
Thou must not be his guest, lest at the banquet  
He make a brawl and get thee in his clutches.  
All this ado is made on mine account,  
And must result in thy discomfiture.”

V. 388

He heeded not her words because he held  
Her people feeble folk, and as a guest  
Went with his warriors and mighty men.  
The ruler of Hámávarán possessed  
A pleasure-city, Sháha hight, and had  
A residence therein. He decked the city  
Throughout, and when the exalted Sháh arrived  
The citizens all did him reverence,  
Showered gems and saffron, mingled ambergris  
With musk, and wove the sounds of harp and song  
Like warp and woof. The monarch and his nobles  
Descrying Sháh Káús approached on foot.  
The palace from the gateway to the hall  
Rained jewels, pearls, and gold; men poured them forth  
From golden trays and sifted ambergris  
And musk o’erhead. The king set up a throne  
Of gold within the palace and Káús  
Sat there in joy. He revelled for a week;  
The place delighted and enchanted him.  
The monarch of Hámávarán stood girded—  
A subject in his presence day and night—  
With all his troops to serve the Íránians

V. 389

Till each felt safe, and all suspicion ceased ;  
 But when the week was o'er their hosts were ready  
 And rose ; the soldiers of Barbaristán  
 Had been apprised and were upon the march :  
 Such was the plot. Their advent joyed the king.  
 At night came sound of trumpet and assault  
 When no Íránian was prepared for fight.  
 Forthwith the forces of Hámávarán  
 Seized on Káuś and Gív, Gúdarz and Tús,  
 Gurgín and Zanga son of Sháwarán,  
 And all the other famous warriors ;  
 These they took captive and bound fast in bonds,  
 And throne and Grace were shent ! What saith the man  
 Of insight and O sage ! what thinkest thou ?  
 " Trust in another man is not secure  
 Without the tie of blood to make it sure,  
 And even one so bound to thee may turn  
 His face away and thine affection spurn.  
 If then another's love thou fain wouldst try  
 Prove it in weal and in adversity,  
 For if in rank thou art more high than he  
 Then envy will abate his love for thee.  
 The course of this pernicious world is so,  
 It lightly changeth with all winds that blow."

Káuś was ta'en ; his over-confidence  
 Achieved the purpose of Hámávarán.  
 There was a mountain with a cloud-capt head,  
 Which God had lifted from the ocean-depths,  
 And on the mountain-top a fortress rose ;  
 Thou wouldst have said : " The sky is in its lap." 'Twas thither that the monarch sent Káuś,  
 Gív, and Gúdarz, and Tús ; the other chiefs  
 He flung inside that stronghold with the Sháh  
 Bound. Over it a thousand warriors,  
 All swordsmen of renown, kept watch. He gave  
 The camp-enclosure of Káuś to spoil,

Bestowing on his own chiefs crowns and purses.  
 Two files of ladies with a covered litter  
 Between them were deputed to escort  
 Súdába home and trampled on the tents.  
 Now when Súdába saw the ladies come  
 She rent her royal raiment and plucked out  
 Her musky tresses. With her filbert-nails  
 She stained her rosy cheeks the hue of blood,  
 Exclaiming thus : " Men that are men indeed  
 Hold in contempt such tricks and outrages.  
 Ye should have bound him on the day of battle  
 What time his robe was mail, his throne a steed,  
 And chieftains such as Gírv, Gúdarz, and Tús  
 Rent with their drums your hearts. Ye make the  
 throne  
 Of gold an ambushade and break your faith."

She called the servants " dogs," her jasmine-skin  
 Was smirched with blood, she did not spare her words. •  
 She said : " I will not part with Kai Káús  
 Although he shall be hidden in the dust,  
 And, since he needs must drag his chain, behead me  
 All guiltless as I am."

They told her sire,  
 Who was enraged and, eager for revenge,  
 Dispatched her to his fortress, broken-hearted  
 With blood-stained cheeks to join her husband there.  
 Thenceforth she sat in sorrow with the king  
 Engaged in tending him and comforting.

#### § 4

*How Afrásiyáb invaded the Land of Írán*

The ambitious Sháh being bound, his army made  
 Toward Írán, and having passed the sea  
 In ships and transports crossed the desert homeward.

V. 391

When they arrived 'twas bruited through the realm :—  
 “The Cypress-tree is missing from the garden,  
 The throne of king of kings is overturned.”

Now when men saw the golden throne left void  
 They all desired the crown ; upon each side  
 Great hosts of Turkmans and of desert-spearmen  
 Approached, cries rose from both sides of Írán,  
 And peace was changed to strife. Áfrásiyáb  
 Joined battle fiercely with the Árábian host ;  
 They fought three months, and many heads were  
 lost

To win a crown, the Arabs were o'erthrown,  
 And all their gain was loss. The Turkman troops  
 O'er-ran the country and enslaved the folk.

It is the custom of this Wayside Inn  
 That greed should bring both travail and chagrin ;  
 At last both good and evil pass away ;  
 Death is the hunter and this world his prey.

V. 392

The people said : “Our fortunes are o'erturned,  
 We are confronted with a grievous case.  
 Woe for Írán, for it is desolate,  
 The lair of pards and lions ! 'Twas erewhile  
 All warrior-horsemen and the seat of kings,  
 But now a scene of hardship and of bale,  
 The dwelling-place of dragons sharp of claw !  
 Seek we a remedy and banish care.  
 One fed on leopards' milk shall succour us ;  
 Dispatch we then a sage in state to Rustam.”

An archmage went to him and told the tidings,  
 And Rustam, deeply moved, wept tears of gall.  
 He answered : “I and mine are girt for vengeance.  
 First I will sec about Káús, then sweep  
 The Turkman from Írán.”

V. 393

He summoned troops,  
 Who flocked to him out of Zábul, Kábul,  
 And Hindústán. Throughout his wide domain

Arose the sound of trump and Indian bell.  
The heart of Rustam raged like fire ; he led  
The army forth and like a storm-wind sped.

## § 5

*How Rustam sent a Message to the King of Hámávarán*

Then Rustam sent a wary messenger  
To make his way to Kai Káús and say :—  
“ I am approaching with a mighty host  
To fight the ruler of Hámávarán.  
Be glad of heart and feed not on thy grief :  
Behold ! I am already in the land.”

Withal a man of name among the chiefs  
Went to the ruler of Hámávarán,  
And Rustam wrote to him in warlike terms  
A letter all mace, scimitar, and fray :—  
“ Thou hast entrapped our Sháh and broken faith.  
It is not manly to use guile in war,  
Nor art thou dour like the bold crocodile  
Which never ambuscadeth in the fight  
Although its heart be brimming with revenge.  
Thou shalt escape the Dragon’s evil clutch  
If Sháh Káús be set at large ; if not,  
Prepare thyself to feel my weight in battle.  
Thou surely must have heard the chieftains tell  
Of how I fought against Mázandarán,  
Fought with Púlád son of Ghundí and Bíd,  
And smote the White Dív.”

V. 394.

As he read the letter  
The king turned dizzy, and the world grew dark  
Before his eyes. He answered : “ Kai Káús  
Shall never set foot on the plain, and when  
Thou comest to Barbaristán, and all  
Thy cavaliers have fled, a chain and pit  
Are ready for thee too. If these delights

V. 395 Allure thee I, according to our custom,  
Will meet thee with my troops."

When Rustam heard  
The answer, and the chieftains had assembled,  
The trumpets sounded and he mounted Rakhsh.  
He went by sea because the way by land  
Was tedious, crossing to Hámávarán  
With all his mighty host in ships and transports.  
The troops were ready both to spoil and slay,  
And banished all compunction from their hearts.

V. 396 Now when the monarch of Hámávarán  
Had news of vengeful Rustam and his host  
He raged, the war-cry rose, and all the world  
Seethed up in blood and pillage. Rustam donned  
His armour, mounted on the snorting Rakhsh,  
And shouldering his mace charged furiously.  
Whenas the foemen saw his chest and arms,  
And how he handled mace and battle-ax,  
Thou wouldst have said: "They have no hearts at  
all."

\* They scattered in their fear of him, and thus  
That great host fled back to Hámávarán.  
The king in conclave summoned two young men  
In order to dispatch them to Barbar  
And Misr, like rushing wind, each with a letter  
Penned in distress of heart with blood for ink,  
V. 397 And thus it ran: "Our realms confine, we share  
In good and evil, and in fight and feast.  
If ye will join with me I fear not Rustam  
In fight; if not, the evil will extend,  
And evil's hand extendeth on all sides."

Whenas the letter reached the kings, announcing  
That Rustam led his host across the desert,  
They feared, bestirred themselves, arrayed their powers  
And marched toward Hámávarán. The land  
Became all hill, troops stretched from range to range,

And dust obscured the moon. Then Rustam sent  
 A warrior in haste to Sháh Káús  
 By stealth to say: "The monarchs of three realms  
 Approach to fight—brave men who shall not know  
 Their heads from feet when I encounter them;  
 But thou must not be injured by our strife  
 Since evil men are prone to outrages,  
 And e'en Barbar's throne would avail me not  
 If ill befell the person of the Sháh."

Káús made answer: "Have no care for this;  
 The earth was not spread out for me alone,  
 And bane will mix with sweets and love with hate  
 While heaven turneth. God too is my friend,  
 My refuge, and my stronghold is His love.  
 Give Rakhsh the rein, and level to his ears  
 Thy lance's point; let not a foe remain  
 In arms or hiding."

Matchless Rustam heard,  
 Armed, and went forth to battle, urged fleet Rakhsh  
 Along, and challenged all the world to fight,  
 Then stood alone and glared upon the foe,  
 But no one dared though Rustam waited long,  
 Until bright Sol was setting in the sea,  
 And dark-hued night was coming on apace.  
 Then that great elephantine chief returned,  
 And rested in his tent till night was passed;  
 The next day, when the sun grew bright again,  
 He came forth and arrayed his mighty men.

V. 398

## § 6

*How Rustam fought with Three Kings and delivered Káús*

Next day they set the battle in array  
 And raised their standards. When the peerless Rustam  
 Had led his forces to the field, and viewed



The armies of three monarchs and three realms,  
 He thus harangued his noble warriors :—  
 “Keep your eyelashes well apart to-day,  
 And look to mane and forelock, steed and rein,  
 With both eyes on your spearpoints. Be the foe  
 A hundred or a hundred thousand horse  
 Their sum importeth not for, since the All-holy  
 Is our ally, I will bring down their heads  
 To dust.”

V. 399

The monarchs on their side were seated  
 On elephants; their forces stretched two miles.  
 Barbaristán sent eight score elephants  
 All foaming like the Nile, Hámávarán  
 Contributed a hundred more—huge beasts—  
 And had a line of battle two miles long,  
 And thirdly was arrayed the power of Misr.  
 The atmosphere was darkened, earth was hidden,  
 And thou hadst said: “The world is all of iron,”  
 Or: “Mount Alburz hath donned a coat of mail.”  
 Behind the warriors’ backs amid the dust  
 Waved flags of yellow, red, and violet;  
 The mountains echoed with the heroes’ shouts,  
 And earth was weary of the tramp of steeds.  
 Then were the claws and hearts of lions rent,  
 And lusty eagles flung their plumes away,  
 The clouds of heaven melted in mid air,  
 For how could anything oppose such troops?  
 The Íránians ranked the host to right and left,  
 The heroes longed for battle and revenge.  
 Guráza held the right where was the baggage,  
 Upon the left was glorious Zawára—  
 A Dragon and a Lion in the fray—  
 While Rustam at the centre, with coiled lasso  
 Hung to his saddlebow, bade sound the advance.  
 Then sword and javelin gleamed; thou wouldst have  
 said :—

V. 400

"Heaven hath sown earth with tulips," and where  
 Rustam  
 Urged Rakhsh: "He spreadeth fire," and: "All the  
 waste  
 Is as a Zam<sup>1</sup> of blood, not like a field  
 Of elephantine Rustam's." Helméd heads  
 Were smitten off, and plain and hollow strewn  
 With mail. The peerless hero urged on Rakhsh  
 And, deigning not to slaughter common folk,  
 Charged at the king of Shám and lassoed him  
 (Thou wouldst have said the lasso crushed his waist),  
 Then snatched him from the saddle, like a ball  
 Struck by a polo-stick, and flung him down.  
 Bahrám made fast his hands. They captured sixty  
 Of name and deluged plain and hill with blood.  
 The monarch of Barbar and forty chiefs  
 Were taken prisoners by Guráza's hand,  
 And when the monarch of Hámávarán  
 Beheld his soldiers slain on every side,  
 Beheld a troop of wounded warriors,  
 Another troop fast bound in heavy chains,  
 And valiant Rustam with his trenchant sword  
 Creating Doomsday on the battlefield,  
 He felt: "This day is one of bale," and sent  
 To Rustam to ask quarter, promising  
 To give up Kai Káús and all the leaders,  
 And to restore the treasures, crowns, and jewels,  
 The tent-enclosures, thrones, and golden girdles,  
 And slaves. They made a peace and then disbanded  
 Three hosts. The monarch of Hámávarán  
 Went home and sat in council, sent, and fetched  
 Káús, and righted him. When Rustam thus  
 Released the Sháh with Gív, Tús, and Gúdarz,  
 He stored three kingdoms' arms, three monarchs' riches,  
 The tents, the crowns, and everything of value,

V. 401

V. 402

<sup>1</sup> The name of a river.

Among the treasures of Sháh Kai Káuś,  
 Who then refulgent in his sun-like Grace  
 Prepared a gilded litter of brocade  
 Of Rúm, a crown of gems, a turquoise seat,  
 A sable housing decked with jewelry,  
 And placed them on a steed of easy pace,  
 Whose bridle was adorned with gold. He made  
 The litter out of fresh-cut aloe-wood  
 Inlaid with many divers kinds of gems,  
 And bade Súdába take her seat therein  
 Secluded like the sun beneath the earth,  
 Then led the army campward from the city  
 To reassert his claims upon Írán.  
 A hundred thousand horsemen from Barbar,  
 Hámávarán, and Misr assembled round him,  
 While his own host was fifteen thousand score  
 Of cavaliers on bardéd steeds and more.

## § 7

*How Káuś sent a Message to Afrásiyáb*

V. 403

Now when the Arab spearmen of the desert  
 Heard from Hámávarán of Rustam's doings  
 With Misr and with Barbar and with their kings,  
 They chose a wise and valiant man, well skilled  
 In horsemanship and javelin-play, and wrote  
 A royal letter couched in fitting terms.  
 "We are," they said, "the servants of the Sháh  
 And only walk the world at his command;  
 So when a host came from the Kargasárs  
 To seek his throne our hearts were greatly grieved  
 At such presumption. When Afrásiyáb  
 Desired thy throne (may none such dream thereof)  
 We chiefs and swordsmen went forth to the field  
 With our long spears and turned his joy and ease

V. 404

To bitterness. On both sides many fell,  
 The age grew conversant with good and evil,  
 And now we hear of thee and that the Grace  
 Of king of kings reviveth. When thou comest  
 Back from Barbar we all will shoulder spears,  
 Fill earth from hill to hill with foemen's blood,  
 And make the world run like Jihún."

The envoy

Spurred forth toward Barbaristán, the Sháh  
 Received the letter couched in such fair terms,  
 Then wrote a letter to Afrásiyáb:—  
 "Quit thou Írán and limit thine ambition.  
 I wonder much at what I hear of thee.  
 Thou hast no wants, thou joyest in Túrán;  
 Then be not covetous or fondly grasping  
 At ill, which soon will bring thee lengthy toils.  
 A smaller matter is enough for thee—  
 To save thy skin. Dost know not that Írán  
 Is my seat, earth all mine? The boldest leopard  
 Will never dare to face the lion's claws."

He gave a paladin the letter sealed,  
 Who reached the monarch of Túrán and Chín  
 In haste, first kissed the ground and did obeisance,  
 And after compliments gave him the letter  
 Which, when Afrásiyáb had read it, filled  
 His head with vengeance and his heart with rage.  
 He answered: "Only miscreants talk thus.  
 In thy case, if Írán had satisfied thee  
 Thou hadst not coveted Hámávarán,  
 And now that I have won Írán, and raised  
 My fluttering flag, that broad campaign is mine  
 On two accounts; thou needs must hear the truth:  
 First—I inherit all the land from Túr,  
 My grandsire and the son of Farídún;  
 And secondly—I cleared it of the Arabs  
 With my sword-arm. I with my scimitar

V. 405

V. 406

Behead the mountains and bring eagles down  
From their dark cloud-tops."

V. 407

He equipped his troops,  
And marched in person to oppose Káuś,  
Who, when he heard, arrayed a boundless host  
And from Barbar marched to Arabia  
To meet Afrásiyáb; the world was filled  
With trump and tymbal-din, the sky was ebony,  
The earth was iron. What with crash of ax  
And twang of bow a blood-wave swept the field,  
While Rustam thundering from the centre broke  
The foemen with one charge. On that field slept  
The fortunes of Túrán. Afrásiyáb  
Boiled, like fermenting must, without a fire,  
And cried: "O gallant hearts of mine, my Lions,  
And chosen chiefs! 'twas for a time like this  
That ye were reared upon my breast, and now  
Ye play at battle with mine Arab foes!  
Be strong, renew the fight, and make the world  
Too narrow for Káuś, spear and cut down  
His warriors, and behead his haughty chiefs.  
As for this lion-hearted man of Sigz,<sup>1</sup>  
Who maketh heaven redden with his sword,  
Be bold and take him captive with your lassos.  
Whoever on the battlefield shall bring him  
Down from the pard-skin to the dust shall have  
A realm, a parasol, my daughter's hand,  
And be entitled 'captain of the host;'  
Him will I make the lord of all Írán,  
And will exalt him to revolving heaven."

V. 408

Thereat the Turkmans rallied to the fight.  
With massive maces in their hands the brave,  
The chieftains of Írán, so slaughtered them  
That rivers, plains, and hills were strewn with slain—

<sup>1</sup> According to C, glossary (*s.v.*), a mountain in Zábulistán where Rustam was born, but more probably = Sajistán = Sistán.

The more part of their host—and earth was puddled  
With blood to clay. The Turkmans' fortune slept.  
Afrásiyáb fled Rustam with the troops  
From Ghúr; he sought for gain but gained a loss,  
And seeing fortune's bent left them and stricken  
Marched toward Túrán, his warriors mostly slain:  
He searched the world for honey and found bane.

## § 8

*How Káús ordered the World*

Káús arrived at Párs, the world began  
An age of happiness. He acted justly,  
Adorned the throne, and gave free scope to feasting;  
He sent forth wise and noble paladins  
With troops to all parts—Marv and Níshápúr,  
Harát and Balkh. Then justice ruled the world;  
The wolf eyed not the lamb. Such were his treasures,  
His state, and Grace, that fairies, men, and dívs  
Served him, all were his lieges, other kings  
Were soldiers in his host. He gave the office  
Of paladin of paladins to Rustam—  
The author of his weal—and wearied out  
The dívs to build himself on Mount Alburz  
Two mansions, each ten lassos long, which they  
Constructed at his bidding of hard stone.  
He excavated stables in the rocks,  
The columns were of stone with clamps of steel,  
And there he kept the war-steeds and the camels  
To ride or carry litters. He erected  
A pleasure-house of crystal, studding it  
With emeralds; a cupola of onyx  
Brought from Yamán, and there installed archmages  
That learning might not fail; two armouries  
Of virgin silver and a golden palace

Twice sixty cubits high for his own seat  
 With turquoise traceries; he spared not jewels.  
 It was a dwelling after his own heart,  
 Where daily provand waxed continually.  
 There was no summertide or wintertide,  
 The air was ambergris, the rain was wine,  
 The days of springtide lasted all the year,  
 And roses there were like a maiden's blush,  
 The heart was far from sorrow, pain, and travail,  
 The dívs were harmless being spent with toil.  
 So good and just was he that fortune slept,  
 While drudging dívs beneath his rigour wept.

## § 9

*How Káuś, beguiled by Iblís, ascended the Sky*

One dawn Iblís, unknown to Kai Káuś,  
 Addressed the assembled dívs: "Our daily task  
 Is one of cruel labour for the Sháh.  
 We need a dív shrewd and presentable  
 To tempt him, soil his Grace, wean him from God,  
 And thus abate his tyranny."

V. 410

They heard

And mused. None answered, for they feared Káuś.  
 At length a wicked dív arose and said:—  
 "Be mine this subtile task. I will pervert  
 His mind from God as none but I can do."

Appearing as a youth of good address  
 And mien, he waited till the famous Sháh  
 Went hunting from Pahlav. The dív approached  
 With roses to present, then kissed the ground,  
 And said: "Thy glory and thy Grace are such  
 That heaven is thy fit home and earth thy slave;  
 Thou art the shepherd, nobles are the sheep.  
 One thing is lacking still—that thou shouldst leave

Thine everlasting mark upon the world.  
 How is it that the sun concealeth from thee  
 The secret of its rising and its setting?  
 What is the moon? What are the night and day,  
 And who is master of the turning sky?  
 Thou hast the earth and all thou didst desire;  
 Now take the heaven also in thy toils."

The Sháh's heart strayed, he tarried not to think,  
 Convinced that turning heaven favoured him.

He knew not that the sky is ladderless,

Nor that, though stars be many, God but One,

What ever He commandeth must be done

V. 411

How ever great the struggle and the stress.

The Maker hath no need of sky and earth;

'Twas for thy sake that both of them had birth.

The Sháh mused how to roam the air though wing-  
 less,

And often asked the wise: "How far is it

From earth to moon?"

The astrologers replied.

He chose a futile and perverse device:

He bade men scale the aeries while the eagles

Were sleeping, take a number of the young,

And keep a bird or two in every home.

He had those eaglets fed a year and more

With fowl, kabáb, and at some whiles with lamb.

When they were strong as lions and could each

Bear off a mountain-sheep he made a throne

Of aloe from Kumár<sup>1</sup> with seats of gold.

He bound a lengthy spear at every corner,

Suspended a lamb's leg from every spear-head,

Brought four strong eagles, tied them to the throne,

And took his seat, a cup of wine before him.

The swift-winged eagles, ravenous for food,

Strove lustily to reach the flesh, and raising

<sup>1</sup> Cape Comorin.



The throne above earth's surface bore it cloudward.

Káús, as I have heard, essayed the sky

To outsoar angels, but another tale

Is that he rose in this way to assail

The heaven itself with his artillery.

The legend hath its other versions too ;

None but the All-wise wotteth which is true.

Long flew the eagles, but they stopped at last,

Like other slaves of greed. They sulked exhausted,

They drooped their sweating wings and brought the

Sháh,

His spears, and throne down from the clouds to earth,

Alighting in a forest near Ámul.<sup>1</sup>

The world preserved him by a miracle,

But hid its secret purposes therein.

In answer to his prayers a duck<sup>2</sup> appeared,

For something must be had to eat and drink,

And if Sháh Kai Káuś had perished there

Worldlord Khusrau had not been born from him.<sup>3</sup>

Instead of sitting on his throne in might

His business then was penitence and travail.

He tarried in the wood in shame and grief

Imploring from Almighty God relief.

## § 10

### *How Rustam brought back Káuś*

While thus the Sháh sought pardon his own host  
Was searching for him everywhere. When Rustam  
With Gív and Tús gat news of him they marched  
With many troops and drums. Said old Gúdarz  
To Rustam : " Since my mother suckled me

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.

<sup>2</sup> Sîyáwush ; also the name of the yet unborn son of Kai Káuś and father of Kai Khusrau.

<sup>3</sup> Couplet inserted from C. See introductory note to this Part.

I have been conversant with crown and throne,  
 With kings and great men of unsleeping fortune,  
 But have not seen in all the world a man  
 'Midst high and low so self-willed as Káús.  
 He hath no wisdom, common sense, or Faith,  
 He is wrong-headed and wrong-hearted too.  
 Thou wouldest say : ' He hath no brains, his thoughts  
 Are all awry.' None of the great of yore  
 Hath e'er essayed the heavens. Like witless madmen V. 413  
 He is borne off his feet by every wind."

Whenas the paladins arrived they rated  
 The Sháh. "The madhouse is thy proper place,"  
 Gúdarz said, "not the city. Thou surrenderest  
 Thy seat to foes and tellest none thy whims.  
 Thrice hast thou been in trouble, yet thy head  
 Is none the wiser ! To Mázandarán  
 Thou led'st a host, and look what mischief followed !  
 Again, thou madest merry with a foe,  
 Yet thou—his idol—hadst to worship him !  
 And when none in the world save holy God  
 Remained to read the title of thy sword,  
 Since earth was conquered, thou must needs try heaven,  
 Although to soar one hand-breadth is revolt.  
 What bale hast thou encountered yet escaped !  
 Hereafter folk will tell of thee : ' A Sháh  
 Went to the sky to see the sun and moon,  
 And count the stars.' Now do as princes do  
 When prudent, pious, and beneficent—  
 Serve God and Him alone in weal and woe."

Káús, abashed before those famous heroes,  
 Replied : "No harm can come of righteous judgment ;  
 Thy words are righteous and thou hast convinced me."

He wept gall, called on God, and took his seat  
 Distressed and penitent within the litter.  
 He reached his lofty throne, but, being troubled  
 Still at his great offence, he quitted it

And entered not his palace out of shame,  
 But paced the dust in prayer before his God  
 For forty days. Thou wouldst have said: "His skin  
 Hath burst." He prayed with tears of blood and  
     wailed

For Grace. Abashed to meet the mighty men  
 He ceased from banquetings and audiences,  
 Repented and did penance, giving largess,  
 And laid his cheek upon the darksome dust  
 In prayer to God who in a while forgave him.  
 His scattered troops assembled at his gate;  
 God's pardon gave him brightness; he was ware  
 That penance had borne fruit. He took his seat  
 Crowned on the throne of gold, gave to his troops  
 A donative, reformed the world, and grew  
 A Light to great and small; thou wouldst have said:—  
 "The world, now right is done, is all brocade,  
 The king of kings illumineth the throne."  
 From every province those illustrious chiefs,  
 That had assumed the crown, renewed allegiance  
 And journeyed to his court, old times returned,  
 The monarch bathed his crown in love and faith,  
 The princes all attended as his slaves  
 Before him while he sat upon his throne  
 Of jewel-work with crown and ox-head mace.

V. 415

I tell the tale as I have heard it told,  
 And none hath such another to unfold.  
 Such were the actions of the worldlord king  
     And Rustam, chief of paladins! Whene'er  
     A king is just then all is well and fair;  
 He needeth not to cry for succouring.  
 Káús saw what was right, did what was right,  
 A breath of wind was this world in his sight.

# THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF THE SEVEN WARRIORS

## § 11

*How Rustam went with the Seven Warriors to the  
Hunting-ground of Afrásiyáb*

To strive with death is but a bootless strife,  
Such is the moral taught by Rustam's life.  
A minstrel whom a lion once surprised—  
A man of valiant heart—thus moralised :—  
“If thou wouldst have the glory of the brave,  
And wouldst imbrue in blood an Indian glave,  
Seek not to spare thyself, for destiny  
Will not be balked when 'tis the time to die.  
If, being wise, thou keepest death in sight  
The brave will count thee not a man of might.  
Both Faith and wisdom sanction not this course,  
But their good teaching is enslaved by force.”

A goodly gest of Rustam's next I tell.  
Once at Nawand—that place of palaces—  
The mighty hero gave a splendid feast  
Where tall Barzín<sup>1</sup> now beaconeth the way.  
The great men of Írán— a famous band—  
Tús and Gudárz son of Kishwád, Bahrám  
And Gív—both noble men—Gurgín and Zanga,  
Kharrád and Gustaham, that haughty swordsman  
Barzín and, crown of all the band, Guráza,  
Assembled at the place of banqueting,  
Each with his meiny—an illustrious throng.  
They spent a while at polo, wine, and hunting,  
And, when they all were merry, Gív bemused  
Said thus to Rustam : “O illustrious chief!

V. 416

<sup>1</sup> The name of a fire-temple.

Come let us, if thou hast a mind to hunt,  
 Hide from the great Afrásiyáb's preserves  
 The sun's resplendent visage with the dust  
 Of horsemen, cheetahs, hawks, and our long spears.  
 There let us chase the rapid onager,  
 O'ercome the lion with the sword, and take  
 Boars with the spear and pheasants with the hawk  
 Throughout the livelong day. Come let us go  
 A-hunting in yon desert of Túrán  
 To make ourselves a memory in the world."

V. 417

Then Rustam answered: "Bê it as thou wilt,  
 And prosper thou. Seek we Túrán at dawn  
 To hunt and harry in the deserts there."

They all agreed and, when they rose next day,  
 Made ready eagerly, and setting forth  
 With cheetahs, hawks, and baggage bravely sped  
 Toward the Shahd across the hunting-ground  
 Of great Afrásiyáb, on one side mountains,  
 A river on another side, Sarakhs  
 Upon the third, a wilderness in front.  
 Both deer and sheep flocked on the plain, which  
 soon

Was occupied by tents and huts. The deer  
 Were frightened by the company, the lions  
 No longer ravened there, birds as they flew  
 Knew something of the sport, for bird and beast  
 Lay everywhere in heaps, some killed, some wounded.  
 The hunters were light-hearted, full of glee,  
 With laughter constantly upon their lips,  
 And having spent a sennight wine in hand  
 Were jovially bemused. The peerless Rustam  
 Came as the eighth day dawned with needful warn-  
 ings:—

V. 418

"Afrásiyáb no doubt hath heard of us  
 By this. We must not let that Áhriman  
 Take counsel with his famous officers,

Devise a ruse, come forth to fight, and rob  
Our cheetahs of their hunting-grounds. We need  
An outpost on the road to bring us news,  
However scanty, of our enemies;  
We must not let them cut us off."

The chief

Of all the offspring of Gívgán—Guráza—  
Girt him for that emprise. With such a watchman  
The ruses of the foe were nothing worth.  
The others hunted in security.  
At length Afrásiyáb gat news of them  
At sleeping-time and called his veteran chiefs,  
Discoursed to them at large of Rustam, told them  
About the seven warriors—lion-like  
And gallant cavaliers—and thus he said:—  
"We must not dally, but devise a ruse,  
And fall upon them unawares. If we  
Can seize these seven warriors we shall straiten  
The world for Kai Káús. We must go forth  
As if to hunt and take them by surprise."

He chose him thirty thousand famous swordsmen,  
And spake thus: "Go not by the beaten track,  
And slumber not but hasten night and day."

V. 420

They hastened forth along the desert-route.  
And raised their necks for strife. Afrásiyáb  
Dispatched meanwhile to cut those proud chiefs off  
A countless host. As they drew near the chace,  
Advancing quickly eager for revenge,  
The outpost saw them like a darksome cloud,  
While dust arose like lapislazuli  
Wherein a flag appeared. Like rushing wind  
He turned back shouting lustily and found  
The matchless Rustam and his mates at wine,  
Then cried: "O Rustam, lion-man! away  
With these delights, for such a countless host  
Appareth that the plain and heights are one;

The standard of the fell Afrásiyáb  
Is shining sun-like through the clouds of dust!"

Then Rustam, laughing heartily, replied:—

"Victorious fortune is with us, why fear  
The Turkman king and dust of Turkman horse?  
All told he is not five score thousand strong,  
And were I by myself upon this plain,  
What with my battle-ax, cuirass, and Rakhsh,  
I should not trouble for Afrásiyáb  
With all his mighty army and his dash;  
Nay, any one of us upon the field  
Would over-match the whole host of Túrán.  
A battle-ground like this is all I need;  
I want not I the Íránian warriors.  
We have a band of seven cavaliers,  
Such men of name, such swordsmen, that each one  
Will match five hundred, two will match a thousand,  
Skilled cavaliers and spearmen though they be.  
And now, cup-bearer! fill up to the brim  
The goblet with the vintage of Zábul."

V. 421

They poured the wine, and Rustam's spirits rose;  
He took a bowl and toasted Kai Káuś.  
"I give the monarch of the age," he said,  
"And may he flourish ever soul and body,"  
Then kissed the ground. Again he took the cup,  
And cried: "This goblet do I drain to Tús."

Thereat those princes of the worldlord rose  
And prayed the paladin have them excused.  
"We can no more," they said; "Iblís himself  
Could not drink fair with thee. Wine, one-blow mace,  
And battlefield are thine and thine alone."

Then from a golden cup the hero drank  
Zawára's health in red wine of Zábul,  
Whereat Zawára took the cup in hand,  
And he too gave the health of Kai Káuś,  
Then quaffed the wine and kissed the face of earth,

While Rustam fell to praising him and said :—  
 “ The brother doth the brother's cup essay !  
 A Lion he, the wine-cup is his prey.”

## § 12

*How Rustam fought with the Túránians*

“ O glory of the monarch and the chiefs ! ”  
 Said Gív to Rustam, “ I will seize and hold  
 The bridge against the foe, so that our men  
 May arm, for mirth is over.”

V. 422

With strung bow

He ran toward the bridge but found the king  
 Across already leading on his van.  
 Then matchless Rustam donned his tiger-skin,  
 Bestrode his huge fell Elephant, and went  
 With roarings like a bellowing crocodile  
 Against the Turkman host. Thou wouldst have said  
 That when Afrásiyáb caught sight of Rustam  
 Mailed, with such hands and breast and arms and neck  
 And shouldered battle-axe, he swooned away.  
 Tús and Gúdarz, the wielders of the lance,  
 Gurgín and Gív, the gallant cavaliers,  
 Bahrám, Barzín, Farhád, and Zanga son  
 Of Sháwarán, the warriors, sprang up,  
 All with their spears and Indian swords in hand,  
 And ranged themselves like leopards for the combat.  
 Gív, like a lion that hath lost its prey,  
 Rushed to the fight and with his whirling mace  
 Laid many stalwart Turkman chieftains low.  
 Their fortune was averse, the fighting-men  
 Of Chín recoiled. Afrásiyáb astound  
 Rushed forth to join the mellay. Rustam saw,  
 And, shouldering his massive mace and gripping  
 His charger firmly, came before the host

V. 423

V. 424



With lion's roars. Behind him was Gúdarz,  
Son of Kishwád, in mail with mace of steel.

V. 425

When the Túránians' eyes were growing dim,  
And Rustam's helm touched heaven, Afrásiyáb  
Spake to Pírán the son of Wísa, saying:—  
"O full of wisdom and my loyal chieftain,  
Most famous of the Lions of Túrán,  
Aspiring and redoubted! ply thy reins,  
Go forth with speed, and clear the field of foes.  
Írán is thine if thou dost conquer; thou  
Hast elephantine form and lion's claws."

Pírán departed like a rushing wind,  
Arrayed ten thousand Turkmans—gallant swordsmen  
Of high renown—and came like fire on Rustam,  
For victory or defeat both hung on him.  
That hero foamed and, as thou wouldst have said,  
Eclipsed the sun. He urged his charger on;  
A roar arose as of the rising sea.

V. 426

With shield o'er head and Indian sword in hand  
He slew most of those chiefs. Afrásiyáb  
Saw this from far and said thus to his nobles:—  
"If they fight thus till dark there will not be  
A single horseman left! Think we no more  
Of battle. We came forth to fight the Íránians  
And in our own conceit were lions then,  
Yet now I seem a fox as I survey  
The plain, and feel a skulker from the fray!"

## § 13

*How Pílsam fought with the Íránians*

There was a warrior, by name Pílsam,  
Of royal race and eager for renown,  
His sire was glorious Wísa and his brother  
Victorious Pírán. Both in Írán

And in Túrán he had no peer save Rustam.  
 On hearing what Afrásiyáb had said  
 He frowned with rage and, hasting to the king,  
 Cried in his eager longing for the fray:—  
 “A youthful warrior of this host am I.  
 What dust before me are the valiant Túš  
 And gallant Gív—that Lion known to fame—  
 Bahrám and Zanga son of Sháwarán,  
 And brave Guráza ! At the king’s command  
 I will go lion-like, smite off their heads,  
 O’ercloud their moon, and bring their crowns to dust.”

The king replied: “O famous warrior !  
 May victory be thine. Thou must prevail  
 And come back conquering and glorious.”

Thereat Pílsam roared like a brazen trumpet,  
 Charged the Íránian centre swift as dust,  
 And struck to right and left with sword and ax,  
 With lion-roars assailed Gurgín like wind,  
 And smote upon the head his foeman’s charger,  
 Which came down headlong in its agony.  
 This Gustaham, the well approved in war,  
 Beheld and, swiftly rushing from his post,  
 Made like a raging lion for Pílsam,  
 And closing with that fiercely blazing Fire  
 Thrust at his foeman’s belt ; the buckles held ;  
 The spear was shivered in his grasp ; he flung  
 The haft away. Pílsam drew his keen sword,  
 Struck Gustaham with fury on the crest,  
 And sent his helmet rolling, leaving him  
 Stunned and disarmed. When Zanga on the right  
 Saw that fierce struggle he advanced to help,  
 And marked the evil plight of Gustaham.  
 Pílsam the Crocodile opposed the charge,  
 And, coming with an Indian sword in hand,  
 Struck at and clave the mail of Zanga’s steed,  
 Which tumbled prone. The gallant warrior fell,

V. 427

V. 428

Took up, and knit his mail-skirt round his waist  
 To strive afoot against the great Pílsam  
 Amid the dust—the prey against the lion.  
 Dark clouds of dust rose from the scene of strife.  
 Gív, looking from the centre of the host  
 And seeing earth dark in the heroes' eyes,  
 Roared like the thunder on the mountain-top,  
 Or like the savage lion in the fight.  
 He went to aid his comrades, and all four  
 Attacked Pílsam. That hero blenched no jot,  
 But rushed upon them plying sword and mace :  
 The four chiefs' hands were paralysed with wonder.  
 Pírán, beholding from the centre, saw  
 His brother's desperate case, rushed forth to help him,  
 And shouted furiously to Gív : " O noble !  
 It is no glory for you four to fight  
 One lion-like and famous warrior."

He spake and charged amid a cloud of dust,  
 While Rustam too rushed bravely to the mellay  
 And smote with sword and axe and massive mace  
 The captains of the army of Túrán.  
 Then fled Pílsam, well knowing that that Dragon  
 Would have his life. The Íránian chiefs and warriors  
 Slew with the massive mace so many Turkmans  
 That corpses were piled up to reach the moon.  
 Afrásiyáb looked on and sighing cried :—  
 " Where is Alkús the warrior who wished  
 So oft to fight with Lions, in his cups  
 Would challenge Gív and plan a fight with Rustam ?  
 Írán was all that he would talk of then,  
 Where are his ardour and his bluster now ? "

V. 429

Alkús was told, urged on his night-hued steed,  
 And with his hands no doubt already bathed  
 In blood came to the centre to the king,  
 And cried aloud : " A man of war am I,  
 A Lion waiting. At the king's command

I will go forth to battle single-handed."

The monarch said: "Choose captains from the host."  
More than a thousand valiant cavaliers  
Went with him, carrying head-strewing lances,  
And glittering like Jupiter and Venus.  
Alkús as he approached the Íránians  
Obscured the sun and moon in clouds of dust,  
And when Zawára showed and challenged fight  
Soon countered him and thought: "This should be  
Rustam,"

Because he knew the seed of Narímán.  
Zawára charged in lion-wise, but when  
His lance snapped, he was frayed and drew his sword.  
They veiled the world with dust. Both falchions  
shivered.

They seized their maces. Quick as wind Alkús  
Dealt such a blow as left Zawára senseless,  
Who swooned and tumbled speechless from his saddle.  
Alkús leaped down to take his foeman's head,  
But Rustam seeing how his brother fared  
Rushed like a fire toward him with a shout  
Which shook Alkús' hand and dulled his sword.  
At hearing Rustam's voice thou wouldst have said:— V. 430  
"His heart showed through his skin." Swift as the wind  
He mounted, all forgetful of his manhood,  
And Rustam said: "Thou hadst not measured then  
The Lion's claws and therefore wast so brave."

Then while Zawára, blood-stained, sorely wounded,  
And battered by the mace, regained his saddle,  
Alkús encountered Rustam and thereby  
Robed his bark-saddle with a winding-sheet,  
For thrusting with a spear at Rustam's girdle  
He failed to pierce the mail, while Rustam thrust  
A spear at his foe's head and dashed him down  
As 'twere a mountain-crag to earth, his helmet  
Drowned in his heart's blood, while both armies wondered.

Then fear came on the soldiers of Túrán,  
 While lion-like the seven warriors  
 Drew, and their gallant captains followed them  
 With massive maces laid upon their shoulders.  
 Afrásiyáb beheld them with amaze,  
 Turned, gazed upon his mighty men, and said :—  
 “The foe hath overcome you. Strive and battle  
 Like valiant pards.”

The soldiers heard his voice,  
 And fell on Rustam in a mass, while he  
 Charged them in fury with the seven warriors.  
 They drave and routed all the Turkman host,  
 Incarnadined the land with brave men's blood,  
 And laid so many low that what with corpses  
 And trunkless heads no vacant space was seen  
 For troops to fight on, wheel, or pass between.

## § 14

### *How Afrásiyáb fled from the Battlefield*

V. 431 Afrásiyáb turned rein on seeing this,  
 And fled, like some dark cloud, pursued by Rustam,  
 Who thus exhorted Rakhsh : “My clever steed !  
 Lag not in battle-time, for I will slay  
 The monarch by thine aid and make the plain  
 Like coral with his blood.”

The fiery charger  
 Sped on so rapidly that thou hadst said :—  
 “His flanks have put forth wings !” Then Rustam  
 loosed  
 The lasso from the straps and aimed to catch  
 His foeman round the waist. The leathern noose  
 Fell on his helm ; the Turkmans' leader snatched  
 His neck away ; again the wind-foot steed  
 Beneath him sped like fire. Afrásiyáb

Escaped, but with wet cheeks and drouthy mouth,  
While all his horsemen hurried after him  
With spirits broken and with shattered arms.  
He sped like wind and overpassed the stream  
With stricken heart, his soldiers mostly slain :  
He searched the world for honey and found poison.  
Of treasures and of thrones, of crowns and girdles,  
Of swords and jerkins, jewelry and helms,  
Of noble steeds caparisoned with gold,  
Of casques and scimitars with golden scabbards,  
And other gear, great store fell to the Íránians.  
They gathered all and left the field, rejoicing,  
They did not strip the slain or seek the fallen,  
But went back to the hunting-ground and took  
All kinds of steeds and equipage. They wrote  
To Sháh Káús to tell of hunt and fight,  
And how they had not lost a warrior ;  
Zawára had been thrown and that was all.  
The paladin remained two weeks with mirth  
Upon the scene of triumph, on the third  
They sought the Sháh and saw his glorious crown.

V. 432

The custom of our Wayside Inn is so,  
One man hath quiet and another woe.  
In this wise or in that time passeth by ;  
Why should a wise man feel anxiety ?

The legends of this matter now are told,  
Such as have reached us from the days of old.

# PART III

## SUHRÁB

### ARGUMENT

The poet, after justifying in his prelude the ways of God to man in the matter of early death, tells how Rustam, in the course of one of his hunting expeditions to Túrán, marries Tahmína, the daughter of the king of Samangán. Rustam returns to Írán and is subsequently informed by Tahmína, who has remained at Samangán, that she has borne him a son—Suhráb. In after years Suhráb joins the host of Afrásiyáb in an invasion of Írán in the hope of meeting his father, who has been misled by Tahmína into forming a false estimate of their son's person and prowess. After a series of tragic misadventures father and son meet in single combat with fatal results.

### NOTE

The story of Suhráb is purely episodic, it might be omitted from the present reign without any apparent solution of continuity, and it is the only tale in the whole *Sháhnáma* that is at all familiar to the English reader. It has been translated into English at least twice, and has been retold according to Western ideas by Matthew Arnold, who has also followed the incorrect account of the episode given in Sir John Malcolm's 'History of Persia,' i. 27, note, where Tahmína is represented as having informed Rustam that she had given birth to a daughter. The improbability of the story may thus be lessened for the English reader, but to the Oriental eye it is the very improbability that makes it so impressive, as being an illustration of the working out of destiny which frustrates the best intentions, over-rides all obstacles, and makes mankind the puppets of its will. There is no trace of this story in Pahlavi literature as at present known to us.

§ 8. White Castle, known also as Mount Sipand,<sup>1</sup> probably is identical with the *Spentódáta* of the *Zandavasta*<sup>2</sup> and the *Spendyád* mountain of the *Bundahish*.<sup>3</sup> It was the scene of the death of

---

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 236.

<sup>2</sup> DZA, ii. 289.

<sup>3</sup> WPT, i. 39.

Narímán, Rustam's great-grandfather, of Rustam's second exploit,<sup>1</sup> and of the defeat and death at the hands of Káran of the Túránian hero Bármán,<sup>2</sup> who, it is worth noting, has reappeared as if nothing had happened.<sup>3</sup> Similarly Kulbád reappears.<sup>4</sup>

We are here introduced to a female warrior—Gurdáfríd—the only one in the poem, with the exception of Gurdya, the strong-minded and courageous sister of Bahrám Chubína. Gurdya, however, does not appear on the scene till the Sháhnáma is near its end. As for Gurdáfríd, she merely crosses Suhráb's path for a moment and nothing more is heard of her. This seems to show that the story of Suhráb was, like the rest of the Sháhnáma, based on existing materials. If Firdausí had invented the story himself it is almost inconceivable that he should not have made more of the relations between Suhráb and Gurdáfríd.<sup>5</sup>

## § I

### *The Prelude*

The story of Suhráb and Rustam hear:

V. 433

Thou hast heard others ; let it be thy part  
To hear this too : 'tis fraught with many a tear,  
And Rustam will enrage thy gentle heart.

Now if a rude gust should arise and bear

A yet unripened orange to the dust,  
Shall I describe this as unfair or fair,

Shall I pronounce it tyrannous or just ?

Where is the evil if we all must die ?

Why clamour and appeal from what is right ?

Thy spirit wotteth not this mystery ;

Beyond the Veil there is no path in sight.

We all must reach the insatiable door,

The greedy door that openeth twice for none ;

Yet so a better place may be in store

For thee, and heaven's eternal rest be won.

<sup>1</sup> Vol. i. p. 329 *seq.*

<sup>2</sup> *Id.* p. 354.

<sup>3</sup> § 7, and cf. vol. i. p. 48.

<sup>4</sup> See pp. 18, 264, and cf. vol. i. p. 361.

<sup>5</sup> A lament of Suhráb's for the loss of Gurdáfríd is added in C, but the couplets are asterisked and V rejects them.



Unless death swallowed all men up in turn  
 Earth would be trampled down by young and old ;  
 If fire in giving light shall also burn  
 The matter is no marvel to behold,  
 For burn it will and that as readily  
 As offshoots issue from an ancient stem,  
 And whether young or old the victims be  
 Death's blast, like dread fire, hath no awe of them.  
 Should pleasure then a youthful mind engage  
 Since years are not the only cause of death,  
 Which is the end alike of youth and age  
 Unless thou seek a passage in the Faith ?  
 While if Salvation's light be in thy heart  
 Thy lot as servant is to hold thy peace ;  
 Be busied in preparing to depart,  
 Let prayerful adoration never cease.  
 In serving God there is no mystery  
 Unless the Dív consorteth with thy soul ;  
 Be fervent here below and thou shalt be  
 In perfect peace when thou hast reached thy goal.  
 The exploits of Suhráb I next shall tell,  
 And how the combat with his sire befell.

V. 434

## § 2

*How Rustam went to the Chace*

I tell what rustic bard and archimage  
 Told from the legends of a bygone age :—  
 One morn in dudgeon Rustam rose to hunt,  
 Girt him, filled up his quiver, mounted Rakhsh,  
 And hied him to the marches of Túrán,  
 A savage Lion prowling after prey.  
 When he drew near the marches and beheld  
 The plain well stocked with onager, he flushed  
 Rose-like and smiled, then urging on his steed

He dropped much game with arrow, mace, and lasso.  
 He lit a fire with sticks, dry grass, and thorns,  
 Chose out a tree to serve him for a spit,  
 And set thercon a lusty onager—

V. 435

A feather's weight to him! He tore the meat,  
 When roasted, from the bones and sucked the marrow,  
 Drank of a neighbouring stream and wooed repose,  
 While Rakhsh careered and grazed along the mead.

Some Turkman horsemen chanced upon the plain  
 And marked the tracks of Rakhsh. These they pursued  
 Beside the stream, observed him in the pasture,  
 Surrounded him, and with their royal lassos  
 Essayed to take him. Rakhsh perceiving this  
 Raged like a mighty lion. Lashing out  
 He laid two Turkmans low and with his teeth  
 Tore off another's head. Thus threc were slain,  
 And still the head of Rakhsh escaped the noose;  
 At length the others threw from every side  
 Their lassos, caught him round the neck and took him,  
 Then walked him to the city, all desirous  
 To have a share in him.

When Rustam woke  
 From pleasant sleep and needed docile Rakhsh  
 He looked about the mead but found him not,  
 Whereat in dudgeon and astound he hurried  
 Toward Samangán. "Now whither shall I trudge,"  
 He said, "to 'scape my dark soul's shame, or how,  
 Thus armed with quiver, mace, helm, scimitar,  
 And tiger-skin cuirass, shall I o'erpass  
 The waste or make a shift to deal with foes?  
 How will the Turkmans say: 'Who stole his Rakhsh?  
 Thus matchless Rustam slept his life away!'  
 Now must I plod all helpless and forlorn;  
 Still let me arm, I yet may trace him out."

V. 436

Thus with a weary, aching heart he went  
 In evil case and much discouragement.

## § 3

*How Rustam came to the City of Samangán*

When Rustam drew near Samangán the king  
And nobles heard: "The Crown-bestower cometh  
Afoot for Rakhsh escaped him in the chace."

The king's chief nobles, who wore crowns themselves,  
Went forth to welcome Rustam, and all said:—  
"Can this be Rustam or the rising sun?"

The monarch went to him afoot attended,  
And asked: "Who dared to meet thee in the fight?  
We of this city are thy friends and servants,  
We and our goods are both at thy disposal,  
The heads and lives most dear to us are thine."

Then Rustam, seeing that the words were honest,  
Replied: "In yonder meads my Rakhsh while ranging  
Without a rein or halter strayed from me,  
And I have traced him from the river-side  
To Samangán. If thou recoverest him  
My thanks are thine besides the recompense  
Of one that doth aright; should he be lost  
I will behead no few among thy chiefs."

The king made answer: "O exalted man!  
None will presume to thwart thee. Come and be  
My guest and be not wroth; all will be well.  
Let us refresh our hearts with wine to-night  
And keep them free from care, for wrath and passion  
Advantage not while gentleness will draw  
The snake out of its hole, and Rustam's Rakhsh—  
A steed so known—will not continue hidden.  
We will seek out thy Rakhsh and bring him quickly,  
Thou doughty veteran!"

Rustam heard with joy,  
And easy in his mind agreed to pay

A visit to the king who, greatly pleased,  
 Bestowed him in the palace and stood slave-like  
 Before him, then invited from the city  
 And army chiefs to entertain with Rustam,  
 And bade the cooks to spread the board. The guests  
 And minstrels strove to banish Rustam's gloom,  
 While black-eyed, rose-cheeked Idols of Taráz  
 Gave wine and feast and music greater charm.  
 At length bemused and drowsy Rustam went  
 To where the king had furnished for his guest  
 Musk and rose-water, and a place of rest.

## § 4

*How Tahmína, the Daughter of the King of  
 Samangán, came to Rustam*

At noon of night, while Phosphor crossed the sky, V. 438  
 There came mysterious whispers, Rustam's door  
 Was softly opened, and a slave who bare  
 A taper savouring of ambergris  
 Walked stately toward the drunken sleeper's couch.  
 Behind the slave there was a moon-faced girl  
 Sun-bright, all scent and hue, with arching eyebrows  
 And locks that hung in tresses lasso-like,  
 In stature like a lofty cypress-tree,  
 With cheeks carnelians of Yaman in colour  
 And mouth as straitened as a lover's heart.  
 All soul was she and keen of intellect,  
 Thou wouldst have said: "She is not of the earth."  
 The lion-hearted Rustam marvelled at her  
 And calling on the Maker asked: "Thy name?  
 What seek'st thou midst the murk of night? Thy  
 will?"

She said: "Tahmína: and thou well mayst say  
 That mine affliction teareth me in twain.

V. 439

Sole daughter of the king of Samangán,  
 And by descent half lion and half pard,  
 There is no mate for me among the kings,  
 Nor are there many like me under heaven.  
 No one hath seen me yet outside the bower,  
 No one hath ever heard me spoken of,  
 But many and many a story have I heard  
 Of thee from every one—just like romance!  
 How dív and lion, pard and crocodile,  
 Thou fearest not, thou art so deft of hand!  
 How thou departest to Túrán by night  
 And roamest there unsleeping and alone,  
 Dost roast an onager to make a meal  
 And set air wailing with thy scimitar!  
 How at the sight of thee with mace in hand  
 The hearts of lions and the hides of pards  
 Are rent! How eagles seeing thy naked sword  
 Dare not to swoop upon their quarry, and how  
 Great lions bear the traces of thy lasso,  
 And clouds rain blood in terror of thy spear!  
 Such are the tales of thee that I have heard!  
 Oft have I bit my lips in wonderment  
 And longed to see thy shoulders, neck, and breast.  
 God hath ordained thy sojourn in this city,  
 And now if thou wilt have me I am thine—  
 I who was never seen by fowl or fish—  
 Because for one thing I adore thee so,  
 Have sacrificed my prudence to my passion,  
 And for another—haply God Almighty  
 May lay upon my breast a child of thine.  
 Oh! may he be like thee in might and manhood,  
 And heaven assign to him both Sol and Saturn!  
 Moreover I will bring back Rakhsh to thee  
 And put all Samangán beneath thy feet.”

The matchless Rustam heard her to the end.  
 He saw what beauty and intelligence

Were hers, and that she brought him news of Rakhsh.  
 Perceiving that the affair would turn out well  
 He bade an archimage—a man of worship—  
 Go and demand the maiden from her sire.  
 The king, that noble Cypress, was well pleased  
 To be affined to Rustam, and bestowed  
 Tahmína on him with the usual rites.  
 The people all poured out their souls with joy  
 And called down blessings on the paladin :—  
 “ May this New Moon prove fortunate to thee,  
 And be thy foes’ heads plucked out by the roots.”

V. 440

Night was not longsome while his mate was by,  
 But when the sun was bright he longed to throw  
 The musky lasso off. He wore an armlet—  
 A famous one. That gave he to Tahmína,  
 And said: “ Keep this. If thou shalt bear a daughter  
 Then plait it in her hair, and choose a time  
 Propitious, and auspicious auguries ;  
 While if the stars vouchsafe to thee a son  
 Bind round his arm this token of his father.  
 He will be like Sám son of Narímán  
 In stature and a Karímán<sup>1</sup> in manhood  
 And character, and bring down soaring eagles.  
 The sun will scorch not him.”

He passed the night

In converse with his bride, and when the sun  
 Shone bright, and decked the earth with lovesomeness,  
 In taking leave he clasped her to his breast  
 And showered kisses on her eyes and head,  
 But fair Tahmína turned in tears from him  
 To be the spouse of pain and misery.

V. 441

The noble king of Samangán approached,  
 Inquired of Rustam how the night had sped,  
 And, having heard, gave him good news of Rakhsh,  
 News that rejoiced the crown-bestower’s heart.

<sup>1</sup> The father of Narímán and great-great-grandfather of Rustam.

He came, caressed the steed, and saddled him,  
 Pleased both with glossy Rakhsh and with the king.  
 Then homeward to Zábulistán he went,  
 But no one heard him speak of this event.

## § 5

*The Birth of Suhráb*

Nine months passed and a moon-like babe was born;  
 Thou wouldst have said: "'Tis elephantine Rustam,"  
 Or else: "'Tis lion-Sám," or "Narímán,"  
 And since the babe smiled and was bright of blee  
 Tahmína gave to him the name Suhráb.  
 He looked a year old in a month, his chest  
 Was like his sire's, at three he exercised  
 In arms, at five he had a lion-heart,  
 At ten none dared encounter him in fight.  
 He bluntly asked his mother once: "Now tell me,  
 Since none of my milk-fellows can compare  
 With me, and my head reacheth to the sky,  
 Of what stock am I and of what descent?  
 What shall I say when asked about my father?  
 Thou shalt not live unless thou answer me."

V. 44<sup>2</sup>

His mother said: "Then listen and rejoice,  
 But be not rash. Thou art the son of Rustam,  
 The hero of the elephantine form,  
 The progeny of Zál the son of Sám,  
 And Narímán. Thy head out-toppeth heaven  
 Because thou comest of the famous stock,  
 For never since the Maker made the world  
 Hath there appeared a cavalier like Rustam,  
 Nor one like Sám the son of Narímán,  
 Whose head the heaven itself dared not to touch."

She brought and showed a letter from his sire,  
 Three bright gems, and three purses filled with gold,

Sent to him by his father at his birth  
 With these words: "Guard these well, because thy sire  
 Hath sent them unto thee, O noble child!"

His mother said besides: "Afrásiyáb  
 Must not know aught hereof. He is the foe  
 Of Rustam and the troubler of Túrán.  
 May he ne'er seek revenge upon thyself  
 And slay the son in dudgeon at the sire.  
 Moreover, if thy father shall perceive  
 Of what a stamp thou art, so high and proud,  
 Then will he summon thee and rend my heart."

Suhráb replied: "A thing like this will out.  
 Old chieftains, warriors in the past, recount  
 His deeds. What right hadst thou to hide that I  
 Come of such fighting stock? Now will I gather  
 A boundless host of Turkman warriors,  
 Drive from his throne Káuś, will cut away  
 From Tús his foothold in Írán, and leave not  
 Gurgín, Gúdarz, and Gív, or Gustaham  
 Son of Naudar, or warrior Bahrám,  
 But give the treasure, throne, and crown to Rustam  
 Instead of Sháh Káuś; then from Írán  
 March forth to take Afrásiyáb's own seat,  
 And raise my spearhead higher than the sun.  
 I will do lion's deeds and make thee mistress  
 Of all Írán. Since Rustam is the sire  
 And I the son none other shall be king.  
 When sun and moon are shining in the sky  
 Why should the stars set up their crowns on high?"

V. 443

## § 6

### *How Suhráb chose his Charger*

He said moreover: "Thou shalt see my prowess,  
 But I must have a charger swift of foot



V. 444

With hoofs of steel flint-shattering, in strength  
 Like elephants, in flight like birds, in water  
 Like fish, and on the land like deer, to bear  
 My warrior-breast and neck, mine ax and mace :  
 I must be mounted to encounter foes."

His mother's head rose o'er the shining sun  
 At hearing this. She bade the herdsman bring  
 His herds of horses for Suhráb to choose  
 A charger. So they gathered to the city  
 The herds that wandered over hill and desert,  
 And when some large-limbed, lusty steed appeared  
 Suhráb flung round its neck the leathern noose,  
 Then laid his hand upon the beast to prove it  
 And made it grovel. Thus his might broke down  
 Full many a noble steed ; he could not find  
 One adequate, and grieved. At length a warrior  
 Approached the elephantine youth and said :—  
 "I have a colt—one of the breed of Rakhsh—  
 In strength a lion and as fleet as wind.  
 He is as 'twere a valley-treading mountain  
 And skimmeth like a bird along the waste.  
 In strength and swiftness he is like the sun ;  
 None ever saw so fleet a roan. Beneath  
 The stamping of his hoofs the Bull-fish <sup>1</sup> quaketh ;  
 His leap is like the lightning ; on the mountains  
 He goeth like the raven ; on the water  
 Like fish and water-fowl ; upon the desert  
 Like shaft from bow, pursuing and o'ertaking  
 The enemy."

V. 445

Suhráb laughed out for joy,  
 And when they brought to him that glossy charger  
 Both proved it and approved it, coaxed, caressed,  
 Then saddled it, and mounted. He appeared  
 Like Mount Bístún ; his spear was pillar-like.  
 He said : "Since I have gotten such a steed

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 71.

I must ride forth at once and turn the day  
Of Kai Káús to gloom."

He made him ready  
To fight the Íránians, and a host assembled.  
He then approached his grandsire, asking leave  
To go, and help in going: "I am fain  
To seek Írán and see my glorious sire."

Thereat the king provided him with arms  
Of every kind, thrones, diadems, and casques,  
Steeds, camels, belts, gold, gems, and Rúman jerkins.  
He marvelled at that youth of tender age  
And freely gave a royal equipage.

## § 7

*How Afrásiyáb sent Bármán and Húmán to Suhráb*

Afrásiyáb had news: "Suhráb hath launched  
His ship, a host hath gathered unto him.  
Although his mouth still savoureth of milk  
His mind is set on shaft and scimitar;  
His sword will purge the earth, and now he seeketh  
To fight Káús. He feareth none. Why more?  
His prowess hath shown higher than his birth."

Now when Afrásiyáb had heard these words  
They pleased him, he laughed and showed his joy.  
Then from the valiant captains of the host—  
Those that were wielders of the massive mace—  
He chose two chiefs; Húmán was one, the other  
Bármán; no laggards they when Lions strove.  
He gave to them twelve thousand valiant troops,  
And said: "Be this your secret policy:  
The father must not recognise his son  
By any ties of instinct, love, or race;  
So, when the twain encounter, in good sooth  
The matchless Rustam will be put to it.

V. 446

It may be that this lion-man will slay him.  
 Then will we press Káús, seize on Írán,  
 With Rustam gone, and settle with Suhráb  
 Some night by binding him in endless sleep ;  
 While should he perish by his father's hand  
 That hero's heart will never cease to burn."

Those two shrewd paladins went to Suhráb,  
 Preceded by a present from the king—  
 Ten steeds caparisoned, ten mules of burden,  
 A turquoise throne with ivory steps, a crown  
 Of amber tipped with pearls—and took a letter  
 Of adulation to the noble youth :—

V. 447

" If thou shalt seize the Íránian throne the age  
 Will rest from strife. We are not far apart ;  
 Írán, Túrán, and Samangán are one.  
 I send thee troops enough, sit on the throne  
 And don the crown. Túrán hath no such leaders  
 And brave hearts as Húmán and as Bármán,  
 Whom I dispatch to thee as guests, to be  
 At thy command, to fight, if thou wouldst fight,  
 And make the world strait to thine enemies."

Now when Suhráb was ware of their approach  
 He girt his loins and with his grandsire went  
 Like wind to meet Húmán, rejoiced to see  
 Such troops. Húmán for his part was amazed  
 To see the neck and shoulders of Suhráb,  
 Then gave to him the letter of the king,  
 The gifts, the horses, and the mules of burden,  
 And with Bármán delivered the king's message.  
 Now when the atheling had read the letter  
 He beat the tymbals and led forth the host.  
 Earth was all troops and clamour, neither lion  
 Nor crocodile could fight him. Thus he led  
 The host toward Írán, burned everywhere  
 The cultivated parts, and left all bare.

## § 8

*How Suhráb came to White Castle*

White Castle was a stronghold of Írán  
 And veteran Hajír was castellan—  
 A man of might and courage, mace and arrow—  
 For Gazdaham was failing though still brave  
 And venturesome. His daughter,<sup>1</sup> who was proud,  
 Renowned, and malapert, bore arms and fought  
 On horseback. As Suhráb approached, Hajír  
 Saw him and mounting on his steed like dust  
 Sped forth upon the field. Suhráb enraged,  
 And drawing forth the scimitar of fight,  
 Rushed from the host as 'twere a blast and cried :—  
 “O fool to throw thy life away and come  
 Alone! Sit tight and firmly grasp thy reins.  
 What are thy name and lineage? She that bare  
 Will have to weep for thee.”

V. 448

V. 449

Hajír replied :—

“Enough! I need no help in fighting thee.  
 Hajír am I, a warrior and chieftain.  
 I will take off thy head to send the Sháh  
 And leave the vultures to consume thy body.”

Suhráb laughed out and charged; both hurled their  
 spears

Too fast for eyes to follow. Brave Suhráb,  
 Strong as an elephant, came on like fire  
 Upon his moving mountain of a steed.  
 Hajír thrust at his waist; the spearpoint glanced.  
 Suhráb the Lion drove the weapon back,  
 Struck with the butt his foe's waist lustily,  
 And threw him like a boulder to the earth,  
 As though the matter were not worth a thought,  
 Astound in heart and soul. Suhráb dismounted,

<sup>1</sup> Gurdáfríd.

Sat on his foeman's breast, and had in mind  
 To cut his head off, but Hajír with effort  
 Turned on his right side and entreated quarter.  
 Suhráb accorded it, well satisfied,  
 Gave him some cautions, made him fast in bonds,  
 And sent him to Húmán. Those in the hold  
 On hearing what had chanced cried mournfully :—  
 " Hajír is lost among the enemy ! "

## § 9

*How Suhráb fought with Gurdáfríd*

V. 450

When she whose sire was Gazhdaham had heard :—  
 " The chief is worsted ! " she was grieved, exclaimed  
 In her distress, and heaved a deep cold sigh.  
 A woman like some valiant cavalier  
 Was she and ever famous in the fight.  
 Her name was Gurdáfríd, and none as yet  
 Had seen her match. Hajír's discomfiture  
 So shamed her that her tulip-cheeks became  
 Like red chrysanthemums.<sup>1</sup> Time pressed, she armed,  
 Concealed her tresses underneath her mail,  
 Secured her Rúman casque upon her head,  
 And came down, like a lion, from the hold  
 With girded waist upon a wind-foot steed.  
 She sped like dust and cried in thunder-tones :—  
 " What are these troops and who commandeth them ?  
 What lusty Crocodile is there among you  
 To match himself with me in single combat ? "

None volunteered until Suhráb beheld her.  
 He bit his lips and laughed. " Again," said he,  
 " An onager hath come within the toils  
 Of him that hath both strength and scimitar."

He armed like wind, put on a helm of Chín,

<sup>1</sup> Khír. Cf. WPT, i. 104.

And rushed out to encounter Gurdáfríd,  
 Who when she saw him strung her bow up, drew it,  
 And broadened out her breast. No bird had found  
 A passage through her shafts; she showered them  
 Upon Suhráb and wheeled to left and right.  
 He saw and was abashed, waxed wroth and charged,  
 His shield above his head. Thus pressed she hung  
 Her bow upon her arm and, while her steed  
 Pranced to the clouds, couched at Suhráb her lance,  
 And plied her reins with fury. He too shook  
 His reins and urged his charger on like lightning,  
 Fierce as a leopard, at his doughty foe.  
 He thrust a deadly dart with all his strength,  
 Struck Gurdáfríd upon the belt and rent  
 Her coat of mail, but even as she reeled  
 She drew her sword and clave the dart asunder,  
 Regained her seat and sent the dust-clouds flying;  
 But liking not such fighting turned and fled.  
 He urged his dragon-steed, and he too made  
 In wrath day dark with dust. He pressed upon her  
 With loud cries, jostled her, and snatched her helm.  
 Her hair escaped, her face shone like the sun.  
 He said: "It is a girl! Her head of hair  
 Is worthy of a crown. If such a girl,"  
 He said amazed, "come from the Íránian host  
 Upon the field, good sooth their cavaliers  
 Will send dust cloudward on the day of battle!"

V. 451

He loosed his coiled up lasso from the straps  
 And caught her round the waist, then said to her:—  
 "Why seekest thou the fray, O moon-faced maid?  
 No onager like thee hath ever come  
 Within my toils. Thou wilt not 'scape my clutch,  
 So struggle not."

V. 452

She saw no other course,  
 So showed her face and said: "O warrior,  
 Midst warriors a lion! two hosts watch

Our prowess with the mace and scimitar,  
 And now that I have shown my face and hair  
 The troops will say: 'He sent the dust-clouds flying  
 And all to fight a girl!' 'Twill be disgrace  
 To persevere in such a fight as this.  
 Chiefs should be wise, so let us keep it dark  
 And save thee from reproach on mine account.  
 Our troops and stronghold are at thy command,  
 There is no need to fight, the castle, treasure,  
 And castellan are thine when thou shalt please."

She showed her face, her smiles displayed the pearls  
 Within her jujube-lips, a garden she  
 In Paradise; no villager e'er set  
 So tall a cypress. She had eyes like deer's,  
 With arching eyebrows, and thou wouldst have  
 said:—

"She bloometh ever."

"Keep thy word," said he,  
 "For thou hast seen me on the day of battle.  
 Trust not yon castle-wall, it is not higher  
 Than heaven, and my mace will bring it down,  
 While no foe's lance will ever reach my neck."

V. 453

She turned and rode with him toward the hold,  
 And Gazhdaham himself came to the gate.  
 They opened it and Gurdáfríd came in  
 Both bruised and bound. They shut it and lamented  
 For her and for Hajír. Then Gazhdaham  
 Approached with chiefs and troops, and said to  
 her:—

"Brave-hearted lion-smiter! we were troubled  
 On thine account. Thy fighting and address  
 Have not disgraced us, and no foe hath harmed  
 Thy life, thank God!"

Then laughing much she went  
 Upon the ramparts to observe the foe,  
 Beheld Suhráb still mounted, and exclaimed:—

"O warrior of Túrán! why take such pains?  
Be off with you and give up battlefields."

Suhráb replied: "O fair of face! I swear  
By crown and throne and sun and moon to raze  
These ramparts to the ground and capture thee,  
Thou minx! Thou wilt repent thy foolish words  
When thou art writhing in thy helplessness.  
Where is thy promise?"

But she laughed and mocked him:—

"The Turkmans win no helpmates from Írán,  
And thou hast failed with me, but never mind!  
Thou art no Turkman who art so commended  
Among the great, and with such strength and limbs  
Art peerless midst the paladins! However,  
When news shall reach the Sháh: 'A chief is leading V. 454  
An army from Túrán,' he will march forth  
With Rustam whom ye cannot stand against,  
And all thy host will perish. What mishap  
Will then descend upon thy head I know not,  
But woe is me that such a neck and shoulder  
Should disappear within the maw of pards!  
So do not trust too much those arms of thine  
Or else the stupid ox will graze beside thee.  
'Twere best to issue orders for retreat."

Suhráb, who thought the hold his own, was shamed.  
He gave to pillage all the land and crops  
Around the walls, then for a moment washed  
The evil hand, and said: "Our time for action  
Is not to-day; our hands are stayed from fight.  
At daybreak we will raise dust from these walls  
And carry war's alarms inside the place."

With that he turned about his charger's rein  
And took the way to his own camp again.



## § 10

*The Letter of Gazhdaham to Káuś*

Now when Suhráb had gone old Gazhdaham  
 Called for a scribe to write to Kai Káuś,  
 Then hurried off a speedy messenger  
 And, having praised the Sháh, reported thus :—  
 “ A mighty host of valiant warriors  
 Attacketh us, led by a paladin,  
 Whose years do not exceed twice seven at most,  
 In stature taller than a lofty cypress,  
 And in his aspect like the shining sun.  
 His breast is lion-like, his mien is stately.  
 I have not looked on such a hand and mace  
 Within Írán. Whenas he brandisheth  
 His Indian scimitar it shameth him  
 To fight mere seas and mountains. Rattling thunder  
 Is no match for his voice, or for his arm  
 Our trenchant sword. No peer within Írán  
 Or in Túrán hath he. This chief is named  
 Suhráb, and feareth not dív, elephant,  
 Or lion ; thou mayst say : ‘ ’Tis surely Rustam,  
 At least some hero sprung from Narímán ! ’  
 The brave Hajír rode out to challenge him,  
 But, as I saw, no longer kept his seat  
 Than while a warrior might wink an eye,  
 Or scent go up a nostril to the brain.  
 Suhráb unhorsed him to his great amazement.  
 He is not hurt, and they have spared his life,  
 But he is sorry and hath got his skinful  
 Of anguish. Many Turkman cavaliers  
 Have I beheld, but never heard of one  
 With such a seat. God grant he grapple not  
 With one of us between the battle-lines ;  
 I would have none, e’en though a Mount of flint,

Meet him upon the plain. The earth would pity  
That Mount if he should charge it in the fight,  
And if the Sháh shall stop to breathe, march forth  
No host, and set no ambuscade, consider  
The Glory of Írán as gone, the world  
As panic-stricken by this warrior's sword-point.  
Since he is Strength itself he will despoil us,  
And none can grapple with him hand to hand,  
Or ever saw so skilled a rider. 'He,'  
Thou wouldest say, 'is Sám the cavalier.'  
We cannot fight this eager warrior  
With such a mace, grip, and dexterity.  
Know that the fortune of our warriors noddeth,  
And that his greatness reacheth to the sky.  
To-night we pack the baggage and withdraw,  
For if we tarry we shall make no fight,  
To say no more; these walls will not withstand  
One at whose rush a lion turneth laggard."

V. 456

The letter sealed he called a messenger,  
And said: "Be out of sight of them by dawn,"  
And having sent the letter on its way  
Prepared to follow it without delay.

## § 11

*How Suhráb took White Castle*

Whenas the sun rose o'er the mountain-heights  
The soldiers of Túrán girt up their loins,  
And spear in hand Suhráb the chief bestrode  
His swift-paced charger, purposing to capture  
The garrison and bind them like a flock;  
But having, roaring like a lion, forced  
The gates, he saw no man of name within,  
For in the night the garrison had fled  
With Gazhdaham, because beneath the hold

There was a way not wotted by the foe.

- V. 457 Those still inside concerned with the defence  
Or otherwise came to Suhráb as bidden,  
And sought by every means to save their lives.  
He looked for Gurdáfríd but found her not.  
His heart was fain for love and union with her.  
“Woe’s me!” he thought, “the bright Moon is be-  
clouded!”

- V. 458 Káús received the letter and was grieved.  
He called the captains of the host to counsel—  
V. 459 Tús and Gúdarz son of Kishwád, and Gív,  
Gurgín, Bahráw, and brave Farhád—and read  
Aloud to them the news about Suhráb.  
He said in private: “This will cost us time,  
V. 460 And Gazhdaham saith naught to comfort us.  
What shall we do, and what will cure this smart?  
Who in Írán can fight him?”

All agreed

That Gív should go to Rustam at Zábul  
To say: “The throne of empire is in danger,”  
And summon him to take the field for war,  
Because the Íránians looked to him for shelter.  
A scribe as they discussed was sitting by  
In that the case was one of urgency.

## § 12

*How Káús wrote to Rustam and summoned him  
from Zábulistán*

The Sháh then bade indite to famous Rustam  
A letter, and began by praising him:—  
“Be thy heart prudent and thy spirit bright.  
Know that a Turkman chieftain with his host  
Hath come and is beleaguering White Castle.  
He is a brave, heroic paladin,

In form an elephant, in heart a lion.  
 None in Írán can fight him; thou alone,  
 That art so good at need, canst dim his lustre,  
 Thou heart and back-bone of the Íránian chiefs,  
 Who hast the claws and might of lions! Thou  
 Didst take the country of Mázarán,  
 And in Hámávarán undo our bonds.  
 Sol weepeth at thy mace, and at thy sword  
 Mars grilleth. Indigo is not so dark  
 As dust-clouds raised by Rakhsh; no elephant  
 Can match thee in the fight; thou lassoeest lions;  
 Thy spear-point scatheth mountains. In all ills  
 Thou art the shelter of Írán. The warriors  
 Through thee exalt their helms. A grievous matter  
 Confronteth us; I ache to think thereof.  
 The warriors in counsel read a letter  
 From Gazhdaham and were agreed that Gív  
 Should bear thee this account of good and ill.  
 Now when thou readest this by day or night  
 Ope not thy lips for words, and if thou have  
 A posy in thy hand stay not to smell it,  
 But act with promptitude and show thy face,  
 Because unless thou march forth from Zábul  
 With wary horsemen and shalt raise the war-cry,  
 To judge by that which Gazhdaham hath told  
 None will confront this warrior."

V. 461

This sealed

The Sháh gave swift as wind to gallant Gív,  
 And said: "Be instant, ply thy fleet steed's rein.  
 Whenas thou reachest Rustam neither tarry,  
 Nor sleep, within Zábul; if thou arrive  
 By night return next day. Thus say to him:—  
 'A war is imminent, and in thine absence  
 We cannot hold the foe of small account.'"

V. 462

Gív took it and sped night and day like wind,  
 No rest, no sleep, no water, and no food,

Until Zál heard the cry: "A cavalier  
Approacheth from Írán as swift as dust."

The matchless Rustam met him with the troops  
And nobles wearing helmets. When they met,  
Gív and the warriors great and small dismounted,  
And Rustam too who asked news of the Sháh,  
And of Írán. They went thence to his palace  
To rest awhile. Gív told his errand, gave  
The letter, spake much of Suhráb, delivered  
His other tidings and the presents sent.  
When Rustam heard and read he laughed amazed,  
And said: "A horseman hath appeared like Sám!  
Now from our people this would not be strange,  
But from the Turkmans 'tis incredible.  
None sayeth, and I know not, whence he is.  
The daughter of the king of Samangán  
Bare me a son but he is still a child.  
The noble boy at present wotteth not  
Of warfare, of attack, and self-defence.  
I sent his mother gold and precious stones  
In plenty, and the messenger brought answer:—  
'The darling is not growing very fast,  
But quaffeth wine with lips that savour milk.'  
No doubt he will be eager soon for war,  
And then his onslaught will be lion-like;  
He will lay low the head of many a horseman;  
But as for what thou sayest, O paladin!  
'He came to fight us, vanquished brave Hajír,  
And bound him with the lasso head and foot!'  
The Lion's whelp, though grown both brave and  
doughty,  
Could not do that. Come, go we to Zál's palace,  
Rejoicing, then consider plans and who  
This lucky Turkman paladin may be."

They sought the ancestral hall and stayed awhile  
In unconcern, then Gív again applied

V. 463

V. 464

To Rustam, praising him and saying: "Hero,  
And chief of paladins! may crown and throne  
Be bright to thee who art the crown's adornment,  
Thou favourite of fortune! Sháh Káús  
Said thus: 'Sleep not within Zábulistán.  
If thou arrive by night return next day,  
For God forbid that war should press on us.'  
Now, O exalted and most glorious chief!  
Let us depart in all haste to Írán."

But Rustam answered: "There is naught to fear,  
For everything will end in dust at last.  
Abide we here to-day in merriment  
Naught recking of Káús and of the chiefs.  
One day will we remain to breathe ourselves  
And put some liquor to our thirsty lips;  
Thereafter we will hasten to the Sháh  
And show the heroes of Írán the way  
In case bright fortune be not yet awake.  
At all events the matter is a trifle,  
The rising sea will quench the fiercest flame.  
E'en from afar my flag will fray his heart  
Amid a feast. How can he be like Rustam—  
The master of the scimitar and mace—  
Or Sám the hardy, brave, and circumspect?  
He will not prove so eager for the fray.  
We need not take such matters seriously."

They took the wine in hand and grew bemused  
With drinking to the monarch and to Zál.  
Next morning Rustam though crop-sick made ready  
To start, but tarrying through drunkenness  
Gave orders to the cooks to spread a feast.  
The banquet done they held a drinking-bout  
And called for wine and harp and minstrelsy.  
Next day he held another sunny-bright  
And on the third day brought out wine at dawn,  
Forgetful of Káús. Upon the fourth

Gív, ready to depart, said thus to Rustam :—  
 “Káuś is rash and hasty; to his mind  
 This is no trifle. He was vexed and anxious,  
 And would not eat or slumber or repose.  
 By thus delaying in Zábulistán  
 We place him in a strait; he will be wroth  
 And in his headstrong humour seek revenge.”

But Rustam answered: “Give it not a thought,  
 For none will chafe at us.”

He gave command  
 To saddle Rakhsh and blow the brazen trumpets.  
 The horsemen of Zábul came at the call  
 In mail—a mighty army. He therein  
 Installed Zawára as chief paladin.

### § 13

#### *How Káuś was wroth with Rustam*

Tús and Gúdarz son of Kishwád met Rustam  
 One day's march from the court. Both he and they  
 Alighted and saluted heartily.  
 They reached the court all loyalty and mirth,  
 But, when they did obeisance, Kai Káuś  
 Made no response but frowned on them in anger,  
 And bare him like a lion of the wood,  
 First stormed at Gív, then wholly lost to shame  
 Proceeded: “Who is Rustam that he thus  
 Should disobey me and break fealty?  
 Had I a sword I would smite off his head  
 As 'twere an orange. Seize him! Gibbet him  
 Alive, and name him not to me again.”

Gív's heart was pained; he cried: “Wilt thou lay  
 hand  
 On Rustam thus?”

But upon this the Sháh

Raged at them both, so that all present marvelled.  
 He bade Tús : " Go and hang them both alive,"  
 Arose himself, and flamed like fire from reeds,  
 While Tús drew near and seized the hand of Rustam,  
 To all the warriors' wonder, purposing  
 To lead him forth and to beguile his wrath ;  
 But Rustam furious with Káús replied :—  
 " Indulge not such a fire within thy breast.  
 Thy deeds grow worse and worse ! Thou art not fit  
 For sovereignty. Hang for thyself yon Turkman  
 Alive, then rage and scorn thine enemies.  
 Mázandarán, Sagsár, Hámávarán,  
 Rúm, Misr, and Chín are all my charger's thralls,  
 My sword and arrows have transfixed their livers.  
 Thou livest but through me. Why waste thy heart      V. 467  
 In vengeance ? "

                    In his wrath he struck the hand  
 Of Tús, thou wouldst have said : " An elephant  
 Hath struck him ! " Tús fell headlong to the ground  
 While Rustam passed him by with angry mien,  
 Went out, and mounted Rakhsh in wrath, exclaiming :—  
 " I conquer lions and distribute crowns,  
 And who is Sháh Káús when I am angry,  
 Or Tús that he should lay a hand on me ?  
 My might and my successes are from God,  
 Not from the Sháh or host. Earth is my slave  
 And Rakhsh my throne, a mace my signet-ring,  
 A helm my crown ; my mates are sparth and spearhead,  
 My two arms and my heart my Sháh. I lighten  
 Night with my sword and scatter heads in battle.  
 Why doth he vex me ? I am not his slave  
 But God's. The warriors called me to be Sháh,  
 But I refused the throne of sovereignty  
 And looked to custom, law, and precedent.  
 Do I deserve thy words ? Art thou my patron ?  
 Mine was the throne. I set Kubád thereon.



What care I for Káuś, his wrath and bluster ?  
 If I had not fetched Kai Kubád myself,  
 When he had fallen into low estate,  
 And brought him to Írán from Mount Alburz,  
 Thou hadst not belt or vengeful scimitar,  
 Or might and majesty entitling thee  
 To speak a word to Zál the son of Sám."

v. 468

He told the Íránians : " Valorous Suhráb  
 Will come and leave not either great or small ;  
 So make shift, all of you ! to save your lives,  
 And let discretion be your remedy.  
 Ye will not see me more within Írán :  
 The land is yours and mine the vulture's wing."

He smote his steed and left them while his skin  
 Split, thou hadst said, with rage. The nobles' hearts  
 Were troubled ; they were sheep, he was their shepherd.  
 " Here," said they to Gúdarz, " is work for thee ;  
 Thine is the hand to make the broken whole ;  
 Thy words no doubt will influence the Sháh.  
 Go then to this insensate, speak to him,  
 Ply him with patient and persuasive speech :  
 Perchance thou mayst restore our fallen fortune."

Then all those warrior-nobles sat in conclave—  
 Gív and Gúdarz and lion-like Bahrám,  
 Ruhhám and brave Gurgín. They said : " The Sháh  
 Regardeth not the feelings of the great.  
 Since Rustam, who is chief of paladins,  
 First saved Káuś none else hath succoured him  
 In all his straits and dangers. When the dívs  
 Bound in Mázandarán the Sháh and us  
 What toil and hardship Rustam underwent  
 On his account, and rent the fierce dívs' reins,  
 Then set the Sháh upon the throne and summoned  
 The mighty men to do him reverence !  
 Another time too when our sovereign's feet  
 Wore heavy fetters in Hámávarán

What monarchs Rustam slaughtered for his sake  
 And never turned away but brought Káús  
 Home to his throne, and did obeisance to him !  
 If Rustam's recompense must be to hang  
 Then we must flee just when at such a crisis  
 We should take action."

V. 469

Thereupon Gúdarz  
 Made haste to go before the Sháh and said  
 Thus: "What hath Rustam done that thou shouldst  
 send

The dust up from Írán to-day? Art thou  
 Forgetful of Hámávarán, forgetful  
 Of what the dívs did in Mázandarán,  
 That thou sayst: 'Put him living on the gibbet?'  
 Vain words become not Sháhs. When he hath gone,  
 And that great host and wolf-like paladin  
 Have come, whom hast thou left to take the field  
 And strew the dark dust o'er him? Gazhdaham  
 By sight or hearsay knoweth all thy warriors,  
 Yet saith: 'Ne'er let a cavalier propose  
 To fight Suhráb. Small wisdom 'twere for any,  
 Though brave as Rustam, to encounter him.'  
 Kings should be wise, for haste and wrath avail not."

The Sháh, perceiving that Gúdarz spake justly,  
 Repented of his folly and replied:—

"Thy rede is right; the old give best advice.  
 Now go to Rustam, treat him courteously,  
 Induce him to forget my hastiness,  
 Assure him that my favour is restored,  
 And bring him hither to illume my soul."

V. 470

Gúdarz went after Rustam with all speed,  
 Attended by the leaders of the host.  
 They gathered round him and saluted saying:—  
 "Live happy evermore, be all the world  
 Beneath thy feet, and mayst thou sit for ever  
 Upon the throne. Thou knowest that Káús

Is brainless and no picker of his words  
 When angered, but regretteth them anon,  
 And groweth reconciled through sheer good nature.  
 If Rustam be aggrieved against the Sháh  
 The Íránians have done naught to drive him hence  
 And hide his glorious face. The Sháh moreover  
 Is sorry for those words of his and gnaweth  
 His hand's back in chagrin."

The hero said :—

"I need not anything of Kai Káuś.  
 A saddle is my throne, a casque my crown,  
 My mail my raiment and my purpose death.  
 What is Káuś to me? A pinch of dust.  
 Why should I fear or tremble at his wrath?  
 Do I deserve such unbecoming words  
 From one that I released from bonds and led  
 To crown and throne? Once in Mázandarán  
 I fought against the dívs, and once I fought  
 The monarch of Hámávarán and freed  
 Káuś in his foe's grip from bonds and woe.  
 Now I have had enough; my heart is full;  
 I fear but holy God."

V. 471

As soon as Rustam  
 Had had his fill of speech Gúdarz rejoined :—  
 "The Sháh and famous warriors suspect  
 That thou art frightened at this Tùrkman chief.  
 They say in private: 'Gazhdaham was right,  
 Our fields and fells will know us now no more,  
 For sithens Rustam is afraid of fighting  
 'Tis not for thee and me to tarry here.'  
 I noticed that the Sháh's ill will and wrath  
 Made hue and cry at court, and all men spake  
 About the brave Suhráb. Eclipse not thou  
 Thy high fame in the world by this withdrawal,  
 And further, since a hostile host is near,  
 Dim not this crown and throne so wantonly,

For we have been insulted by 'Túrán,  
And none whose Faith is pure approveth that."

The matchless hero all amazed replied :—  
"I would not live a coward, I would tear  
My soul out first. I flee, as well thou knowest,  
Because the monarch scorned me, not from fight."

He shrank from that reproach, retraced his steps,  
And came to Sháh Káús, who seeing him  
Arose and thus excused what had occurred :—

"My temper is by nature choleric,  
And trees must grow as God hath planted them.  
Through this new, unexpected foe my heart  
Was faint as a new moon. I sought a cure  
And sent for thee. Thy tarrying made me wroth,  
But having wronged thee, elephantine chief!  
I sorrowed and my mouth was filled with dust."

V. 472

Then Rustam answered him: "The world is thine.  
We are thy subjects, thine is to command.  
I am a liege, if worthy of the name,  
Before thy gate to do thy will. Thou art  
The Sháh, the lord of earth; I am thy slave."

Káús replied: "O paladin! be bright  
Of mind for evermore. To-day we hold  
A banquet and to-morrow think of battle."

He had a royal pleasure-house made ready;  
Its hall was like a garden in the spring.  
They called the chiefs and scattered gems for joy.  
Half through the night they revelled and their talk  
Was of the doings of the mighty men.  
They drank till hearts and eyes were dazed with  
wine,  
And all became bemused, returning home  
While tedious night was traversing the dome.

## § 14

*How Káuś and Rustam led forth the Host*

When Sol had pierced night's pitch-hued cloak and  
come

v. 473

Forth from the veil Káuś bade Gív and Tús  
To bind the drums upon the elephants.  
He oped the treasury-door, gave out supplies,  
Then called to horse and loaded up the baggage.  
A hundred thousand cavaliers in mail  
Went into camp, and as the army marched  
Heaven darkened with the chargers' dust. The tents  
And tent-enclosures stretched two miles, and earth  
Was clad with elephants and horses' shoes;  
The sky grew dark as indigo, earth turned  
To ebony, the drum-roll shook the plain.  
The army marched, the sun's bright visage gloomed,  
And double-pointed javelin and dart  
Flashed like a flame through dust as through a veil.  
What with the spears and flags of divers fashion,  
The golden bucklers and the golden boots,  
Thou wouldst have said: "There came an ebon cloud  
Which showered sandarac." The world discerned not  
Between the night and day, and thou hadst said  
That neither sky nor Pleiades existed.  
Thus marched the army, hiding soil and rock,  
Until it neared the portal of the stronghold.

An outcry from the lookout warned Suhráb:—  
"A host hath come." He mounted to the walls  
To view it and then showed it to Húmán,  
Who, when he saw so great a multitude  
Approaching, was afraid and held his breath.  
Suhráb the hero said: "Relieve thy heart  
Of care, thou wilt not see in this vast host  
A single warrior or massive mace

Meet me upon the field though sun and moon  
 Be on their side. The men and arms abound,  
 Yet know I nothing of the leaders' names!  
 Now by the fortune of Afrásiyáb  
 Will I make all the desert like a sea."

V. 474

Descending, light of heart and unconcerned,  
 He joined the revels of the revellers,  
 And recked not of the war.

The Íránians

Set up the camp-enclosure of the Sháh  
 Before the castle on the open plain;  
 Men, tentage, and enclosures covered hill  
 And wilderness till naught was left to fill.

### § 15

*How Rustam slew Zhanda Razm*

At sunset, when night's skirt trailed o'er the day,  
 Came Rustam girded and intent on war  
 Before the Sháh, and said: "Let me go forth  
 Without my belt and helmet. I will mark  
 Who this new worldlord is, who are the chiefs,  
 And who is in command."

Káús replied:—

"The very work for thee, and mayst thou prosper  
 Both soul and body. God watch o'er thee ever,  
 And o'er thy heart's desire and loyal purpose."

Assuming Turkman garb he reached by stealth  
 The hold and heard the Turkmans' shouts and clamour.  
 The gallant hero made his way inside,  
 As 'twere a lion after antelopes,  
 And saw and marked the chieftains one and all,  
 Joy mantling in his visage like a rose.

Now when Suhráb was going to the wars  
 His mother summoned to her Zhanda Razm,

V. 475

For once he had seen Rustam at a feast.  
His father was the king of Samangán,  
His nephew glorious Suhráb. She said :—  
“O ardent warrior! be this youth’s comrade  
That when the hero cometh to Írán  
And meeteth with the monarch of the brave,  
And when the hosts encounter in the fight,  
Thou mayest show my darling son his father.”

Now as Suhráb appeared to Rustam’s eyes  
Enthroned amid the feast with Zhanda Razm  
On one hand, with the valiant cavalier  
Húmán and that illustrious Lion Bármán  
Upon the other, thou hadst said that he  
Filled all the throne and seemed a verdant cypress.  
His arms were like a camel’s thighs, his breast  
Was like a lion’s and his visage ruddy.  
A hundred valiant warriors sat round,  
All young, illustrious, and lion-like,  
While fifty slaves with bracelets on their arms  
Before the heart-delighting lofty throne  
Invoked by turns a blessing on his mien,  
His stature, sword, and signet-ring. As Rustam  
Crouched at a distance watching, Zhanda Razm  
Went out for some occasion that he had,  
Perceived a warrior like a lofty cypress,  
To whom there was no peer among the troops,  
And seizing on him roughly questioned him  
With sharpness, saying: “Who art thou? Speak out!  
Come to the light and let me see thy face.”

A sudden buffet from the fist of Rustam  
Fell on his neck; he yielded up the ghost.  
There Zhanda Razm lay—a corpse; for him  
The day of fighting and of feast was over.

Suhráb continued long in expectation,  
But Zhanda Razm the Lion came not back.  
At length the youth began to ask for him

Because his room was empty. Some went out,  
Beheld him vilely overthrown, at peace  
From banquet and from battle, and returned  
With clamour, and with sorrow in their hearts.  
They told Suhráb that Zhanda Razm was dead.  
The youth sprang up and went to him like smoke,  
Accompanied by servants, lights, and minstrels,  
Beheld him lying dead and stood astound,  
Then called his gallant warriors and said :—  
“Ye men of wisdom and ye valiant chiefs !  
Ye must not rest to-night but whet your spears,  
Because a wolf hath come among the flock  
And found the dogs and shepherds off their guard.  
Among the mighty he hath seized one ram  
And cast him thus in scorn, but with God’s help,  
When my bay trampleth earth, I will unstrap  
My lasso in revenge for Zhanda Razm.”

V. 476

He took his seat again and called the nobles.  
“Though Zhanda Razm’s place beside my throne  
Is void,” he said, “I have not done with feasting.”

As Rustam was returning to the Sháh,  
Gív, who was outpost-guard, saw him approach,  
Drew, roared out like a maddened elephant,  
And with his shield above his head showed fight ;  
But Rustam knowing who the outpost was  
Laughed and returned the shout, whereat the guard,  
Who knew his voice, advanced afoot and said :—  
“Where hast thou been afoot and in the dark,  
Thou battle-loving chieftain ?”

V. 477

Rustam told  
His enterprise and what a lion-man  
He had destroyed, while Gív applauded, saying :—  
“May charger, mace, and saddle ne’er lack thee.”

Then Rustam going to the Sháh informed him  
About the Turkmans and their banqueting,  
About Suhráb, his stature and his mien,



His arms and shoulders, chest and feet, and said :—  
 “ This is no Turkman born ; he is as tall  
 And upright as a cypress, with no peer  
 In either land ; in short ’tis Sám himself.”

Then of the blow on Zhanda Razm’s neck  
 He said : “ He came not back to feast or fight.”

They talked and after called for harp and wine,  
 But all the night the troops were ranked in line.

### § 16

*How Suhráb asked Hajír the Names of the Chiefs of Írán*

Now when the sun held up its golden shield  
 Fate also raised its head upon the sky.  
 Suhráb put on his battle-mail and mounted  
 Upon a charger dark as indigo.  
 An Indian sword was slung across his breast,  
 And on his head he wore a royal helmet,  
 While from his saddle-straps his lasso hung  
 In sixty coils. His face was stern. He came  
 And choosing out an eminence surveyed  
 The army of Írán, bade call Hajír,  
 And said to him : “ An arrow should be straight.  
 In every matter act with honesty  
 If thou wouldst ’scape mishap. Now answer truly,  
 Pervert not counsel nor prevaricate.  
 Wouldst thou be free and well esteemed by others ?  
 Then tell me what I ask about Írán,  
 And swerve no tittle from the path of truth.  
 I will bestow on thee abundant treasure,  
 But if thou liest bonds and pit are thine.”

Hajír replied : “ Whate’er the prince shall ask  
 I will reply according to my knowledge.  
 Why should I speak to thee deceitfully ?  
 Thou shalt be witness to mine honest dealing :

I will not even think a guileful thought.  
The best trade in the world is honesty,  
The worst thought guile."

Suhráb said: "I shall ask

At large about the chiefs, the Sháh, the folk,  
And all the great men of the land as Gív,  
Tús, and Gúdarz. Whatever I shall ask  
About Bahrám, famed Rustam, and the rest,  
Make answer to me as I question thee.  
Yon many-hued enclosure of brocade  
Encircling tents of leopard-skin; before it  
A hundred mighty elephants are tethered;  
There is a turquoise throne blue as the Nile,  
A flag charged with a yellow sun, the staff  
Crowned with a golden moon, the case of purple.  
Who is the man thus stationed in the centre?"

Hajír replied: "The Sháh, and at his gate  
Are elephants and lions."

V. 479

"On the right,"

Suhráb said, "there are many cavaliers  
With elephants and baggage. The enclosure  
Is black, and round it troops are standing ranked  
With tents past count; before it there are lions,  
Behind it elephants, while in the front  
There is a flag charged with an elephant,  
And cavaliers in golden boots stand by."

Hajír replied: "'Tis Tús son of Naudar:  
His standard hath an elephant-device."

Suhráb went on: "That red enclosure there,  
Where many cavaliers are standing round,  
The standard purple, the device a lion,  
And in the centre there are sparkling jewels.  
Behind it is a multitude of troops,  
Who all bear lances and are clad in mail.  
Who is he? Let me know the chieftain's name,  
And bring not ruin on thyself by guile."

He answered : "That belongeth to Gúdarz—  
The glory of the Free—son of Kishwád,  
A valiant general in war. He hath  
Twice forty sons, all Elephants and Lions.  
No elephant, no tiger of the plain,  
No mountain-pard, would strive with him in fight."

Suhráb went on : "As to yon green enclosure  
In front whereof are stationed many troops,  
While in the midst a splendid throne is set  
With Káwa's flag before it. On the throne  
A paladin is seated, one that hath  
The Grace, the neck, and shoulders of a hero,  
And seated thus is higher by a head  
Than any of the people standing near.  
Before him is a charger just his match  
In height ; a lasso droopeth to its hoofs.  
Whene'er the charger snorteth thou wouldst say :—  
'It is the raging sea !' In front of him  
Are many elephants in mail, and he  
Is restless. I behold not in Írán  
One of his height or such another charger.  
There is a dragon, look ! upon his standard,  
And on the staff-top is a golden lion."

Hajír thought : "If I tell this lion-man  
The bearings of the elephantine hero,  
Forthwith he will send up the dust from Rustam.  
'Tis best to keep him dark and name him not."  
He answered : "An ally of ours from Chín  
Hath lately joined the Sháh."

Suhráb inquired  
His name. Hajír replied : "I know it not,  
For I was in this castle at the time."

Suhráb was grieved to find no trace of Rustam,  
And though his mother had described the bearings  
He would not credit his own eyes. Again  
He pressed Hajír to tell and soothe his heart,

But o'er his head was written otherwise—  
 A sentence never minished or enhanced.  
 Suhráb next asked him: "Who among the chiefs  
 Pitched that enclosure which is most apart,  
 Where many cavaliers and elephants  
 Are standing and the clarions are sounding?  
 Above it is a flag charged with a wolf;  
 The golden staff-head reacheth to the clouds;  
 Within there is a throne with slaves before it."

V. 481

He answered: "That is Gív son of Gúdarz,  
 He whom the chieftains call 'the gallant Gív,'  
 The best and greatest of the family,  
 And captain o'er the more part of the host.  
 He is the noble son-in-law of Rustam,  
 And equalled but by few within Írán."

Suhráb continued: "Where the shining sun  
 Is rising I perceive a white enclosure  
 All of brocade of Rúman make. Before it  
 More than a thousand cavaliers are ranged;  
 The footmen armed with double-headed spears  
 And bucklers there make up a boundless host.  
 Their leader sitteth on an ivory throne  
 Upon a seat of teak. The tent-enclosure  
 Is of brocade, and many slaves stand ranked."

Hajír replied: "'Tis youthful Fariburz,  
 Son of the Sháh and crown of warriors."

Suhráb said: "It is fitting, since he is  
 The Sháh's son and possessor of a crown."

He asked: "Whose is that yellow tent-enclosure  
 In front whereof a banner fluttereth  
 With others yellow, red, and violet round it?  
 The charge upon the hindmost is a boar,  
 And on the lofty staff a silvern moon."

"His name," Hajír made answer, "is Guráza,  
 Who draweth not the rein in fights with lions—  
 A prudent man descended from Gívgán,

V. 482

Who never murmureth at pain or hardship."

Suhráb thus sought for traces of his father:

Hajír was reticent and hid the truth.

The Almighty hath disposed the world. Wilt thou  
Dispose it? Hath He ceased to superintend?

A fate not of thy choice is written now,  
And what He causeth will be in the end.

If thou affectionest this Wayside Inn

'Twill yield thee poison, travail, and chagrin.

The noble hero asked Hajír again

About that one whom he so longed to see,

About that green enclosure and tall steed,

About that warrior and the twisted lasso.

At last Hajír said: "I must keep back naught.

If I tell not the name of him of Chín

It is because I know it not myself."

Suhráb replied: "Thou doest much amiss,

Thou hast not mentioned Rustam, and that chief

Of paladins would show amid the host.

Thou saidst: 'He is the champion, he that guardeth

All provinces and marches.' When Káuś

Is warring, with a mighty elephant

To bear his crown and throne, the paladin

Should lead his van what time the war-cry riseth."

Hajír replied: "The lion-taking hero

Must be at present in Zábulistán,

For 'tis the time to feast among the roses."

Suhráb rejoined: "Now answer this—the Sháh

Is bent on war and, while helmed chieftains gather

To give him aid, the paladin in chief

Is merry-making! Young and old would laugh

At such a tale. We made a pact to-day,

And though I love not words I will repeat it:—

If thou wilt point me out the paladin

Thy head shall be exalted everywhere;

I will unlock the secret treasures

And leave thee not a want, but if thou keepest  
 This secret from me, making mystery  
 Where there is none, I will cut off thy head.  
 Consider now which course thou wilt adopt.  
 Know'st not the saying of the archimage  
 When speaking of some matter to the king ?  
 ' A word spoken is a jewel still

Uncut, still kept in bonds ; but, once set free  
 From bondage and disablement, may fill

The bezel—priceless, glittering brilliantly.' ”  
 Hajír responded : “ When my lord the prince  
 Is weary of his signet, crown, and state,  
 Then let him seek a warrior in the world  
 Who overthroweth mighty elephants,  
 And with his anvil-breaking mace-head robbeth  
 Two hundred of existence at a blow ;  
 For Rustam when opposed to any one  
 Will bring his head down from the sky to dust.  
 No elephant on earth is match for him,  
 His steed's dust is more black than indigo,  
 His body hath a hundred strong men's strength,  
 His head is taller than a lofty tree,  
 And when he rageth on the day of battle  
 What is a lion, elephant, or man  
 Within his grasp ? ”

High-born Suhráb replied :—

V. 484

“ Gúdarz son of Kishwád hath evil luck  
 In that for all his puissance, wit, and prowess  
 He hath to call thee son. Where hast thou looked  
 On men of war or heard their chargers' tramp  
 That thou describest Rustam in such terms  
 And utterest his praise continually ?  
 Thou fearest fire because the stream is calm,  
 But when it is in flood the fuming fire  
 Will soon be quenched, and when the sun shall draw  
 Its blazing sword night's head will go to sleep.”

Hajír unwitting thought : " If I declare  
 The lion-taker's bearings and inform  
 This Turkman with such hand and neck and seat,  
 He will arouse his warriors to fight  
 And urge along his elephantine steed.  
 He hath such strength and such a neck and shoulder  
 That Rustam will be slaughtered in his grasp.  
 Not one of all our warriors will come  
 To meet him face to face, and he will seize  
 The throne of Sháh Káús. An archmage said :—  
 ' It is a better thing with fame to go  
 From life than live and gratify the foe.'  
 If it be mine to perish by his hand  
 Day will not darken nor stream turn to blood.  
 Three score and sixteen sons—all lion-men—  
 Hath old Gúdarz beside myself, as Gív,  
 Who conquereth worlds and breaketh hosts, and is  
 In every place the leader of the folk,  
 Bahráh, Ruhhám the exalted, and Shídúsh  
 The lion-slaying warrior, and they all  
 Will show me kindness after I am dead,  
 And in revenge will slay our enemies ;  
 But when Gúdarz and all his seventy sons  
 Beloved—illustrious men and warriors—  
 Cease from Írán let me too be no more.  
 I mind a holy archimage's words :—  
 ' When cypress-roots appear the pheasant well  
 May hesitate at common grass to smell.' "

v. 485

Then said he to Suhráb : " Why so much heat ?  
 Thy questioning to me is all of Rustam.  
 Why must thou pick a quarrel with me thus  
 By asking foolish questions ? Just because  
 I cannot give thee an account of him  
 Wilt thou bhead me ? Thou need'st no excuse  
 For shedding blood ; show thy true colours then.  
 Thou wilt not crush the elephantine chief,

Or get him easily within thy elutehes.  
 Refrain from seeking him in fight, for he  
 Will surely make the dust fly out of thee."

## § 17

*How Suhráb attacked the Army of Káús*

Suhráb the chief of warriors, when he heard  
 These harsh words, turned his baek upon Hajír,  
 And hid his face without reply, astounded  
 At that dark utteranee ; then from saddlebaek  
 He fiereely struck Hajír a blow baek-handed,  
 Felled him, and went his way, mused much and long,  
 And made his preparations for the fight.  
 He girt him with the girdle of revenge,  
 Took from his princely head the golden erown,  
 Put on his mail and breastplate joyfully,  
 And set a Rúman helmet on his head.  
 That paladin, that binder of the Dív,  
 Took spear, bow, lasso, and his massive maeë,  
 The blood was boiling in his veins with ardour.  
 He mounted on his rapid steed, sent up  
 The battle-cry, and spear in hand rushed out  
 Like some mad elephant upon the field.  
 He came forth bent on fight, he made the dust-  
     clouds  
 Fly to the moon, then echarged the Sháh's enclosure  
 And made it totter with his spear, while all  
 The valiant chieftains fled like onagers  
 Before a lion's elaws ; not one had eourage  
 To faee such foot and stirrup, hand and rein,  
 Such arm and flashing spear. They met and said :  
 " Here is an elephantine hero for you—  
 One that we cannot look on unappalled !  
 Who is there bold enough to challenge him ? "

V. 486



Anon Suhráb the warrior raised his voice,  
 Assailing Sháh Káuś with scornful words,  
 And thus he said : " O monarch of the Free !  
 What business hast thou on the battlefield ?  
 Why dost thou bear the name of Kai Káuś  
 Who canst not stand where Lions fight together ?  
 I wield my spear and all thy troops are cowed.  
 Upon the night that Zhanda Razm was slain  
 I swore a mighty oath while at the feast :—  
 ' I will not leave a spearman of Írán,  
 And I will hang Káuś upon the gibbet  
 Alive.' What mighty man hast thou to meet me ? "

V. 487

He spake and waited long in silence. None  
 Made answer from Írán. Then bending down  
 He forced out seventy tent-pegs with his spear,  
 The tent-enclosure tumbled to the ground,  
 And everywhere the blast of clarions sounded.  
 Sháh Kai Káuś exclaimed in his dismay :—  
 " O men of noble name and glorious race !  
 Let some one take the news to Rustam, saying :—  
 ' Our warriors' wits are ousted by this Turkman.  
 I have no cavalier to fight with him ;  
 None of Írán is bold enough to go.' "

Tús bore the message and told Rustam all,  
 Who thus made answer : " Every other Sháh,  
 That called me suddenly, called me at times  
 To feast, at times to fight, but with Káuś  
 I ne'er see aught excepting fight and travail ! "

Then gazing from his tent he found that Gív,  
 Who had but just arrived, was saddling Rakhsh,  
 And that Gurgín was crying : " Quick ! Make haste ! "  
 Ruhhám was fastening the girth and mace,  
 And Tús had got in hand the horse's mail.  
 Each one was crying to another : " Quick ! "  
 The matchless hero heard it from his tent  
 And thought : " This must be Áhriman's own fight !

So great a hubbub is not made for one."

He put on his cuirass of tiger-skin,  
Then girt a royal girdle round his loins,  
And mounting Rakhsh set forth. He left Zawára  
In charge of throne and troops, enjoining him :—  
"Advance not and take no commands save mine."

They bore his standard with him as he went  
Intent on fight and angry. When he saw  
The limbs and shoulders of Suhráb, his breast  
As broad as that of valiant Sám, he said :—  
"Go we aside to some fit spot for battle."

V. 488

Suhráb began to rub his hands, he turned  
Back from the Íránian lines, and said to Rustam :—  
"Come then ; we mighty men require no help ;  
The fight between us will suffice, and yet  
The field of battle is no place for thee ;  
Thou canst not bear one buffet from my fist.  
Great stature hast thou, mighty limbs and neck,  
But they are weak with age."

Then Rustam, gazing  
Upon that haughty one with such long stirrups,  
And such a hand and shoulder, answered mildly :—  
"Fair youth ! the earth is hard and cold, the air  
Is soft and warm. Old am I, but have seen  
Full many a stricken field, and many a dív  
Hath perished by my hand, yet saw I never  
Myself o'ercome. Wait till we fight together ;  
If thou survivest fear no crocodile.  
Both seas and mountains have beheld how I  
Have striven with the famed chiefs of Túrán  
In fight : the stars bear witness to my deeds.  
My might hath laid the world beneath my feet,  
And now my heart doth yearn in ruth for thee ;  
I would not take thy life. Thou wilt not leave  
Behind a Turkman with such neck and shoulders.  
I know no peer to thee e'en in Írán."

When Rustam spake Suhráb's heart throbbed. He answered:—

“One question will I put. Vouchsafe to tell me  
The truth. Inform me of thy parentage,  
And make me happy by thy fair reply.  
I think that thou art Rustam, that thou art  
Sprung from the noble race of Narímán.”

The other answered him: “I am not Rustam,  
Not sprung from Sám the son of Narímán,  
For Rustam is a paladin, while I  
Am mean, not having throne and state and erown.”

Suhráb despaired, he had had hope before,  
The face of day was bright to him no more.

## § 18

### *How Rustam fought with Suhráb*

Suhráb, still musing on his mother's words,  
Went spear in hand. They chose a battle-ground  
Where room was scant, and fought with javelins  
Till points and whipping broke; next, wheeling left-  
ward,  
Closed with their Indian seimitars and showered  
Sparks from their blades, which shivered 'neath such  
strokes  
As might have heralded the Day of Doom;  
Then took their massive maces and fought on  
Until their weapons bent beneath the blows.  
The chargers staggered and their bards dropped off;  
The riders raged beneath their shivered mail;  
Both were fordone and hand and arm both failed.  
With bodies running sweat, with mouths dust-choked,  
And tongues thirst-craeked, at length the champions  
parted,  
The sire in anguish and the son exhausted.

O world! thy doings are a mystery,  
 The broken and the whole both come from thee!  
 Love stirred in neither of these twain, no trace  
 Of wisdom was there, love showed not its face!  
 The fish in streams, wild asses on the plain,  
 And beasts of burden know their young again,  
 But toil and lust forbid a man to know  
 The difference between a child and foe!

Then Rustam thought: "I never yet beheld  
 A Crocodile fight thus. Compared with this  
 To fight the White Dív was an easy task:  
 To-day my heart despaireth through a man!  
 The hand of one who is unpraetised yet,  
 No warrior and not named among the chiefs,  
 Hath made me weary of my life in sight  
 Of both the hosts!"

V. 490

The chargers being rested,  
 The youthful hero and the man in years  
 Strung up their bows, but still the coats of mail,  
 The breastplates, and the tiger-skin cuirass  
 Received no injury from the arrow-points,  
 And then each hero, raging at his foe,  
 Seized on the other by the leathern belt.  
 Now Rustam, had he eluted a rock in battle,  
 E'en the Black Stone itself,<sup>1</sup> had torn it out,  
 But when he seized the belt and would unhorse  
 Suhráb, the young man's waist felt not the tug,  
 And Rustam's hand was foiled. He quitted hold,  
 He marvelled at the prowess of his foe,  
 And then these lion-quellers, satiate  
 With battle, bruised, and wounded drew apart.  
 Suhráb again took from his saddle-bow  
 The massive mace, and gripping with his legs  
 Smote Rustam grievously upon the shoulder,  
 Who though he wineed yet bravely bare the pain.

<sup>1</sup> A meteorite built into the wall of the Kaaba at Mecca.

Suhráb laughed out and cried : " O cavalier !  
 Thou canst not bear the buffets of the brave.  
 Thy charger, one would say, is but an ass ;  
 As for the rider both his hands are naught.  
 A warrior though eypress-tall is foolish  
 To play the youth when he is in his dotage."

V. 491

Each humbled by the other turned away.  
 They parted, troubled both in heart and mind.  
 Like leopard sighting prey the mighty Rustam  
 Went to attack the army of Túrán,  
 While brave Suhráb assailed the Íránian host  
 And gave his fleet steed rein. He charged the foe  
 And many a warrior perished by his hand.  
 Wolf-like he scattered small and great. The heart  
 Of Rustam boded ill. " Káús will suffer,"  
 He thought, " from this brave Turkman just arrived  
 With mail-clad breast and arms."

He hasted back  
 To camp with anxious heart. There mid the host  
 He saw Suhráb—a lion mad for prey—  
 The ground about him tulip-hued with blood,  
 His spearpoint, hands, and mail all drenched with gore.  
 Then Rustam raging like a furious lion  
 Exclaimed : " Bloodthirsty Turkman ! who of all  
 This host opposed thee ? Why hast thou not kept  
 Thy hands for me instead of coming thus  
 Like wolf among a flock ?"

Suhráb replied :—

" The army of Túrán is holding back  
 From strife, and doing nothing to provoke it,  
 Yet thou began'st it by assailing them  
 When none sought battle and revenge on thee !"

V. 492

" Light faileth," Rustam said. " On its return  
 A throne and gibbet wait us on this plain,  
 For all the bright world yieldeth to the sword,  
 And if thine arms are so familiar

With scimitar and arrow never die !  
 Come we with vengeful swords at break of day  
 To learn the Maker's will, but now away !"

## § 19

*How Rustam and Suhráb returned to Camp*

They parted and the air's face gloomed. Suhráb  
 Amazed the circling sphere. Thou wouldst have said :—  
 " Heaven fashioned him of war ; he ceaseth not  
 A moment from the fray ; his form is brazen,  
 His charger iron, and his spirit wondrous."

Suhráb when night fell joined his troops. His loins  
 Were galled with battle but his breast was iron.  
 Thus spake he to Húmán : " This day the sun  
 Arose and filled the world with war and strife.  
 How fared ye with this gallant cavalier  
 Who hath a hero's heart and lion's claws ?  
 What did he say and do ? He proved my match !  
 How fared my troops with him ? I hold him peerless,  
 Though old a Lion bent on war and strife."

Húmán replied : " Thou bad'st us tarry here.  
 Just as we had made ready for the field  
 A warrior came and challenged us to combat,  
 Confronting all this mighty armament.  
 Thou wouldst have said : ' He cometh fresh from wine  
 To venture all alone on such a struggle.'  
 He raised the dust of war on every side  
 And slaughtered many warriors of our camp,  
 Then turning round departed at full speed."

V. 493

Suhráb said : " He hath slain no man of mark  
 While I have slaughtered many Íránians,  
 And puddled with their blood the ground to clay,  
 While ye looked on. However, none opposed me ;  
 'Twas well none did, for had a lion come

He would not have escaped my massive mace.  
 What is a tiger, pard, or mighty lion  
 Confronting me who with my spearpoint bring  
 Fire from the clouds? When warriors behold  
 My visage in its wrath their mail is shivered.  
 To-morrow morning ere it is high day  
 It will be seen which is the better man,  
 And by the Maker's name—the only God—  
 I will not leave a foe alive. Now spread we  
 The board with meat and wine, and cheer our hearts."

When Rustam reached the host he questioned Gív:—  
 "What did Suhráb the daring warrior?"

V. 494

Gív answered: "We ne'er saw one fight like him.  
 He rode up to our centre spear in hand,  
 And raging; there he challenged Tús, who wolf-like  
 Came forth and mounted. When Suhráb beheld him  
 Advancing with his lance he roared as 'twere  
 A lion in its rage, and with bent mace  
 Struck Tús upon the breast a mighty blow  
 That made his helm fall off. Tús turned and fled.  
 Then many others fought but none prevailed,  
 For only Rustam can contend with him.  
 I kept the good old rule of one to one.  
 When no more single challengers went forth  
 We let him have the field all to himself,  
 Whereat he left the centre for the right  
 And flourished in his glory here and there."

Now Rustam sorrowed at the words of Gív  
 And went to Sháh Káuś, who seated him  
 Upon the throne. Then Rustam told the Sháh  
 About Suhráb, his stature, and his mien:—  
 "None ever saw one of his tender years  
 So brave and lion-like. In height he reacheth  
 The stars; the earth can not support his bulk;  
 His arms and thighs are camel-like and larger.  
 With sword and shaft, with lasso and with mace,

We proved each other lustily in all ways  
 Until at last I said : ' Ere now have I  
 Plucked from the saddle many a warrior,'  
 And laying hold upon his leathern belt  
 I put the buckle to a mighty strain,  
 And fancied : ' I shall raise him from his saddle  
 And hurl him like the rest to dust.' But though  
 The mountain-tops were rocking in the blast  
 That chieftain would not rock upon his seat,  
 And so I quitted him, for it was late,  
 The night was very dark, there was no moon ;  
 But we intend to meet again to-morrow  
 To wrestle. All I can I will, but know not  
 Which will prevail. Still we shall learn God's purpose,  
 For victory and conquest are from Him  
 Who is the Maker of the sun and moon."

V. 495

Then Kai Káús replied : " God rend our foes  
 In pieces ! I will pray to Him to-night  
 For victory o'er this vile, malignant Turkman,  
 Pray that thy withered hopes may spring afresh,  
 And that thy fame may reach the sun."

Then Rustam :—

" Thy Grace will speed thy liege's whole desire."

He went depressed and vengeful to his camp.  
 To him Zawára came with downcast soul,  
 And said : " How fared the paladin to-day ?"  
 But Rustam first would eat, then washed his heart  
 Of care and charged his brother, saying thus :—  
 " Be vigilant and cautious. When I go  
 At dawn to fight that Turkman warrior  
 Lead out mine army and bring forth my flag,  
 My throne, and golden boots, and be before  
 My tent when bright Sol riseth. If I prove  
 Victorious in the fight I shall not loiter  
 Upon the battlefield, while if the matter  
 Have other ending make no lamentation

V. 496



And be not downcast. Let not any of you  
 Go on the field or prosecute the war,  
 But go hence to Zábulistán to Zál,  
 Console my mother for my God-sent fate,  
 And say to her: 'Set not thy heart upon me,  
 And be not always mourning for my death.  
 No one abideth in this world for ever,  
 Heaven had no pretext left to spare me longer.  
 I have slain lions, pards, dívs, crocodiles  
 Enough, and razed full many a wall and stronghold,  
 While no man had the upper hand of me,  
 Though he that mounteth on his steed and chargeth  
 Is simply knocking at the door of death.  
 What though a man outlive a thousand years  
 One road and one event are for us all.  
 Bethink thee of Jamshíd the exalted Sháh,  
 And Tahmúras the Binder of the Dív.  
 There was no monarch like them here below,  
 And yet at last God took them. As the earth  
 Remained not theirs I too must pass away.'  
 When she hath been consoled thus say to Zál:—  
 'Abandon not the monarch of the world,  
 Fight for him valiantly and do his bidding.  
 We all, both young and old, are doomed to die;  
 No one abideth in this world for ever.'"

They rested after half the night had gone  
 In talk about Suhráb and him alone.

## § 20

### *How Suhráb overthrew Rustam*

The bright sun shone, the raven night flew low,  
 Great Rustam donned his tiger-skin cuirass  
 And mounted on his fiery dragon-steed.  
 Two leagues divided host from host, and all  
 Stood ready-armed. The hero with a casque

Of iron on his head came on the field.  
 Suhráb on his side revelling with comrades  
 Had thus addressed Húmán: "That lion-man,  
 Who striveth with me, is as tall as I am  
 And hath a dauntless heart. He favoureth me  
 In shoulder, breast, and arm, and thou wouldst say  
 That some skilled workman laid us out by line.  
 His very feet and stirrups move my love  
 And make me blush, for I perceive in him  
 The marks whereof my mother spake. Moreover  
 My heart presageth that he must be Rustam,  
 For few resemble him. I may not challenge  
 My sire or lightly meet him in the combat."

Húmán said: "Rustam oft hath countered me:  
 This charger is like his, except in action."

V. 498

At sunrise, when they woke, Suhráb arrayed  
 Himself in mail and mirthful though resolved  
 Set forward shouting, ox-head mace in hand.  
 He greeted Rustam smiling, thou hadst said  
 That they had passed the night in company:—  
 "How went the night? How is't with thee to-day?  
 Why so intent on strife? Fling down thine arrows  
 And scimitar, and drop the hand of wrong.  
 Let us dismount and, sitting, clear our faces  
 With wine, and, leaguering in God's sight, repent  
 Our former strife. Until some other cometh  
 To battle feast with me because I love thee,  
 And weep for shamefastness. In sooth thou comest  
 From heroes and wilt tell me of thy stock,  
 For as my foe thou shouldst not hide thy name.  
 Art thou the famous Rustam of Zábul,  
 The son of valiant Zál the son of Sám?"

Then Rustam: "Young aspirant! heretofore  
 We talked not thus but spake last night of wrestling.  
 I am not to be gulled, attempt it not.  
 Though thou art young I am no child myself,

V. 499

But girt to wrestle, and the end shall be  
According to the will of Providence.  
I have known ups and downs, and am not one  
To practise guile upon."

Suhráb replied :—

"Old man ! if thou rejectest my proposals . . . !  
I wished that thou shouldst die upon thy bed,  
And that thy kin should tomb thy soulless corpse,  
But I will end thee if it be God's will."

They lighted, tied their chargers to a rock,  
And cautiously advanced in mail and casque  
With troubled hearts. They wrestled like two lions  
Until their bodies ran with sweat and blood.  
From sunrise till the shadows grew they strove  
Until Suhráb, that maddened Elephant,  
Reached out, up-leaping with a lion's spring,  
Caught Rustam's girdle, tugged amain as though,  
Thou wouldst have said, to rend the earth, and shouting  
With rage and vengeance hurled him to the ground,  
Raised him aloft and, having dashed him down,  
Sat on his breast with visage, hand, and mouth  
Besmirched with dust, as when a lion felleth  
An onager, then drew a bright steel dagger  
To cut off Rustam's head, who seeing this  
Exclaimed : "Explain I must ! O warrior  
That takest Lions captive and art skilled  
With lasso, mace, and scimitar ! the customs  
And laws of arms with us are not as yours.  
In wrestling none may take a foeman's head  
The first time that his back is on the ground,  
But having thrown him twice and won the name  
Of Lion then he may behead the foe :  
Such is our custom."

Thus he sought to 'scape  
The Dragon's clutches and get off with life.  
The brave youth hearkened to the old man's words.

In part through confidence, in part through fate,  
 In part no doubt through magnanimity,  
 Suhráb let Rustam go, turned toward the plain,  
 Pursued an antelope that crossed his path,  
 And utterly forgot his recent foe.

When he was far away Húmán came up  
 As swift as dust and asked about the fight.  
 He told Húmán what had been said and done,  
 Who cried: "Alas! young man! art thou indeed  
 So weary of thy life? Woe for thy breast,  
 Mien, stature, stirrups, and heroic feet!  
 The mighty Lion whom thou hadst ensnared  
 Thou hast let go and all is still to do.  
 Mark how he will entreat thee on the day  
 Of battle owing to thy senseless act.

A king<sup>1</sup> once spake a proverb to the point:—  
 'Despise not any foe however weak.'

He took the very life out of Suhráb,  
 Who standing sorrowing and amazed replied:—  
 "Let us dismiss such fancies from our hearts,  
 For he will come to fight with me to-morrow,  
 And thou shalt see a yoke upon his neck."

V. 501

He went to camp in dudgeon at his deed.  
 When Rustam had escaped his foeman's clutch  
 He was again as 'twere a mount of steel.  
 He went toward a rivulet as one  
 Who having fainted is himself again.  
 He drank and bathed, then prayed to God for strength  
 And victory, not knowing what the sun  
 And moon decreed, or how the turning sky  
 Would rob him of the Crown upon his head.

The tale is told that Rustam had at first  
 Such strength bestowed by Him who giveth all  
 That if he walked upon a rock his feet  
 Would sink therein. Such puissance as that

<sup>1</sup> Zahhák. See vol. i. p. 154.

Proved an abiding trouble, and he prayed  
 To God in bitterness of soul to minish  
 His strength that he might walk like other men.  
 According to his prayer his mountain-strength  
 Had shrunk, but face to face with such a task,  
 And pierced by apprehension of Suhráb,  
 He cried to God and said: "Almighty Lord!  
 Protect Thy slave in his extremity.  
 O holy Fosterer! I ask again  
 My former strength."

God granted him his prayer,  
 The strength which once had waned now waxed in him.  
 He went back to the field perturbed and pale  
 While, like a maddened elephant, Suhráb,  
 With lasso on his arm and bow in hand,  
 Came in his pride and roaring like a lion,  
 His plunging charger flinging up the soil.  
 When Rustam saw the bearing of his foe  
 He was astound and gazing earnestly  
 Weighed in his mind the chances of the fight.  
 Suhráb, puffed up with youthful arrogance,  
 On seeing Rustam in his strength and Grace,  
 Cried: "Thou that didst escape the Lion's claws!  
 Why com'st thou boldly to confront me? Speak!  
 Hast thou no interests of thine own to seek?"

## § 21

### *How Suhráb was slain by Rustam*

They tied their steeds while fate malignantly  
 Revolved o'erhead, and when dark fate is wroth  
 Flint rocks become like wax. The two began  
 To wrestle, holding by their leathern belts,  
 As for Suhráb thou wouldst have said: "High heaven  
 Hath hampered him," while Rustam reaching clutched  
 That warrior-leopard by the head and neck,

Bent down the body of the gallant youth,  
 Whose time was come and all whose strength was gone,  
 And like a lion dashed him to the ground ; V. 503  
 Then, knowing that Suhráb would not stay under,  
 Drew lightly from his waist his trenchant sword  
 And gashed the bosom of his gallant son.

Whenever thou dost thirst for blood and stain  
 Therewith thy glittering dagger, destiny

Will be athirst for thy blood, and ordain  
 Each hair of thine to be a sword for thee.

Suhráb cried : " Ah ! " and writhed. Naught recked  
 he then

Of good or ill. " I am alone to blame,"  
 He said to Rustam. " Fate gave thee my key.  
 This hump-backed sky reared me to slay me soon.  
 Men of my years will mock me since my neck  
 Hath thus come down to dust. My mother told me  
 How I should recognise my father. I  
 Sought him in love and die of my desire.  
 Alas ! my toils are vain, I have not seen him.  
 Now wert thou fish, or wrapped like night in gloom,  
 Or quit of earth wast soaring like a star,  
 My father would avenge me when he seeth  
 My pillow bricks. Some chief will say to Rustam :—  
 ' Suhráb was slain and flung aside in scorn  
 While seeking thee.' "

Then Rustam grew distraught,  
 The world turned black, his body failed ; o'ercome  
 He sank upon the ground and swooned away ;  
 Till coming to himself he cried in anguish :—  
 " Where is the proof that thou art Rustam's son ?  
 May his name perish from among the great,  
 For I am Rustam ! Be my name forgotten,  
 And may the son of Sám sit mourning me ! "

He raved, his blood seethed, and with groans he  
 plucked

His hair up by the roots, while at the sight  
 Suhráb sank swooning till at length he cried :—  
 “ If thou indeed art Rustam thou hast slain me  
 In wanton malice, for I made advances,  
 But naught that I could do would stir thy love.  
 Undo my breastplate, view my body bare,  
 Behold thy jewel, see how sires treat sons !  
 The drums beat at my gate, my mother came  
 With blood-stained cheeks and stricken to the soul  
 Because I went. She bound this on mine arm  
 And said : ‘ Preserve this keepsake of thy father’s  
 And mark its virtue.’ It is mighty now,  
 Now when the strife is over and the son  
 Is nothing to his sire.”

When Rustam loosed  
 The mail and saw the gem he rent his clothes,  
 And cried : “ Oh ! my brave son, approved by all  
 And slain by me ! ”

With dust upon his head  
 And streaming face he rent his locks until  
 His blood ran down.

“ Nay, this is worse and worse,”  
 Suhráb said. “ Wherefore weep ? What will it profit  
 To slay thyself ? What was to be hath been.”

When day declined and Rustam came not back  
 There went forth twenty trusty warriors  
 To learn the issue. Both the steeds were standing  
 Bemoiled with dust, but Rustam was not there.  
 The nobles, thinking that he had been slain,  
 Went to Káús in consternation saying :—

“ The throne of majesty is void of Rustam ! ”

V. 505

A cry went up throughout the host and all  
 Was in confusion. Then Káús bade sound  
 The drums and trumpets, Tús came, and the Sháh  
 Said to the troops : “ Dispatch a messenger  
 That he may find out what Suhráb hath done,

And if there must be mourning through Írán.  
None will confront him with brave Rustam dead.  
We must attack in force and speedily."

While clamour raged Suhráb said thus to Rustam :—  
"The 'Turkmans' case is altered since my day  
Is done. Use all thine influence that the Sháh  
May not attack them. They approached Írán  
Through trust in me, and I encouraged them.  
How could I tell, O famous paladin!  
That I should perish by my father's hand?  
Let them depart unscathed, and treat them kindly.  
I had a warrior in yonder hold  
Caught by my lasso. Him I often asked  
To point thee out : mine eyes looked ever for thee.  
He told me all but this. His place is void.<sup>1</sup>  
His words o'er-cast my day, and I despaired.  
See who he is and let him not be harmed.  
I marked in thee the tokens that my mother  
Described but trusted not mine eyes. The stars  
Decreed that I should perish by thy hand.  
I came like lightning and like wind I go.  
In heaven I may look on thee with joy."

V. 506

Then Rustam choked, his heart was full of fire,  
His eyes of tears. He mounted quick as dust  
And came with lamentations to the host  
In grievous consternation at his deed.  
The Íránians catching sight of him fell prostrate  
And gave God praise that Rustam had returned,  
But when they saw the dust upon his dead,  
His clothes and bosom rent, they questioned him :  
"What meaneth this? For whom art thou thus  
troubled?"

He told the fearful deed, and all began  
To mourn aloud with him. His anguish grew.  
He told the nobles : "I have lost to-day

<sup>1</sup> "La place que je lui avais destinée reste vide."—MOHL.



All strength and courage. Fight not with Túrán :  
I have done harm enough."

Zawára came

With breast and raiment rent and body wounded,  
Whom Rustam told about his slaughtered son,  
And added : " I repent me of my deed,  
And have unmeasured retribution. I  
Have slain my son now when my head is grey.  
He is cut off both root and stem, his loins  
Are pierced, and heaven will weep for him for ever."

V. 507

He sent and told Húmán : " The scimitar  
Of war is sheathed and thou commandest now.  
Watch o'er thy host. This is no day for fight  
Or further words with thee because through malice  
Thou didst not speak but sear my life and eyes."

Then to Zawára said the paladin :—  
" Escort Húmán, brave hero ! to the river,  
Eschewing every act of violence."

Zawára went forthwith and gave the message,  
And he—the warrior that taught Suhráb  
The art of war—thus answered : " 'Twas Hajír,  
That evil-purposed stirrer up of strife,  
Who hid the matter of your general,  
And when Suhráb sought token of his sire  
Spake not but left his mind in ignorance.  
The black behaviour of Hajír hath brought  
This ill on us. His head should be struck off."

Zawára came back to inform the hero  
About Húmán, the host, of what Hajír,  
The evil and malevolent, had done,  
And how Suhráb had perished by his means.  
The hero was distracted at the words,  
The world grew dark before his eyes, he quitted  
The battlefield and coming to Hajír  
Laid hold upon his throat and threw him down,  
Then drawing forth a dagger of bright steel

Was minded to behead him, but the nobles 179  
 Took part with him and saved him from death's door.  
 Then Rustam hurried to his wounded son  
 With Tús, Gúdarz, and Gustaham, while all  
 The troops, concerned for Rustam, said to him :—  
 “God will provide a remedy for this,  
 And make thy sorrow easy.”

Rustam seized

A dagger to behead himself, but weeping  
 Their own hearts' blood the chieftains hung on him.  
 Gúdarz said : “Will it help thee to send up V. 508  
 The world in smoke? Though thou shalt do thyself  
 A hundred harms, how will it soothe thy darling?  
 If there remaineth time for him on earth  
 He will remain; do thou remain with him;  
 But, if the youth is passing from the world,  
 Think! Who abideth in the world for ever?  
 We are the quarry, and death hunteth us  
 No matter whether we wear casque or crown,  
 But all are borne out when their end hath come,  
 And afterward we wot not how they do.  
 Our tears are needed on our own account.  
 Who is there, chieftain! free from dread of Death?  
 However long or short the way may be  
 We scatter when he joineth company.”

## § 22

*How Rustam asked Káús for an Elixir*

Then to Gúdarz said Rustam : “Famous hero  
 Of ardent soul! bear for me to Káús  
 A message, tell him what hath chanced, and say  
 Thus: ‘With a dagger have I pierced the reins  
 Of my brave son. May Rustam's life be short!  
 If thou at all art mindful of my deeds  
 Let thy heart feel for me in my distress.

in thy treasury,

Which hath the power to make the wounded whole,  
Send somewhat graciously to me forthwith,  
Together with a cup of wine. My son,  
By thy good fortune, may recover yet,  
And stand like me a slave before thy throne.' "

The chieftain came like wind and gave the message.

The Sháh said: " Who hath lustre in my sight  
Exceeding that of elephantine Rustam ?

I do not wish him ill but honour him

. 509

Exceedingly, yet, if I send the elixir,

Suhráb—an elephantine chief—will live,

Will strengthen Rustam's back, and doubtlessly

Bring ruin on myself. If at his hands

I suffer shall I not avenge myself ?

' Who is Káuś, ' thou heardest him once say,

' And if he be the Sháh who then is Tús ? ' <sup>1</sup>

Who in this wide world hath such neck and limbs

And Grace ? How will he stand before my throne,

Or march beneath the banner of the Sháhs ?

He gave me his abuse and took away

My credit with the troops. If his son liveth

A pinch of dust is all that I shall get.

Art thou of high rank and experience

And hast not heard the language of Suhráb :—

' I will behead a thousand in Írán

And hang Káuś alive upon the gibbet ? ' <sup>2</sup>

If he surviveth great and small will quake.

To cherish foes is to invite contempt."

Thereat Gúdarz returned like smoke to Rustam,

And said : " The evil nature of the Sháh

Is like a colocynth in constant fruit.

<sup>1</sup> A kingly perversion of what Rustam really had said, suggesting that he contemplated dethroning Káuś and restoring the ancient Pishdádian line in the person of its representative, Tús. See p. 143.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 160.

He hath no equal in the world for harshness,  
 And never helpeth any one in trouble.  
 Go unto him in person, be thy part  
 To bring the light to his benighted heart."

V. 510

## § 23

*How Rustam lamented for Suhráb*

Then Rustam called for an embroidered robe  
 And, having laid the youth thereon, set off,  
 But as he went one overtook him, saying :—  
 "Suhráb hath passed from this wide world, and asketh  
 No more a palace of thee but a bier."

The father started, sighed, and groaning closed  
 His eyes, then lighting swift as wind removed  
 His helm and scattered dust upon his head,  
 While all the great men also wept and wailed.  
 He cried in mournful tones : "O warrior-youth  
 Exalted and a paladin by birth !  
 The sun and moon, the breastplate and the helm,  
 The crown and throne, will never see thy peer.  
 Hath this that hath befallen me—to slay  
 My son in mine old age—befallen another ?  
 My son—the offspring of the worldlord Sám  
 The cavalier, born of a noble dame !  
 I, that have now no peer in all the world  
 For valour, was a boy to him ! Well might  
 My hands be lopped ! May never seat be mine  
 Save in the darksome dust. What shall I say  
 When tidings reach his mother ? How shall I  
 Send any one to break the news to her ?  
 What reason can I give for slaying one  
 Without offence and darkening his day ?  
 What sire e'er acted thus ? I well deserve  
 The world's abuse. Who ever slew a son  
 So young and wise and valiant ? And his mother !

V. 511

What will her sire, that honoured paladin,  
 Say to her in her youth and innocence?  
 How they will curse the progeny of Sám  
 And call me lacklove, impious! Who could deem  
 That at his years my darling would become  
 Tall as a cypress, set his heart on war,  
 Array the host, and turn my day to darkness?"

He bade them spread brocade such as kings use  
 Upon his young son's face—that son who set  
 His heart on throne and realm and only won  
 A narrow bier. They bore it from the field,  
 Then set the camp-enclosure in a blaze  
 While all the troops cast dust upon their heads.  
 They burned the tents, the many-hued brocade,  
 And all the goodly seats of yellow pardskin.  
 A cry went up and mighty Rustam wailed:—  
 "The world will see no cavalier like thee  
 For skill and valour on the day of battle.  
 Woe for thy valour and thy prudent mind!  
 Woe for those cheeks of thine, thy mien, thy stature!  
 Woe's me! this sorrow and heart-rending grief!  
 He left his mother and his father slew him!"

With royal raiment rent upon his body  
 And weeping blood he scrabbled in the dust  
 Exclaiming: "Zál and virtuous Rúdába  
 Will utter curses, saying: 'Rustam gained  
 The mastery and stabbed him to the heart.'  
 What plea of mine will win their hearts to me?  
 How will the chieftains bear to hear that I  
 Have rooted from the garth the straight-stemmed  
 cypress?"

Then all the paladins of Sháh Kaús  
 Sat by the wayside in the dust with Rustam,  
 And much advised him, but he heeded not.

Such are high heaven's deeds! It hath for us  
 A lasso in this hand, in that a crown,

And him that sitteth crowned and prosperous  
 It haleth with the twisted lasso down.  
 Why should we love this world when we and they  
 That fare with us alike must pass away?  
 Though one may reckon on long life he must  
 Betake him in the last resort to dust.  
 Now whether heaven acteth knowingly,  
 Or not, 'tis vain to ask its how and why;  
 Forbear we then to weep that one should go:  
 The end thereof is not for us to know.

The Sháh informed about Suhráb drew near  
 To Rustam with his retinue and said:—  
 "From Mount Alburz e'en to the reed the sky  
 Will bear all off. We may not set our love  
 Upon this dust, for, though some haste, some linger,  
 All die at last. Take comfort for the dead,  
 And hear what sages say. Though thou shouldst dash  
 The sky upon the earth and burn the world  
 'Twill not recall the dead. Know that his soul  
 Is long in heaven. From afar I marked  
 His breast, neck, stature, and his iron mace  
 As fate impelled him onward with his host  
 To perish by thy hands. What remedy?  
 How long wilt thou bewail the dead?"

V. 513

He answered:—

"Though he is gone Húmán remaineth still  
 With other chieftains of Túrán and Chín.  
 Regard them not as foes but let Zawára,  
 God willing and the Sháh, conduct them hence."

Káús replied: "Aspiring chief! thy face  
 Is saddened through this fight, and though our foes  
 Have harmed me much and sent smoke from Írán,  
 Yet through thy sorrow is my heart so sore  
 That I will think upon revenge no more."

## § 24

*How Rustam returned to Zábulistán*

The Sháh marched homeward with the host, while  
Rustam

V. 514

Stayed for Zawára's news about the foe,  
Then marched at dawn toward Zábulistán,  
Where Zál and all the folk went out to meet him  
In anguish and distress. They reached the bier.  
The nobles scattered dust upon their heads,  
They docked the tails of their high-crested steeds,  
And rent the brazen tymbals and the drums.  
When Zál the son of Sám perceived the bier  
He lighted from his steed with golden trappings,  
While matchless Rustam went in front afoot  
With heart and raiment rent. The warriors  
Put off their belts, stooped to the dust before it,  
And served as bearers, bending low their heads,  
Alas! for him so noble and so brave!  
While Rustam in his father's presence lifted  
His son's head from the golden broidery,  
And cried in anguish: "See how Sám the horseman  
Is sleeping sadly on this narrow bier!"

Zál showered tears of blood and plained to God,  
While Rustam cried: "Chief! thou hast gone, and I  
Am left in shame and wretchedness."

Then Zál:—

"A strange event! His was a massive mace.  
He was of note among the mightiest,  
And none will bear his like."

V. 515

He spoke through tears;  
His theme was all Suhráb. When Rustam reached  
His hall he wailed and had the corse set down  
In front of him. Rúdába, seeing it  
And Rustam's tears, exclaimed: "Alack! thou hero!

Uplift thy head one moment from the bier."

She wailed and heaving deep-drawn sighs exclaimed :—

" O paladin, son of the Lion's Whelp !

None will be born so strong and brave as thou.

Henceforth thou wilt not whisper to thy mother

Tales of thy happy moments, for in sooth

Thou hast departed to the prison-house,

Departed to the mansion of the wretched.

Oh tell not what befell thee from thy father,

And why it was that thus he pierced thy heart !"

Her cries reached Saturn ; all that heard her wept.

Dust-smirched and woebegone she sought her bower

While Rustam at the sight wept tears of blood.

Thou wouldst have asked : " Hath Doomsday come, for  
joy

Hath fled all hearts ? "

Again he brought the bier,

Whereon Suhráb the Lion lay, before

The gallant chiefs, and in his father's presence

Drew back the shroud. He showed the chiefs the corse,

And thou hadst said that heaven reeked with sorrow.

All that were present looked on helplessly,

All cheeks were livid, all robes rent, all hearts

Fulfilled with pain, all heads besmirched with dust.

The royal palace was one mighty bier,

And of that valiant Lion in his coffin

Thou wouldst have said : " Tis' Sám with his huge V. 516  
limbs,

And tired with warfare he hath gone to sleep."

The sire replaced the gold brocade and closed

The narrow bier. He said : " Though I shall make

His tomb of gold and fill it round with musk

'Twill perish with me, but I can no more."

While all went blind with grief he made a charnel

Shaped like a horse's hoof. The bier was formed



Of undried aloe-wood with golden clasps.

The tale of how the paladin had slain  
His son went everywhere and all the world  
Was full of grief, while Rustam sorrowed long,  
But in the end perforce resigned himself.

The world hath many an act like this in mind,  
On every soul it setteth many a brand,

For who possesseth sense and wit combined  
The treachery of fortune to withstand?

The Íránians hearing burned with grief. Húmán,  
For his part, went back to Túrán and told  
Afrásiyáb, who was all wonderment  
And speculation touching that event.

## § 25

*How Suhráb's Mother received the Tidings of his Death*

A cry rose from Túrán: "Suhráb hath fallen  
Upon the battlefield!" The tidings reached  
The king of Samangán, who rent his robes.  
The tidings reached Tahmína: "Brave Suhráb  
Hath perished, stricken by his father's sword!"  
She seized her robe and rent it, and her form—  
That goodly gem—shone forth. She raised a cry  
Of wail and woe, and swooned at whiles. She coiled  
Her hair like twisted lassos round her fingers  
And plucked it out. The blood ran down her face.  
At times she sank fordone. She strewed dark dust  
Upon her head, gnawed pieces from her arms,  
Flung fire upon her head and scorched herself,  
And burned her musky tresses. "Where art thou,"  
She cried, "who wast thy mother's soul, but art  
Now only dust and blood? I scanned the road,  
I said: 'I may have tidings of Suhráb  
And Rustam.' Then I mused and said: 'Already

Hast thou been round the world to find thy father,  
Hast found him, and art speeding home again.'  
How could I know, my son! that news would come  
That he had pierced thy liver with his sword?  
He had no pity for that face of thine,  
Thy stature, mien, and arms, he pitied not  
Thy girdlestead but clave it with his blade.  
I used to nurse the body of my boy  
Through days of brightness and through weary nights,  
And now 'tis drowned in blood! A winding-sheet V. 518  
Is all the cover of his stainless form.  
Whom shall I clasp upon my bosom now?  
Who is there that will rid me of my grief?  
Whom shall I call upon to take thy place?  
To whom impart my pain and misery?  
Woe for his soul and body, eye and lustre,  
That dwell in dust instead of hall and garden!  
O warrior, shelter of the host! thou soughtest  
Thy sire and in his place hast found thy grave.  
Hope turned in thee to dolorous despair,  
And now thou sleepest scorned and miserable  
Amid the dust. Before he drew his dagger  
And gashed thy silvern side why didst not thou  
Show him the token that thy mother gave thee?  
Why didst thou not declare thyself to him?  
Thy mother told thee how to know thy sire:  
How was it that thou didst not trust her words?  
Without thee she is as the captives are—  
All travail, anguish, misery, and sighing.  
Why went I not with thee that wast to be  
The warriors' cynosure? He would have known me  
Though far away and welcomed both of us,  
Cast down his sword and never pierced thy side."  
This said she tore herself, plucked out her hair,  
And smote her lovely visage with her palms.  
She filled the eyes of all the folk with hail,

V. 519

So grievous were her moans and lamentations.  
 At length while all hearts ached she fell a-swoon,  
 Fell as one falleth dead upon the ground,  
 And thou hadst said: "Her blood is turned to ice."  
 She roused, thought of her son, and wailed afresh,  
 Her very heart's blood crimsoning her tears.  
 She fetched his crown, wept o'er it and his throne,  
 Exclaiming in her grief: "O royal Tree!"  
 She brought his wind-foot charger forth, that charger  
 Which he had prized so in his happy days,  
 And clasped and kissed its head, to folk's amazement,  
 And nuzzled on its hoofs, while her blood fell  
 And reddened all the ground. She took his robe  
 And clasped it to her body like her son,  
 She fetched his jerkin, coat of mail, and bow,  
 His spear, his falchion, and his massive mace.  
 She fetched his saddle with the reins and buckler,  
 And dashed her head thereon. She fetched his lasso,  
 And flung its eighty cubits out before her.  
 She fetched his helm and breastplate, and exclaimed:—  
 "O warrior-lion!" drew his sword and docked  
 His charger's mane and tail. She gave the poor  
 His goods—the silver, gold, and harnessed steeds.  
 She locked the palace, rooted up the throne,  
 Then brought it down and dashed it to the ground.  
 She blacked the chambers' doors, sent up the dust  
 From porch and palace, gave to desolation  
 The banquet-hall that he had left for battle,  
 Assumed the weeds of woe all stained with blood,  
 By day and night lamented him with tears,  
 Died broken-hearted in a year, and joined  
 Her warrior-son.

V. 520

Said eloquent Bahrám:—

"Dote not upon the dead; thy proper care  
 Is for thine own departure to prepare,  
 Since here thou canst not stay. So dally not.

Thy father once gave up his place to thee,  
And thou must give up thine. Such is our lot,  
And 'tis a secret still, a mystery,

Nor wilt thou with thy dazed mind find a key.  
To open that closed door may no man know.  
Endeavour not therefor, else wilt thou throw  
Life to the winds. Our summons to depart  
Is from the God and Master of us all ;  
Then on this Wayside Inn set not thy heart ;  
The profit of such sojourn is but small."

Now from this history my face I turn :  
The tale of Siyáwush is my concern.

## PART IV

### THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH

#### ARGUMENT

The poet, inspired by his theme and conscious of his genius, retells an ancient tale thus :—

Gív and Tús, while hunting, find and quarrel about a damsel. The matter is referred to the Sháh, who marries her himself. From this union springs Siyáwush, who is brought up by Rustam and afterward returns to his father's court, where Súdába, one of his father's wives, tempts him in vain and then accuses him falsely. He clears himself by ordeal and saves his accuser's own life, which had been adjudged forfeit for her wickedness. In time she is restored to favour, and Siyáwush, to escape her wiles, leads an army against Afrásiyáb, who, terrified by a dream, sues for peace. The terms granted by Siyáwush are rejected by the Sháh, and Siyáwush, his honour touched, goes over to Afrásiyáb, by whom he is well received and whose daughter Farangís he marries, having previously married Jaríra, the daughter of Pírán. He attains to great dignities, but incurs the envy of the king's brother, Garsíwaz, by whom he is done to death. His wife Farangís is protected by Pírán and gives birth to Kai Khusrau, with whose childhood the story ends.

#### NOTE

Firdausí, as we may gather from his prelude, thought highly of his version of this tragic story, which, unlike that of Suhráb, is not a pure episode, but leads directly, though by a long road, to the chief epic climax. It also affords a good example of the poet's treatment of his subject-matter. Various legends are combined with curious results. For instance, the legend of the birth of Siyáwush from a grand-daughter of Garsíwaz is not allowed to militate against or to modify other legends in which ancestor and descendant meet on equal terms, in the full vigour of manhood, as

strangers ignorant of their blood-relationship, as enemies, as villain and victim. Such instances are the surest guarantee that the poet is drawing on epic sources and not on his own imagination. The story further shows how needful it is for a reader of the *Sháhnáma* mentally to supply for himself the element of time. The account of Súdába's infatuation for Siyáwush<sup>1</sup> reads as if it were a matter of a few days, weeks, or months at most. It is only from a chance remark of hers that we learn that the affair had been going on for seven years!

The temptation of Siyáwush by Súdába, on which so much turns, will suggest many a parallel to the reader.

It should be mentioned, however, that Súdába's pretext for inviting Siyáwush to visit her—the suggested marriage of one of her daughters to him—was a legitimate one to a Zoroastrian.

Súdába's daughter would be Siyáwush's half-sister, and next-of-kin marriages, as they were called, were not only permitted but regarded as a sacred duty by the Magi.<sup>2</sup> Súdába, with the wit of a woman much in love, hit upon a perfectly legitimate motive, and Kai Káús accepted it, as we see, without the least suspicion.

Siyáwush appears as Syávarshána in the *Zandavasta*, where he is several times mentioned in connection with his murder by Garsíwaz and Afrásiyáb, and the vengeance exacted for it by Kai Khusrau, who, we are told, "prevailed over all; he put in bonds Frangrasyan and Keresavasda, to avenge the murder of his father Syávarshána."<sup>3</sup> Here, as in other cases, the leading motives of the *Sháhnáma* originate in the *Zandavasta*.

§ 49. The poet in his description of Gang-dizh perhaps had in his mind the famous stronghold of Kalát-i-Nádirí, which lies about thirty miles to the north of Mashad and not far from the poet's own birthplace, but he follows his authorities, which look at matters from a point of view west of the Caspian, and describes Gang-dizh as being beyond the sea accordingly. Tradition seems to place it in Khárazm. In the *Zandavasta* we read of "the castle Khshathró-saoka, that stands high up on the lofty, holy Kangha."<sup>4</sup> In the *Díná-i Maínóg-i Khirad*, a Pahlaví treatise, Siyáwush is described as the founder of Kangdez, and Kangdez itself is described as lying to the east, on the frontier of Aírán-végó.<sup>5</sup> In the *Bundahish* it is described as being in the direction of the east, "at many leagues from the bed of the wide-formed ocean towards that side."<sup>6</sup> Now the learned Abú Raihán Muhammad, more commonly known in the west as Albírúní, was a native of Khárazm and wrote a

<sup>1</sup> § 6 *seq.*

<sup>2</sup> DZA, ii. 304. See also pp. 65, 114, 115.

<sup>3</sup> WPT, iii. 64, 109.

<sup>4</sup> WPT, ii. 389.

<sup>5</sup> DZA, ii. 67.

<sup>6</sup> WPT, i. 119

history of that country. His account is nearly all lost, but in another work of his he tells us that the Khárazmians dated the colonisation of their country from the year 980 before Alexander, *i.e.* from the fourteenth century B.C., and that ninety-two years later the incursion of Siyáwush took place. From this time onward they were governed by monarchs of his race down to the days of king Áfrigh—a man of evil reputation—who built himself a fortress on the outskirts of the city of Khárazm, or made additions to an existing fortress, called Alfír, in the year 616 of the era of Alexander, *i.e.* toward the end of the third century A.D. This Alfír, Albírúní tells us, was built of clay and tiles, and consisted of three forts, one inside another, and all of equal height. Rising above the whole were the royal palaces. Alfír could be seen at a distance of ten miles or more. It was broken and shattered by the Oxus, and was swept away piece by piece every year, till the last remains of it had disappeared by the year 1305 of the era of Alexander, *i.e.* toward the end of the tenth century A.D.<sup>1</sup> It is evident from this account that Alfír was in process of construction or enlargement in the very century in which the Zandavasta was being compiled. The Khárazmians had racial affinities with the Íránians, and the epithet “holy” applied to Kangha in the Zandavasta evidently points to the fact that they were Zoroastrians as well. It may be therefore that the Khshathró-saoka of the Zandavasta, the Kangdez of the Pahlaví texts, the Alfír of Albírúní, and the Gang-dizh of the Sháhnáma all represent one and the same place—the palace-fortress of the ancient capital of Khárazm. Khárazm is, of course, the modern Khiva, and Gang-dizh means the fortress (dizh) of the land of Kangha.

§ 58 *seq.* In the account of the birth and youth of Kai Khusráw we have in essentials the same story as that told by Herodotus<sup>2</sup> some fifteen centuries earlier. Astyages, the king of the Medes, had a daughter Mandane. He had a dream about her which he told to Magi who were learned in such matters. Their interpretation of it alarmed him, and as the safest course in the circumstances he married his daughter to an unambitious Persian of good family named Cambyses. Soon after Astyages had another dream about Mandane. He again consulted the dream-interpreters, who told him that his daughter's son would supersede him on the throne. In consequence of this prognostic he sent for Mandane, who was dwelling among the Persians, and had her closely guarded. When her son Cyrus was born, Astyages summoned Harpagus, a member of the royal house and a most loyal liege, and ordered him to take

<sup>1</sup> SAC, p. 40.

<sup>2</sup> i. 107 *seq.*

the child from Mandane, to kill it, and to bury it. Harpagus, in great distress, carried off the child, who was ready clad in funeral weeds, to his own home, but told his wife that nothing should induce him to make away with the infant himself, for they were akin to each other. Accordingly he sent for one of the herdsmen of Astyages, whose herds were pastured on the mountains north of Ekbatana, in the direction of the Euxine—a tract frequented by wild beasts—and bade him expose the child on some desolate spot that it might soon perish. Now, it so happened that the herdsman's wife had lately had a still-born babe, and when she saw Cyrus she persuaded her husband to expose the dead and allow her to keep the living child. The son of Mandane thus grew up in the house of the herdsman, and his royal birth soon began to assert itself. His playmates chose him for their king, and he used to hold mock court among them. At length an incident brought the matter to the ears of Astyages, who questioned the herdsman and was exceedingly wroth with Harpagus. The interpreters of dreams, however, declared that no further danger was to be apprehended from Cyrus, as the dream had been sufficiently fulfilled by his election to kingship by his playfellows. Accordingly Astyages sent him back to Persia to his parents Cambyzes and Mandane. Subsequently Cyrus, incited by Harpagus, rebelled and overthrew Astyages.

In the *Sháhnáma* we have Afrásiyáb for Astyages, Farangís for Mandane, Siyáwush for Cambyzes, Khusrau for Cyrus, and Pírán for Harpagus, while, if the view be correct that the so-called empire of the Medes was in reality the empire of the Manda,<sup>1</sup> one important discrepancy between the Greek and Persian accounts is removed, for Astyages, Mandane, and Harpagus become Túránian instead of Median, and are thus brought into line with Afrásiyáb, Farangís, and Pírán, their representatives in the *Sháhnáma*.

## § 1

### *The Prelude*

Now, O thou man of wit and eloquence!

V. 523

Upon a goodly tale thy skill employ,

For if the words are equal to the sense

The poet's soul will be a source of joy;

But he whose thoughts lack loveliness will thwart

<sup>1</sup> Vol. i. p. 17.



His purpose by his own unlovely thought ;  
 Moreover he will make himself a cross,  
 And have the disapproval of the wise ;

Yet, in that every one is at a loss

To see his faults (thy genius to thine eyes  
 Is bright) thy work if 'tis to last, confide,  
 When polished, to the learned to decide  
 Its value ; if approved 'twill make its way

And be as water in thine own canal.

I take from legends of a former day

A rustic minstrel's story, and I shall,  
 Although the tale be old, when I have done,  
 Make it a tale in vogue with every one.

If length of days shall be vouchsafed to me,

And with long life immunity from ill,  
 I shall have left behind a fruitful tree,

To go on bearing in the orchard still.

Full many a marvel hath o'erpassed his head  
 Whose years reach fifty-eight, yet minished

Greed is not ever as they onward glide ;

I still by rule and omen choose my day.

V. 524      What said herein the archimage, our guide ?

"He that is waxen old is old for aye."

Tell on thy tale, be wise and of good cheer,  
 So long as life endureth persevere.

When thou departest what was here thine own

Shall in God's hand for good or evil be ;

Remember ! thou shalt reap as thou hast sown

And as thou speakest men will speak of thee.

The gentle speaker heareth in return

Soft words : make speaking gently thy concern.

Now for the rustic minstrel's tale. Heed well

The matter that the poet hath to tell.

## § 2

*The Story of the Mother of Siyáwush*

Thus said an archimage : One morning Tús  
 In merry pin left the Sháh's gate at cockcrow,  
 With Gív, Gúdarz, and other cavaliers,  
 To hunt upon the desert of Daghwí  
 With hawk and cheetah. By a river's bank  
 They stalked or ran down game, and caught or shot  
 Enough to last them forty days. Near by  
 A Turkman's camp showed black, and thence a forest  
 Stretched almost to the marches of Túrán.  
 Gív led the way with Tús : behind them came  
 Some brave retainers. Entering the wood,  
 And roaming thus awhile in quest of quarry,  
 They saw among the trees a fair-cheeked maiden,  
 And hurried toward her in high glee. The age  
 Had not her peer in looks ; hers were not charms  
 To need apologies. In stature she  
 Was cypress-tall, in looks a moon, to gaze  
 On her was perilous. Tús said to her :—

V. 525

“ Bewitching Moon ! who showed thee to this wood ? ”

“ My father set on me last night,” she said,  
 “ And so I fled from home. He had returned  
 Drunk from a marriage-feast and, in his frenzy  
 Perceiving me far off, drew forth his sword  
 Of watered steel and had beheaded me.  
 I fled for refuge, and have just come hither.”

The paladin then asked her of her kindred.  
 She told him fully and to this effect :—

“ I am akin to Garsíwaz, and trace  
 My lineage to Sháh Farídún.”

He asked her :—

“ Why camest thou afoot, for thou hast come  
 Unmounted and unguided ? ”

She replied :—

“ My steed was wearied out and fell exhausted.  
I had uncounted gold, gold crown, and jewels,  
But over yonder hill some people robbed me  
And beat me with a scabbard. I escaped  
In terror and am weeping tears of blood.  
My sire no doubt when sober will dispatch  
Some horsemen after me forthwith, my mother  
Will haste to me, she would not have me quit  
These fields and fells.”

Now both the paladins  
Grew hot of heart for love of her, and Tús,  
Lost to all shame, exclaimed : “ ’Twas I who spied her,  
And therefore made such haste.”

But Gív replied :—

“ O captain of the host ! without thy host  
Thou art no match for me.”

Still Tús insisted :—

“ She came exactly in my horse’s way.”

Gív said : “ Nay ! Say not so ; I led the chase.

V. 526

Tell not a falsehood for a slave-girl’s sake :  
A man of courage is not quarrelsome.”

Their wrangle was so violent that the Moon  
Was like to lose her head in the dispute,  
Until a noble interposed and said :—  
“ Convey her to the monarch of Írán,  
And bide by his decision.”

Both agreed

And went to Kai Káús, who when he saw  
The damsel’s beauty, fell in love with her  
Himself, and said to those two generals :—  
“ Your journey’s travail was cut short for you !  
Be she a doe or beautiful gazelle  
A quarry such as this is for your lord.  
Come let us pass the day in telling how  
These warriors with their cheetahs caught a Sun !”

He questioned her: "What is thy lineage,  
For thou art fairy-like in countenance?"

"I am of high birth on my mother's side,"  
She said, "my father sprang from Farídún.  
My father's father is prince Garsíwaz,  
Whose tents now occupy yon border land."

Káús said: "Didst thou mean to fling away  
Such looks as these, such beauty and such birth?  
'Tis meet I place thee in my golden bower:  
Thou must be chief of all the Moon-faced there."

She answered: "I preferred thee at first sight  
Among the great."

The Sháh then gave each general  
Ten noble chargers with a throne and crown,  
But sent the Idol to the women's bower,  
And gave command to set her on the throne.  
Then under her they placed an ivory seat,  
Upon her head a crown of gold and turquoise,  
Adorning her with yellow-hued brocade,  
With jewels, turquoise, lapis lazuli,  
And other presents worthy hers to be:  
A ruby yet untouched by man was she.

V. 527

## § 3

*The Birth of Sijáucush*

When nine months had elapsed, and jocund spring  
Resumed its tints, men said to Kai Káús:—  
"Thou hast had fruit of that auspicious Moon:  
A glorious infant hath appeared, and now  
Thou well mayst set thy throne above the clouds.  
A babe of fairy-form is born to her,  
In visage like an idol of Ázar,<sup>1</sup>  
With face and hair unheard of heretofore,  
And all the folk are talking of the child."

<sup>1</sup> Ázarbáiján.

V. 528

The world-lord named him Siyáwush, and gave  
 The rolling heaven praise because of him ;  
 Yet they that read the purpose of the sky,  
 Its good and evil and its when and how,  
 Saw that the stars were hostile to the boy,  
 And grieved because they saw his fortune sleeping.  
 They turned to God for refuge, warned the Sháh  
 About the fortune of his son, and showed  
 The path to take, aware that he would suffer  
 From good and bad. Anon came peerless Rustam  
 Before the Sháh and said : " Minc be the task  
 To rear this child that is so lion-like ;  
 Since thy retainers are not competent  
 There is no nurse on earth for him like me."

The monarch, having pondered much thereon,  
 Entrusted little loath his heart and eyes—  
 This atheling, the child so loved by him—  
 To Rustam's charge, who bore him to Zábúl  
 And lodged him in a rosary, instructed  
 The youth in riding, archery, the use  
 Of lasso, stirrups, reins, and other gear,  
 To hold his court, his feasts, and drinking-bouts,  
 To follow game with falcon, hawk, and cheetah,  
 To judge in causes, and to rule the kingdom,  
 Make speeches, combat, and lead forth a host :  
 All these accomplishments did Rustam teach him,  
 And took abundant pains which bore their fruit,  
 For Siyáwush became a peerless prince,  
 And, as time passed, grew tall and captured lions.  
 One day he spake to noble Rustam thus :—  
 " Desire to see the Sháh hath come on me.  
 Much travail and heart-burning hast thou borne  
 To teach me all a king's accomplishments :  
 My father must examine the result  
 Of elephantine Rustam's tutelage."

The lion-hearted hero made all ready,

And sent posts everywhere. Of horses, slaves,  
 Gold, silver, signets, falchions, crowns, and girdles,  
 And various stuffs and linings, he produced  
 Whate'er he could himself or got elsewhere.  
 On this wise Rustam furnished forth the youth,  
 For all men's eyes were fixed on Siyáwush,  
 And also journeyed with him lest the Sháh  
 Might be offended. As their custom was  
 The folk put decorations everywhere  
 In their desire to please the paladin,  
 The townsmen mingled gold and ambergris,  
 And showered them on the travellers' heads for joy,  
 The world grew full of mirth and precious havings,  
 Each mansion's door and roof were decked, the feet  
 Of Rustam's Arab steeds trod drachms. Men saw  
 None mournful in Írán; throughout the line  
 Of march steeds' manes dripped saffron, musk, and wine.

V. 529

## § 4

*How Siyáwush arrived from Zábulistán*

When news reached Sháh Káús that "Siyáwush"  
 Is coming in great state," both Gív and Tús  
 Went forth right joyously at his command  
 With escort, trump, and drum. The chiefs assembled,  
 With Rustam on this hand and Tús on that,  
 To come in triumph to the Sháh, for they  
 Came with that fruiting Sapling. When he reached  
 The palace of the Sháh a shout was raised,  
 And access given. Slaves with censers charged  
 With goodly perfumes gazed upon the prince  
 With folded arms. Three hundred filled the court  
 To every corner, and the noble Cypress  
 Was in the midst. They showered gold and gems,  
 And called down blessings on him. Siyáwush,

V. 530

When he beheld Káuś upon his throne  
 Of ivory and crowned with brilliant rubies,  
 First offered praise, did reverence, and whispered  
 To earth awhile. He then approached the Sháh,  
 Who clasped him closely. Kai Káuś saluted  
 And welcomed Rustam warmly, seated him  
 Upon the turquoise throne and, lost in wonder,  
 Called many blessings down upon his son,  
 For in that height, that stature, and that Grace  
 The Sháh foresaw a future and much fame.  
 Thou wouldst have said of one so young yet wise :—  
 “His soul is fed on wisdom.” So the Sháh,  
 With face upon the ground, gave many praises  
 To God and said : “Great Ruler of the sky,  
 The Lord of understanding and of love!  
 All good things come from Thee, but most of all  
 I thank Thee for my child.”

The Íránian chiefs,

Each with his gift, came to the Sháh rejoicing ;  
 They marvelled at the Grace of Siyáwush,  
 And called a wealth of blessings down on him.  
 Then by the Sháh's command the noblemen  
 And captains of the host attended court,  
 While all the world resorted to his gardens,  
 His palace, and his hall, with right good cheer.  
 Men called for wine and harp and minstrelsy.  
 The Sháh's festivities were such as none  
 Had held before. A sennight passed in joy.  
 Upon the eighth day he unlocked his treasures,  
 And gave command to bring all manner forth,  
 As swords and signet-rings, with thrones and casques,  
 And Arab steeds with poplar-wooden saddles,  
 Bards, coats of mail for war, dinárs, and purses  
 Of drachms, brocade, and jewels great and small,  
 Except the crown, it was not time for that,  
 But all the rest Káuś gave Siyáwush

With many promises of good to come.  
 Seven years' probation proved his noble birth  
 By all his acts, the eighth the monarch bade him  
 Assume a golden crown and torque and girdle,  
 And had a patent writ on painted silk  
 As royal Grace and precedent required.  
 Since Siyáwush was worthy of a throne,  
 And majesty, the Sháh bestowed on him  
 All Kuhistán, so called of yore, the same  
 As Má wara 'u'n-Nahr its modern name.

V. 531

## § 5

*The Death of the Mother of Siyáwush*

When all was ordered as the Sháh had bidden  
 The prince's mother passed away. The prince  
 Came from his throne like one possessed, and raised  
 His lamentation to the rolling sky.  
 He rent his clothes, threw dust upon his head,  
 Mourned o'er her sorely, grievously afflicting  
 His own sweet soul, mourned greatly night and day,  
 For many days ne'er smiled, grieved one whole moon,  
 And sought no respite from his misery.  
 Now when the nobles heard thereof—such men  
 As Tús and Faríburz, Gúdarz and Gív,  
 Born princes or heroic paladins—  
 They made all haste to come to Siyáwush,  
 Who as he looked on them groaned grievously;  
 His tears burst forth afresh, and he unlocked  
 The portal of the anguish of his heart.  
 Gúdarz, when he beheld the prince's sorrow,  
 Gazed on that noble Cypress overwrought,  
 And weeping said to him: "O royal prince!  
 Hear mine advice and think no more of grief.  
 The child of every mother will depart;



Not one of them can 'scape the clutch of fate.  
 Although thy mother is a memory now,  
 Mourn not: her spirit is in heaven."

V. 532

By dint

Of many a counsel, many a soothing strain,  
 He made the prince's heart itself again.

## § 6

*How Súdába fell in Love with Siyáwush*

Time passed, the Sháh still joyed in Siyáwush,  
 Till as they sat one day Súdába entered,  
 Beheld the prince's face, and grew distraught.  
 Her heart throbbed, "she is wasted to a thread,"  
 Thou wouldst have said, "or ice before the fire."  
 She bade one go by stealth to him and say:—  
 "'Twould cause no wonder if thou shouldst visit  
 The royal bower anon."

The envoy went,  
 But noble Siyáwush was wroth and said:—  
 "Entice me not. I am no chamberer,  
 Or given to romances and intrigues."

Another day at dawn Súdába sought  
 The Sháh and said: "O ruler of the host!  
 The sun and moon have never seen thy peer,  
 Or any like thy son. Let all the world  
 Rejoice in him; so send him to thy bower  
 To see his sisters and thy favourites.  
 Tell him: 'Go visit oft thy sisters there,  
 Whose hearts are full, whose cheeks are wet, with  
 yearning.'

Then will we pay him worship, give him gifts,  
 And bring the tree of service into fruit."

The Sháh replied: "Thou sayest right; thou hast  
 A hundred mothers' love for him."

He called

For Siyáwush and said: "The blood within  
Our veins, and love, will show themselves; moreover  
God hath so made thee that thou art beloved  
Of all beholders, given thee pure birth;  
None e'er was mother-born as pure as thou;  
But what availeth blood-relationship  
To those who see thee only from afar?  
Thy sisters and Súdába, in affection  
A mother to thee, are within the bower.  
Go now and visit those secluded ones,  
And stay awhile that they may do thee honour."

V. 533

The prince beheld his father with amazement,  
Then mused awhile and strove to clear himself,  
Suspecting that his father sought to prove him;  
For Kai Káús was knowing and smooth-tongued,  
Wise, shrewd of heart, and ready to distrust.  
The prince was troubled, communed with himself,  
And in the end determined.

"If," he thought,

"I go Súdába will talk much with me,"  
Then said: "The Sháh hath given me a patent,  
A throne, and crown. From where the lofty sun  
Arising maketh dust a thing of price  
No king resembling thee in goodness, knowledge,  
Demeanour, and pursuits, e'er donned the crown.  
Point me the way to sages, men of leading,  
And chiefs approved; or show me how to handle  
Spear, mace, or bow and arrow, midst the foe;  
Or be it king-craft and court-usages,  
Or feast and harp, or wine and revellers;  
But in the women's quarters of the Sháh  
What shall I learn? Shall women point the way  
To knowledge? Yet if so the Sháh commandeth  
My eustom henceforth is to visit them."

The Sháh replied: "Be happy, O my son!

V. 534

May wisdom rest upon thee! I have heard  
 But seldom such fair words. Thy brain will grow  
 Since thou art thus amenable. Dismiss  
 All ill surmises from thy heart, away  
 With trouble, and enjoy thyself. Look in  
 Upon the children just for once: perchance  
 It will divert them somewhat."

"I will go,"

Said Siyáwush, "to-morrow and perform  
 The Sháh's command. Behold I stand before thee  
 Devoted, heart and soul, to do thy bidding.  
 As thou requirest so will I behave,  
 Thou art the world-lord; I am but a slave."

## § 7

### *How Siyáwush visited Súdába*

One named Hírbad, purged heart and brain and soul  
 From evil, never left the Idol-house,  
 And kept the key. The Sháh commanded him:—  
 "What time the sun shall draw the sword of day  
 Seek Siyáwush and further his commands.  
 Instruct Súdába to present to him  
 A gift of gems and musk, and let withal  
 His sisters and the slaves pour emeralds  
 And saffron over him."

When Sol o'ertopped  
 The mountains Siyáwush approached the Sháh  
 And did obeisance. When they had conversed  
 Awhile in private Kai Káuś instructed  
 Hírbad, then said to Siyáwush: "Go with him  
 And be prepared to look on something new."

The twain went off together merrily  
 Without a thought of care; but when Hírbad

Held up the veil that hung before the door  
 The mind of Siyáwush foreboded ill.  
 The women came before him one and all  
 In festival attire to gaze at him ;  
 The house was full of musk, dínárs, and saffron,  
 And at his feet they strewed drachms, gold, and gems :  
 The floor was covered with brocade of Chín  
 Enriched with lustrous pearls. Wine, scent, and voice  
 Of minstrels were there, all heads were crowned  
 With jewels ; 'twas like Paradise, replete  
 With lovely forms and sumptuous furniture.  
 Now Siyáwush on entering the bower  
 Beheld a brightly shining, golden throne,  
 With patterns wrought in turquoise, royally  
 Draped with brocade. There sat moon-faced Súdába,  
 Like Paradise itself in hue and perfume,  
 Sat like the bright Canopus of Yaman,  
 Her head adorned with ringlets, curl on curl.  
 Surmounted by a lofty crown her hair  
 Descended to her feet in musky lassos.  
 A slave stood humbly by with golden slippers.  
 When Siyáwush appeared within the veil  
 Súdába hastened to descend the throne,  
 Advanced with graceful gait, saluted him,  
 Embraced him long, long kissed his eyes and face,  
 And wearied not to look at him. She said :—  
 " I offer praise to God a hundred ways  
 All day and three whole watches of the night,  
 For no one hath a son resembling thee :  
 The Sháh himself hath not another such."

Now Siyáwush knew well what that love meant,  
 And that such fondness was not in the way  
 Of God, and, since it was unseemly there,  
 Went quickly to his sisters, who enthroned him  
 With many a blessing on a golden seat.  
 He stayed awhile, then went back to the Sháh.

The bower was full of talk: the women said:—  
 “Behold the head and crown of courtesy!  
 ‘He is not,’ thou hadst said, ‘like other men:  
 His soul diffuseth wisdom.’”

Siyáwush

Came to his father’s presence and spake thus:—

“I have beheld the veil and what it hid.  
 All good things in the world are thine, no need  
 For thee to vindicate the ways of God  
 Who dost in treasure, scimitars, and troops  
 Surpass Húshang, Jamshíd, and Farídún.”

The Sháh joyed at the words. He decked his palace  
 Like jocund spring, had wine and harp and things  
 Prepared, and banned the future from the heart.

That night he went among his dames and talked  
 Thus with Súdába: “Hide not what thou thinkest  
 About the judgment and the courtesy  
 Of Siyáwush, his stature, looks, and speech.  
 Dost thou approve of him and is he wise?  
 Deserveth he what others say of him?”

Súdába answered: “Sháh and people never  
 Saw thy like on the throne, and who is there  
 To match thy son? Why speak with bated breath?”

The Sháh said: “If he is to live till manhood  
 We must protect him from the evil eye.”<sup>1</sup>

She said: “If my words please, and if thy son  
 And I are minded that I should bestow  
 A wife upon him out of his own kindred,  
 Not from the great ones that are round about—  
 A consort who shall bear to him a son  
 Such as he is himself among the mighty—  
 Then I myself have daughters like to thee,  
 Begotten of thy seed, of thy pure stock;  
 Or should he take a child of Kai Árash,  
 Or Kai Pashín, she would give thanks with joy.”

<sup>1</sup> Open praise, especially of the young, was regarded as unlucky.

He said to her: "It is my wish. My name  
And greatness are dependent on the issue."

Next morning Siyáwush approached the Sháh,  
And called down blessings on the crown and throne.  
The monarch caused all strangers to depart  
And, speaking with his son in privacy,  
Said thus: "I have in me a secret longing,  
Inspired by God, the Maker of the world,  
That thou shouldst leave a memory of thy name,  
And that a king should issue from thy loins,  
That as my face refreshed at seeing thee,  
Thy heart should be enlarged at sight of him.  
I had thy horoscope to this effect  
From archimages that can read the stars,  
That from thy loins a king shall come and be  
Thy monument. Now choose thyself a wife  
Among the great from those within the veil  
Of Kai Pashín or bower of Kai Árash;  
Make all things ready and bestow thy hand."

He said: "I am the Sháh's slave and I bow  
My head before his counsel and behest.  
His choice for me is good, whoe'er she be;  
The world-lord is a monarch o'er his slaves.  
Would that Súdába heard it not! her words  
Are otherwise, she hath no mind thereto;  
I cannot talk to her of this affair,  
And have no business in that bower of hers."

The Sháh smiled at the words of Siyáwush,  
Not witting of the quag beneath the straw,  
And said to him: "Thy wife must be thy choice.  
Súdába least of all need be considered,  
Her words are full of loving-kindliness;  
She tendereth thy welfare."

Siyáwush

Was gladdened by the words, and reassured  
Began to speak the world-king's praise and pay

Him reverence, falling down before the throne,  
 Yet privily Súdába with her schemes  
 Still vexed and troubled him, for well he knew,  
 And his skin burst: "This is her notion too!"

## § 8

*How Siyáwush visited the Bower the second Time*

V. 538

Another night thus passed and starry heaven  
 Turned o'er dark earth. Súdába radiant  
 Sat on her throne and donned a diadem  
 Of rubies. Then she summoned all her daughters,  
 Arrayed, and seated them on golden thrones.  
 Before her stood young Idols: thou hadst said:—  
 "It is a paradise." The moon-faced lady  
 Said to Hírbad: "Go say to Siyáwush:—  
 'Afflict thy feet and show thyself to me.'"

Hírbad made speed to give that lover's message  
 To Siyáwush who, hearing, stood distraught,  
 And oft invoked the Maker of the world.  
 He sought in various ways but found no help;  
 He trembled, and his legs shook under him;  
 Then went to visit her and saw her state,  
 Her face, and diadem. She with her head  
 And tresses decked with gems rose at his coming,  
 Gave up the throne of gold to him and, standing  
 Slavelike, displayed her Idols—gems uncut.  
 "Behold this throne-room," thus she said, "and all  
 These handmaids with their golden coronets!  
 They all are youthful Idols of Taráz,  
 Whom God hath formed of modesty and charms.  
 If any one of them delighteth thee,  
 Survey her looks and form from head to foot."

While Siyáwush was glancing lightly round  
 There was not one who dared to catch his eye,

And as they talked they said: "The moon itself  
Would not presume to gaze upon this prince."

When each, in speculation on her chance,  
Had gone back to her seat, Súdába said:—  
"Why dost thou keep thy purpose to thyself?  
Wilt thou not tell me what is thy desire,  
O thou whose looks are fairy-like with Grace!  
For all are struck who catch a glimpse of thee,  
Preferring thee to any? Ponder well  
Which of these beauties is the worthiest."

V. 539

But Siyáwush was moved and answered not,  
For thoughts like these arose in his pure heart:—  
"Far better hold my pure heart's funeral rites  
Than take a consort from among my foes.  
I have been told by famous warriors  
Of all the doings of Hámávarán,<sup>1</sup>  
How he entreated the Íránian king,  
And how he raised dust from the Íránian chiefs.  
This treacherous Súdába is his daughter,  
And will not leave our kindred skin or marrow."

He opened not his lips to make reply.  
The fairy-faced one raised her veil and said:—  
"If one should see the new moon and the sun  
Here upon this new throne, it would not be  
A marvel if the moon should be despised,  
And thou shouldst press the sun in thine embrace.  
No wonder if the man that seeth me  
Upon the ivory throne, with rubies crowned  
And turquoise, should not look upon the moon,  
But think all other Beauties beautiless.  
If thou wilt make a compact with me now,  
Turn not away but set my heart at rest,  
One of my youthful daughters present here  
Will I make stand before thee like a slave.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. the king of Hámávarán—so *King John*, Act I. Sc. i.: "Now say, Chatillon, what would France with us?"



So make a compact with me now by oath,  
 And disregard no jot of what I say,  
 That, when the Sháh departeth from the world,  
 Thou wilt be his memorial with me,  
 Wilt never suffer me to come to harm,  
 But hold me dear as life. And now behold !  
 I stand before thee and I give to thee  
 Myself and my sweet life. I will fulfil  
 Whate'er thou asketh me—thy whole desire—  
 And let my head be taken in thy toils."

V. 540

She hung upon his neck, gave him a kiss,  
 And of a truth forgot her modesty.  
 He blushed ; the very lashes of his eyes  
 Were red with shame. He thought : " From this dív's  
 work

Now may the Lord of Saturn keep me far !  
 I will not treat my sire disloyally,  
 Nor will I make a league with Áhriman.  
 If I speak coldly to this wanton dame  
 Her heart will seethe ; she will grow hot with rage,  
 Make practice of some secret sorcery,  
 And cause the world-lord to believe in her.  
 'Tis best to speak her fair and keep her full  
 Of tenderness and longing."

Then he said :—

" Thou hast not any equal in the world,  
 And art the rival of the moon itself  
 In beauty : thou art for the Sháh alone.  
 As for myself thy daughter will suffice ;  
 None other must be mine. Consent to this,  
 Propose it to the monarch of Írán,  
 And mark the answer that thou wilt receive.  
 I will demand her and will covenant,  
 And give a pledge before thee with my tongue,  
 That till her stature equalleth mine own  
 I will not think of any one besides.

For what thou askest further—since my face  
 Inspireth in thy soul a love for me—  
 God's Grace hath made me thus, O thou most fair!  
 Conceal thy secret; speak of it to none:  
 For me too silence is the only course.  
 Thou art the chief of ladies and a queen,  
 And I will think of thee as mother only."

He spake these words and rose to go, but love  
 Still filled her wicked soul. When next Káús,  
 The monarch, visited the women's bower,  
 Súdába looked and saw him. She appeared  
 Before the Sháh with news of what had passed,  
 And spake thus of the case of Siyáwush:—  
 "He came and looked all round the hall. I made  
 A bevy of the black-eyed Idols there.  
 The hall was such with all the fair-faced girls  
 That thou hadst said: 'Love raineth from the  
 moon!'

But, save my daughter, he approved of none:  
 No other fair was precious in his eyes."

The Sháh was so rejoiced that thou hadst said:—

"The moon itself hath come to his embrace!"

He oped his treasury's door: a wealth of gems,  
 Brocade of cloth of gold, and golden girdles,  
 As well as bracelets, crowns, and signet-rings,  
 With thrones and torques such as the noble wear,  
 And divers kinds of treasures were displayed,  
 So that the world was filled with things of price.  
 The Sháh then bade Súdába: "Keep all these  
 For Siyáwush. When he hath need of them,  
 Give them to him and say: 'This gift is small;  
 Thou shouldest have two hundred times as much.'"

Súdába looked in wonder. Full of guile  
 She thought: "If Siyáwush complieth not,  
 Then he may take my life and welcome too.  
 Each practice good and evil, which they use

By stealth or openly throughout the world,  
Will I employ; and, should he slight me, bring  
A charge accusing him before the king."

## § 9

*How Siyáwush visited the Bower the third Time*

Súdába sat enthroned, adorned with earrings  
And chaplet of wrought gold upon her head.  
She called the prince and said, as they conversed :—  
"The Sháh hath set these treasures forth, and none  
Hath seen such crowns and thrones. The sum of  
gifts

V. 542

Is past all reckoning: to carry them  
Thou wouldst require two hundred elephants,  
And I will give to thee my daughter too.  
Now look upon my face and head and crown:  
What pretext hast thou to reject my love,  
And slight my face and person? I am dead  
Not seeing thee; I cry out, toss, and suffer:  
The light of day is hidden by mine anguish,  
My sun is turned to lapis-lazuli.  
And now for seven years this love of mine  
Hath made my face to run with tears of blood.  
Make me a happy woman—none shall know—  
Vouchsafe to me a day of youth again.  
More than the great king hath bestowed on thee  
Will I prepare thee—thrones, crowns, diadems;  
But if thou turn aside from my behest,  
And if thy heart come not to my relief,  
I will destroy thy hope of ever reigning  
And make both sun and moon turn black before  
thee."

"Now God forbid," he said, "that I should give  
Religion to the winds for passion's sake,

That I should treat my sire disloyally,  
 And be a coward and a fool at once !  
 Thou art his wife—the sunlight of his throne—  
 And shouldst not perpetrate a crime like this.”

She rose in wrath and hate, clutched him and  
 cried :—

“I told thee my heart’s secret, but thine own  
 Was hidden ! In thy folly thou dost aim  
 To ruin me and show the wise my shame.”

### § 10

#### *How Súdába beguiled Káús*

She rent her robes and tore her cheeks. A cry  
 Rose from her bower, her clamour reached the street.  
 The palace was all hubbub ; thou hadst said :—

V 543

“’Tis Resurrection-night !” News reached the Sháh,  
 Who hurried from the imperial golden throne  
 Toward the bower in his solicitude,

And when he found Súdába with rent cheeks,  
 And all the palace full of babblement,  
 He questioned every one in deep concern,  
 Not knowing what that Heart of stone had done.

Súdába wailed and wept before him, tore  
 Her hair, and told him : “Siyáwush approached  
 My throne. He caught me in his arms and cried :—

‘My soul and body brim with love for thee.

Oh ! why art thou so cold to me, my fair !

For thou art all I long for, thou alone ?’

This is the truth—I am constrained to tell thee :—

’Twas he that threw the crown from my black locks,  
 And rent the robe upon my bosom thus !”

The Sháh was troubled, asked her many questions,  
 And thought : “If she saith sooth, and if she hath

No evil end in view, I must cut off  
 The head of Siyáwush : that will unlock  
 These bonds of villainy."

What saith the sage ?

"Not lust but blood our thoughts must now engage."

The inmates of the bower, those well advised  
 And noble servants faithful to their lord,  
 He bade withdraw and, sitting on the throne  
 Alone, called for Súdába and his son,  
 And wisely said to him : "I needs must know  
 This secret. 'Twas not thou but I that wrought  
 The ill. I suffer for my thoughtless words :  
 Why did I call thee to the women's house ?  
 Now I am grieved that thou art thus involved.  
 Let me have all the truth, show me its face,  
 And say what passed."

v. 544

The prince related all,  
 And how he had been wrought on by Súdába.  
 She cried : "It is a lie. Of all the Idols  
 It was my person only that he sought ;  
 I told him what the king of earth proposed  
 To give him publicly and privily,  
 Told him about my daughter and the crown,  
 The precious things, brocade, and treasure-hoards.  
 I told him : 'I will add as much again,  
 And give my daughter all that I possess.'  
 He said to me : 'I do not want the goods,  
 And do not mean to see thy child. Of all  
 The world,' he said, 'I need but thee—no more.  
 No wealth or personage availeth aught  
 Without thine own self.' Then he tried to force me,  
 And handled me with hands as hard as stones.  
 I would not grant his wishes. All my hair  
 He tore and caused these scratches on my face.  
 I am with child, O monarch of the world !  
 By thee, but he was near to killing it

With all his struggles, and the world was strait  
And dark before me."

Then the great king thought:—  
The testimony of them both is worthless,  
And this is not a case for instance,  
Because a heart in straits perverteth wisdom.  
I needs must first investigate the matter,  
And when my heart is calm it will bear witness;  
I shall discover which is in the wrong,  
And which of them deserveth punishment."

He sought all means of finding out the truth,  
And first he smelt the hands of Siyáwush,  
His breast, his arms, his head, and all his person.  
A scent of wine, rose-water, and fine musk  
Was on Súdába, but on Siyáwush  
Was none, nor any sign that he had touched her.  
The Sháh was troubled, he disgraced Súdába,  
And sorely vexed said to himself: "No course  
Remaineth but to put her to the sword."

V. 545

Then he bethought him of Hámávarán,  
How tumult, strife, and battle would ensue;  
Next, how, when he was lying there in bonds  
And none of all his kin and friends was near,  
Súdába was his handmaid day and night,  
And faced the trouble uncomplainingly.  
His next thought was: "She loved me wholly once:  
I must forgive her everything," and then  
That he had children by her, and he counted  
The anguish of the children no light thing.  
But Siyáwush was blameless in the case,  
The monarch recognised his probity,  
And said to him: "Be not concerned hereat;  
Be prudent and consider well thy going.  
Talk not about this thing, tell it to none;  
The matter must be kept from every one."

## § 11

*How Súdába and a Sorceress devised a Scheme*

Súdába, conscious that she was disgraced  
 And that the Sháh's heart was estranged from her,  
 Sought in her evil case some remedy,  
 And set anew the tree of her revenge.  
 She had a woman in the bower, adept  
 In charms and spells, deceit and artifice,  
 And one moreover who was great with child,  
 Near to the time of her delivery.

Súdába told her all and sought her aid,  
 But said: "First give a pledge of thy good faith."

Súdába took her pledge, gave her much gold,  
 And said: "Make mention of this thing to none.  
 Prepare a drug that thou mayest make abortion,  
 Remain concealed, and keep my secret close.

It may be that my coil of many lies  
 May gain some credit through this babe of thine,  
 For I will tell Káuś: 'This is my child,  
 Thus murdered by the hand of Áhriman!'

V. 546

This, it may be, will baffle Siyáwush;  
 So seek a way to compass it. If thou  
 Refusest then my lustre with the Sháh  
 Is dimmed: I shall no more approach the throne."

The woman said to her: "I am thy slave,  
 And bow my head to thy command and will."

When it was night the woman took the drug  
 And gave birth to a brood of Áhrimans—  
 Two children as they had been dív-begotten:  
 What should a sorceress and a dív produce?  
 Then, saying nothing to her servitors,<sup>1</sup>  
 Súdába had a golden salver brought  
 Whereon she laid those brats of Áhriman,

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.

And shrieked and flung herself upon a couch.  
 She hid the woman and retired to bed :  
 Her wailing reached the palace from her chamber.  
 Then all the slaves within the palace came  
 In haste before Súdába, they beheld  
 Two infants lying dead upon the salver,  
 And cries rose o'er the palace and o'er Saturn.  
 The sound of wailing reached and woke Káús  
 Who listened trembling, asked, and heard how fortune  
 Had dealt with his fair spouse. Sleepless and anxious  
 He rose at dawn, went in and saw Súdába  
 Prostrate, the women frantic, and two babes  
 In evil plight, flung on a golden salver !  
 Súdába rained the water from her eyes,  
 And said : " Behold this bright sun—Siyáwush !  
 I often told thee of his evil deeds,  
 But thou didst foolishly believe his words."

The heart of Sháh Káús was filled with doubt,  
 He went his way, remained a while in thought,  
 Then said : " What remedy shall I apply ?  
 I must not treat the case with levity."

## § 12

### *How Káús inquired into the Matter of the Babes*

Káús then summoned all the astrologers  
 Before him, welcomed them, assigning each  
 A golden throne, and spake about Súdába,  
 And of the warfare with Hámávarán,  
 That they might have a knowledge of her case,  
 And understand her conduct thoroughly ;  
 He also spake at large about the children,  
 But kept his own suspicions to himself.  
 They then took planispheres and astrolabes,  
 And having spent a sennight on the business



Said: "How can wine be in a cup which thou  
 Hast filled with poison? These are spurious children,  
 Not from this mother and the monarch's loins:  
 We should have found them on the planisphere  
 With ease if they had been of royal race,  
 But know that heaven revealeth not their secret,  
 Nor is this wonder of the earth."

They told

The Sháh and court of that foul, wicked woman.  
 Súdába wailed and cried aloud for justice,  
 She called upon the world-lord for redress,  
 And said: "I was the comrade of the Sháh  
 When he had suffered and had lost the throne.  
 My heart is tortured for my murdered babes,  
 And ever and anon I swoon away."

V. 548

The Sháh replied: "O woman! hold thy peace!  
 Why dost thou utter such offensive words?"

He gave commandment that the troops on guard  
 Should search the city and the neighbouring parts,  
 And bring the wicked woman to the court.  
 The experienced searchers soon discovered her,  
 Haled the unhappy woman through the streets,  
 And carried her in shame before the Sháh,  
 Who questioned her with kindness, held out hopes,  
 And made her promises for many days,  
 Howbeit she confessed not anything.

The noble Sháh was still dissatisfied,  
 And gave command to bear her forth and use  
 All means and work by spells, and in the end  
 To cut her down the middle with a saw  
 If she persisted, as is common justice.  
 They bore her from the palace of the Sháh,  
 And threatened her with sword and stake and pit.  
 The sorceress answered: "I am innocent.  
 What can I say before this noble court?"

They told the monarch of the woman's words,

And added: "God alone doth know the truth."

The great king bade Súdába come to him;  
The readers of the stars re-said their say:—  
"Both babes are clearly children of the witch,  
Begotten from the loins of Áhriman."

Súdába said: "They know a different tale,  
But dare not speak for fear of Siyáwush,  
Who privily hath tied them down to silence.  
The lions quake in troops for fear of him,  
This chieftain of the elephantine form,  
Who hath the strength of eighty elephants,  
And stayeth at his will the river Nile!  
A noble host, a hundred thousand strong,  
Take flight before him in the ranks of war!  
How shall I stand against him? In good sooth  
Mine eyes will evermore weep tears of blood.  
What have the readers of the stars to do  
Save his command and seek his approbation?  
While as for thee—thou mournest not thy babes,  
Albeit they are thine as much as mine.  
If thou believest such a foolish charge  
I leave the question to the other world."

The sun withdraweth from the river Nile  
Less water than Súdába shed in tears.  
The Sháh was sorely troubled at her speech;  
He joined with her in weeping bitterly,  
And then, and with a broken heart, dismissed her.  
He brooded constantly upon the matter,  
And said: "I will investigate it thoroughly,  
And find out what the bottom of it is."

He summoned all the archmages of the realm,  
And spake about Súdába. One replied:—  
"The monarch's grief will not remain a secret.  
If thou wouldst clear up what hath been alleged  
On each side, throw a stone and break the pitcher,  
Because, however dear his son may be,

The Sháh's heart will be still disturbed by thoughts,  
 While this king's daughter of Hámávarán  
 Hath made thee doubtful on the other side.  
 Such being then the statements of the pair  
 Let one of them be made to pass through fire,  
 Because high heaven ordaineth that no harm  
 Shall in this way befall the innocent."

The world-lord called Súdába, seated her  
 With Siyáwush to parley on the case,  
 And said at last : " My heart and my shrewd mind  
 Trust neither of you ; fire will show the truth,  
 And quickly make the guilty infamous."

V. 550

Súdába answered : " What I said is true ;  
 I showed the Sháh two babes untimely born :  
 What greater outrage can there be than mine ?  
 'Tis Siyáwush that ought to right himself :  
 He sought to ruin me and did the wrong."

The king of earth then asked his youthful son :—  
 " What seemeth good to thee as touching this ? "

He answered : " Such a charge is worse than Hell !  
 I would pass o'er a mountain all aflame,  
 'Twere baseness not to rid me of this shame."

## § 13

*How Siyáwush passed through the Fire*

The thoughts of Kai Káuś ran on them both ;  
 He said : " If either prove a profligate  
 Will any henceforth call me Sháh ? Moreover  
 My son and wife are blood and brain to me ;  
 Whom then will this perplexing business profit ?  
 Still it is best to purify my heart  
 From foul surmise and take this dreadful course.  
 How well the moralizing monarch said :—

'If thou art faint of heart play not the king!'"<sup>1</sup>

He gave instructions to his minister  
To have a hundred caravans of camels  
Brought from the plain. These went to gather firewood,  
While all the people of Írán looked on,  
Till two huge mountains rose that might be seen  
Two leagues away; so should a key be found  
To loose the bonds of bale, so much he yearned  
To learn the truth amid this fraud and wrong.

V. 551

When thou hast heard the story thou wilt find  
Thyself disposed to shun all womankind;  
Seek none of them except the virtuous; she  
That worketh ill will bring disgrace on thee.

They piled two mounts of firewood on the plain  
While all the folk looked on. A path was left  
Such that a horseman armed might hardly pass  
Between the piles. This done, the glorious Sháh  
Bade pour black naphtha over all the wood.  
Came ten score men to light and blow the fire,  
And thou hadst said: 'The day is turned to night.'  
When first they blew there was a mass of smoke,  
But presently the tongues of fire rose fast;  
The earth became more radiant than the sky,  
The people shouted and the flames ascended.  
All that were on the plain were scorched and wept  
To see the cheery face of Siyáwush,  
Who came before his sire with golden helmet,  
And raiment all of white. His mien was tranquil,  
His face all smiles, his heart all hopefulness;  
His black steed's hoofs sent dust up to the moon.  
The prince then sprinkled camphor o'er himself,  
So bodies are prepared for burial,<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Faridún. See vol. i. p. 188.

<sup>2</sup> "Alp-Arselan determined not to survive defeat. He made a display of pious resignation to his fate, . . . by clothing himself in a white robe, or shroud, perfumed with musk."—MHP, i. 211.

And lighting from his charger did obeisance.  
 The Sháh was shame-faced and his words were kind.  
 "Be not discomfited," said Siyáwush,  
 "That fortune taketh such a turn as this.  
 I am dishonoured: such a state is ruin.  
 If I am innocent I shall escape,  
 While if in fault the Maker will not heed me;  
 But by the power of God who giveth good  
 I shall not feel the heat."

V. 552

As he drew near

The flames he prayed the Judge that hath no needs:—  
 "Grant me a passage through this mount of fire,  
 And free me from my sire's misprision."

Thus

He testified the anguish of his soul,  
 Then urged his black steed on like smoke. A wail  
 Ascended from the city and the waste,  
 For all the people grieved at what was done.  
 Súdába heard the wailing on the plain,  
 Went to the palace-roof, descried the blaze,  
 Wished ill to him, and babbled feverishly.  
 The people fixed their eyes upon Káús;  
 Their tongues wagged freely and their hearts were  
 wroth.

Meanwhile the prince so handled his black charger  
 That thou hadst said: "His steed took to the fire."  
 From every side the flames closed o'er his head,  
 And none could see his helmet or his horse,  
 While all the plain wept tears of blood and asked:—  
 "How will he ever issue from the flames?"

The noble hero nathless reappeared,  
 With rosy cheeks and smiles upon his lips.  
 A roar went up as men caught sight of him:  
 They cried: "The young Sháh cometh from the fire!"

He came with horse and raiment such that thou  
 Hadst said: "He beareth jasmine in his breast."

Had flame been water he had not been wetted,  
His garments would have holden none of it ;  
For when all-holy God doth so vouchsafe  
The breath of fire is even as the wind.  
The horsemen of the host urged on their steeds,  
While all the people on the plain threw drachms  
Before him ; there was universal joy  
Among the mighty and the mean alike  
As each to other gave the gladsome tidings :—  
“God hath shown mercy to the innocent.”

V. 553

Meanwhile Súdába in her frenzy plucked  
Her hair, wept bitterly, and tore her cheeks.  
When all unsmirched, unsinged, unstained, un-  
led,

The guiltless Siyáwush approached, his sire  
And all the warriors of the host alighted ;  
But Siyáwush with cheek upon the ground  
Gave thanks to God that he had been delivered  
Out of that burning mount, and had confounded  
His foes' device. Then said the Sháh: “Brave  
youth,

Of stainless lineage and ardent soul !  
None but a holy mother bringeth forth  
A son like thee, and such should rule the world.”

Then clasped he Siyáwush against his breast,  
Excused his own ill conduct, and in state  
Moved palace-ward. He took his seat rejoicing,  
And placed the royal crown upon his head.  
He had wine brought, the minstrels called, and  
granted

The prince whate'er he would. The Sháh prolonged  
Those revels for three days: till they were o'er  
No lock or key was at the treasury-door.

## § 14

*How Siyáwush begged Súdába's Life of his Father*

Káús the fourth day sat upon the throne  
Of kings ; an ox-head mace was in his hand.  
Fierce in his wrath he had Súdába summoned  
Before him, told her what had passed, and said :—  
"Thou art a shameless woman ! Thou hast wrought  
Enough of ill and grieved me to the heart.  
What part is this that thou hast played throughout  
In treacherously seeking my son's life,  
In causing him to be exposed to fire,  
And practising such witchcraft ? No excuses  
Will now avail thee ; go and get thee ready ;  
Thou art not fit to live. The punishment  
For such a crime as this is to be hanged."

V. 554

She said : "O Sháh ! forbear to heap up fire  
Upon my head. If I perforce must lose it  
In vengeance for the wrong which I have . . . suffered,  
Command . . . I am resigned. Yet put revenge  
Away. Let Siyáwush declare the truth,  
And quench the fires within thee. He hath used  
All Zál's own sorceries herein, and therefore  
The fierce flames harmed him not."

She said withal  
To Siyáwush : "Thou usest witchcraft still !  
Shall not thy back of impudence be bent ?"

The great Sháh asked the Íránians : "For the evil  
That she hath done by stealth, what shall I do ?  
How shall I punish her ?"

All did obeisance,  
And said : "The punishment for her is death :  
She ought to suffer for her evil deeds."

He bade the deathsman : "Hang her in the street

Upon the gibbet and be pitiless." <sup>1</sup>

At her abandonment the women wailed,  
And Sháh Káús was sorrowful of heart;  
He strove to hide it but his cheeks were pale.  
"Let not thy heart," said Siyáwush, "be troubled,  
But pardon for my sake Súdába's fault;  
She may be warned and walk advisedly."  
"For if," he thought, "she perish by his hand  
He will be sorry for it in the end,  
And see in me the author of his grief." <sup>2</sup>

The Sháh, who had been seeking some excuse  
For mercy, answered him: "I grant thee this  
Because I see that right was on thy side."

When Siyáwush had kissed his father's throne  
He rose upon his feet, went to the door,  
Brought back Súdába, and escorted her  
Home to the palace by the Sháh's command,  
Where all the women ran to her again,  
And did obeisance.

V. 555

Now in time the heart  
Of Sháh Káús so warmed to her that he  
Could not forbear to eye her face in love,  
While, for her part, by secret sorceries  
She worked on him to ruin Siyáwush  
According to the evil of her nature.  
The Sháh became mistrustful through her talk,  
But spake not aught thereof to any one.

When such events are happening men require  
Faith, knowledge, wisdom, and the sense of right,  
For in proportion as they keep in sight

The fear of God they reach their heart's desire.  
Expect not foolishly that thou shalt find

Balm in a place that fate hath filled with bane,  
And if Creation be not to thy mind,

<sup>1</sup> More literally, "and frown."

<sup>2</sup> "Let not . . . grief." The order of the couplets is as in C.



It is not in thy charge. Thy wrath restrain.  
 Besides the manner of the turning sky  
 Is not to show its visage openly.  
 Here saith our guide: "Of all affections none  
     Hath greater influence than kindred love,  
 And he who hath achieved a worthy son  
     Must from his own heart woman's love remove,  
 Because with her the heart and tongue ne'er meet:  
 Look for her head if thou wouldst find her feet."

## § 15

*How Káuś heard of the Coming of Afrásiyáb*

The Sháh was deep in love when news arrived:—  
 "Afrásiyáb hath come with five score thousand  
 Picked Turkman cavaliers."

V. 556

He grieved to quit  
 The banquet-hall for war, but called his lieges,  
 And said: "Of fire and water, earth and air,  
 In sooth God did not make Afrásiyáb,  
 But otherwise, who swore so great an oath,  
 And promised fairly with his tongue, yet now  
 Is gathering his men of war like dust,  
 And turning from his oath and covenant!  
 I must go seek revenge and dim his day,  
 Perchance destroy his influence in the world;  
 Else, sudden as the arrow from the bow,  
 He will array his host, o'ercome Írán,  
 And waste no little of its fields and fells."

"What is an army for," the archmages said,  
 "If thou must go in person to the fight?  
 What need to give such riches to the winds,  
 And ope the portal of so great a hoard?  
 Twice in thy haste thy throne's illustrious seat  
 Hast thou delivered to thine enemies;

Choose some good paladin renowned in war  
To take thy place and execute revenge."

The Sháh replied : " I see none here that hath  
The rank or might to meet Afrásiyáb,  
And therefore like a vessel o'er the water  
Must I set forth myself. Depart, that I  
May order matters with my counsellors."

Then Siyáwush considered in his heart,  
Made of his soul a very wood of thoughts,  
And said : " I will conduct this war myself ;  
I will entreat the Sháh and ask this boon.  
Perchance All-righteous God will set me free  
Both from Súdába and my sire's distrust :  
To snare so great a host will bring me fame."

He girt himself, went to Káús, and said :—  
" I am of rank to fight Afrásiyáb,  
And will bring down his horsemen's heads to dust."

V. 557

The Maker's purpose was that Siyáwush  
Should perish in Túrán by vile men's plots  
When his ill day should come. The Sháh consented  
To his request with joy, bespake him fair,  
Bestowed on him new dignities, and said :—  
" My gems and treasures are at thy disposal,  
And thou mayst say the army is thine own."

The monarch summoned elephantine Rustam,  
And said to him with many gracious words :—  
" An elephant hath not such strength as thou,  
The Nile is not so bounteous as thy hand.  
Thou art of world-renown and slow to speak,  
Thou who wast fosterer of Siyáwush !  
When mines of jewels are bound down with iron  
They open when thou bindest up thy loins.  
Now Siyáwush hath come with belted waist  
And, like a savage lion, talked with me :  
His object is to fight Afrásiyáb.  
Go with him, keep him underneath thine eye ;

When thou art watching I can go to sleep,  
 But when thou restest I must be alert.  
 Thine arrows and thy scimitar safeguard  
 The world: thou towerest o'er the moon in heaven."

The peerless Rustam said: "I am thy slave;  
 To hear is to obey, for Siyáwush  
 Is as mine eye and soul, his crown's top heaven  
 To me."

The Sháh applauded him: "May thy  
 Pure soul and wisdom ne'er part company."

### § 16

#### *How Siyáwush led forth the Host*

V. 558     A clang of trump and kettledrum arose  
 As Tús, the illustrious captain of the host,  
 Arrived, and troops assembled at the court.  
 The Sháh unlocked his treasures and dínárs,  
 He sent the keys of all his magazines  
 Of arms, of armour, and of stuffs uncut  
 To Siyáwush, and said: "My house and goods  
 Are thine, equip thee as thou thinkest best."

Then from his famous cavaliers Káuś  
 Chose him twelve thousand gallant warriors,  
 While from the neighbourhood of Kúch and Párs,  
 Balúch and from the desert of Sarúch  
 And warriors of Gílán, he chose for war  
 Twelve thousand infantry and buckler-men.  
 All that were hero-born throughout Írán,  
 The gallant, wise, and noble, all who had  
 The stature and the years of Siyáwush,  
 With courage, vigilance, and self-command,  
 Some also of the mighty men of name—  
 Bahrám and Zanga son of Sháwarán,—  
 And five archimages of the Íránians

To bear the flag of Káwa to the field,  
 These he commanded to go forth together  
 Beyond the borders to the desert-plain :  
 Thou wouldst have said : " There is no room still left  
 On earth for horses' hoofs to stand upon."  
 The flag of Káwa lifted to the sky  
 Shone like a moon amid the troops. Káús  
 Went with them past the frontier, while the dust  
 Raised by the host rolled swiftly. He reviewed  
 The warriors with their bridal bravery  
 Of elephants of war and tymbal-din ;  
 The noble monarch blessed the host and said :—  
 " O men of name whose steps are glorious !  
 Good fortune be your sole companion :  
 May darkness fall upon your foemen's sight.  
 Be it yours to go with health and favouring stars,  
 And come back triumphing and glad."

V. 559

The prince

Then set the drums upon the elephants,  
 Bestrode his steed, and bade his warriors mount,  
 While Sháh Káús with tearful eyes went forward  
 One day's march with him. Then the twain embraced,  
 Both of them weeping like a cloud in spring.  
 They poured down tears of blood and cried aloud  
 In their distress, for as they went along  
 Their hearts gave witness to them that thenceforth  
 They should not look upon each other more.  
 Thus fortune ever changeth, and our gain  
 Therefrom is sometimes balm and sometimes bane.

Káús turned toward his throne, and Siyáwush  
 Marched with his warlike army from Írán  
 Toward Zábulistán to visit Zál  
 With Rustam of the elephantine form ;  
 And there with Zál, the favourite of fortune,  
 He spent some time with wine and minstrelsy.  
 At whiles he drank with Rustam and at whiles

Consorted with Zawára, sat rejoicing  
 Upon the throne of Zál or drew the reed-beds.  
 A month so passed. Then leaving Zál he marched  
 With Rustam as his paladin, and warriors  
 Drawn from Zábul, Kábul, and Hind. Moreover  
 He summoned famous chiefs from every quarter  
 Until he reached the desert of Harát.  
 These furnished footmen not a few. He made  
 Their leader Zanga son of Sháwarán,  
 And marched toward Tálikán and the Marvrúd.  
 Thou wouldst have said: "The heaven greeteth him."  
 Anon he came to Balkh, and injured none  
 E'en by a bitter word.<sup>1</sup>

On the other side  
 Bármán and Garsíwaz led on their power  
 As 'twere a tempest. Sipahram commanded  
 The rear, Bármán the van. To them there came  
 News of the youthful chief: "A mighty host—  
 Famed warriors all—hath issued from Írán."

V. 560

The captain of the host despatched by night  
 A messenger to tell Afrásiyáb:—  
 "A great and gallant host hath come. Its head  
 Is Siyáwush, and there are other princes.  
 The marshaller is elephantine Rustam,  
 Whose hands bear one a sword and one a shroud.  
 If now the monarch so commandeth me,  
 I will array the host and offer battle;  
 But do thou gather troops and tarry not,  
 Because the wind is blowing up the flames."

The bearer of the tidings and his guide,  
 As they were bidden, urged their dromedaries  
 Like fire, while Siyáwush made no delay  
 And marched his army on like wind to Balkh.  
 The Íránian host drew near; it was not well  
 To wait an answer from Afrásiyáb,

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 74.

And Garsiwáz the warrior looking round  
 Perceived no course except to offer battle.  
 So when the army of Írán came up  
 The fight began about the gates of Balkh,  
 Where in three days were two great battles fought.  
 The fourth day Siyáwush, the army's Lustre,  
 Sent infantry against each several gate ;  
 The mighty army entered into Balkh,  
 While Sipahram fled o'er the stream, and then  
 Toward Afrásiyáb with all his men.

## § 17

*The Letter of Siyáwush to Kai Kdús*

The prince and army having entered Balkh,  
 He wrote on silk with spicery and musk  
 In fitting style a letter to the Sháh,  
 Beginning with the praise of the Almighty:—  
 " From Him are triumph and success Who is  
 The Lord of sun and circling moon, and giveth  
 Crown, throne, and casque their lustre, whom He will  
 Exalting or dejecting, ordering  
 Without a why or wherefore, though 'tis wise  
 To acquiesce. From that just Judge who made  
 The world, who made the seen and the unseen,  
 May every blessing be upon the Sháh,  
 All good attend him to the last. I came  
 To Balkh with joy and triumph through the Grace  
 Of him who hath the crown and throne—the world-  
 lord.

V. 561

We fought three days, the fourth God favoured us ;  
 Bármán and Sipahram fled toward Tirmid,  
 Like arrows from the bow. I am encamped  
 On the Jíhún, my glorious helm prevaieth.

Afrásiyáb is with his host at Sughd,  
 While we are still upon the Íránian side;  
 But, if the Sháh shall bid me, I will go  
 Across the river and attack the foe."

## § 18

*The Answer of Kai Káús to the Letter of Siyáwush*

The letter reached the Sháh. It raised his crown  
 And throne to Saturn, and he praycd to God  
 That this young Tree might come to bearing fruit;  
 Then wrote with joy this letter of reply,  
 Like shining spring or jocund Paradise:—  
 "Now through the Maker of the sun and moon—  
 The World-lord who bestoweth crown and throne—  
 Mayst thou for ever have a joyful heart,  
 One painless and untroubled, and therewith  
 Be thine the victory, and thine the Grace,  
 The cap of power and throne of majesty.  
 Thou leddest forth an army to the war  
 With prosperous fortune and a righteous cause,  
 And though thy lip still savoureth of milk  
 The whippings of thy bow burst in the fight!  
 May thy bright heart attain its every wish,  
 And may thy person ever keep its prowess!  
 Since thou hast won a victory repose  
 Is needed for a season, but disband not,  
 Proceed still further, and improve the occasion,  
 Because this Turkman is a cunning knave,  
 A man of high birth but an Áhriman,  
 Albeit he possesseth crown and power,  
 Affronting with his head the sun and moon.  
 Be not in any haste to challenge fight;  
 Afrásiyáb will come to fight with thee,  
 And, if he cross Jíhún, will trail his skirt

In blood."

He sealed this, called the messenger,  
And gave it with injunctions to return.  
The messenger sped over hill and dale,  
And came to Siyáwush who, when he saw  
The letter, was rejoiced and kissed the ground,  
Put off the bondage of anxiety,  
And carefully observed the Sháh's commands,  
Not swerving from his duty as a liege.

Thereafter Garsíwaz, the lion-man,  
Approached the monarch of Túrán, like dust,  
And told this grievous and unwelcome tale:—  
"The chieftain Siyáwush arrived at Balkh  
With Rustam as his marshaller, with troops  
Past count, and many men of name and leading.  
They had full fifty men to one of ours—  
Proud warriors, wielders of the buffalo-mace.  
Their footmen were like fire, and had shield, quiver,  
And shaft. The eagle soared not o'er their dust.  
They had no drowsy heads, and this we proved  
Three days and nights, and then our troops lost  
heart;

V. 563

But with the Íránians he who needed rest  
Retired forthwith from where the brave were  
fighting,

And after having slumbered rose refreshed  
To make him ready for the fight again."

Afrásiyáb raged like a fire. He quitted  
The stead of his tranquillity and slumber;  
He glared at Garsíwaz, and thou hadst said:—  
"Afrásiyáb will sunder him in twain!"  
Then in a fury that he could not master  
He cried aloud and drave his brother out.  
Anon he bade a thousand of the lords  
Be summoned and a festival prepared.  
They put up hangings over all the waste,



And decked all Sughd with ornaments of Chín :  
 The day thus passed away with happiness.  
 Now when the Eye that lighteth earth had gone  
 From sight, they hasted to take sleep and rest  
 Except the king, who tossed about distress.

## § 19

*How Afrásiyáb had a Dream and was afraid*

V. 564

As night advanced Afrásiyáb cried out,  
 And shook upon his bed like one with ague,  
 While slaves sprang up and sounded the alarm.  
 Whenas the tidings came to Garsíwaz :—  
 “The glory of the kingdom is obscured,”  
 He hasted to the presence of the king,  
 Beheld him lying on the dusty floor,  
 Embraced him, questioned him, and said : “Come tell  
 Thy brother all.”

He answered : “Ask me not,  
 Speak not to me till I regain some wits,  
 But take and clasp me to thy breast awhile.”

Anon on coming to himself he saw  
 A world of lamentation and of hubbub.  
 They lighted candles and he took his seat,  
 Still shaking like a bough, upon the throne.  
 Then said to him aspiring Garsíwaz :—  
 “Unlock thy lips and tell us this strange thing.”

He answered : “None will see a vision such  
 As I have looked upon this darksome night :  
 I have not heard of such from young or old.  
 I saw in sleep a desert full of serpents,  
 The sky all eagles and the ground all dust,  
 And so parched up that thou hadst said : ‘The heaven  
 Hath not looked on it since the world began.’  
 Upon one side my tent-enclosure stood,

And round it was a host of warriors.  
A dust-storm rose and laid my standard low,  
Blood surged around, the tents and tent-enclosure  
Were overthrown, while of my countless troops  
The heads were lopped, the bodies spurned aside.  
Came like a blast an army from Írán,  
What spears they bore and what artillery !  
There was a head impaled on every spear,  
Another was in every horseman's lap.  
A hundred thousand of them sable-clad,  
And wielding spears, came charging at my throne.  
They drave me from the place where I was sitting,  
Made my hands fast, and hurried me along.  
I looked around me well and many a time,  
But none of mine own kin was present there.  
A haughty and illustrious paladin  
Bore me before Káús the Sháh in haste.  
A throne was there ; its summit reached the moon,  
And on the throne was seated Sháh Káús,  
The hero, while a youth with moonlike cheeks  
Was seated near to him—a youth whose years  
Had not yet reached fourteen, who, when he saw  
Me standing there before his presence bound,  
Came rushing at me like a thundering cloud,  
And clave me to the middle with his sword.  
I shouted loudly in mine agony,  
And with the crying and the pain awoke."

"The king's dream," answered Garsiwaz, "accordeth  
To that which his well-wishers would desire.<sup>1</sup>  
Thy purposes, thy crown, and throne shall stand,  
The fortunes of thy foes be overthrown.  
We need a man that can interpret dreams,  
One who hath pondered much this kind of lore.  
Now let us call the wise, all who may be  
Skilled in astrology and grammarye."

<sup>1</sup> Garsiwaz suggests that dreams go by contraries.

## § 20

*How Afrásiyáb inquired of the Sages concerning his Dream*

From far and near the learned in this lore  
 Assembled at the court to hear the questions.  
 The king gave audience, placed them in due rank  
 Before him, spake of matters great and small  
 With each, and then addressed the company,  
 The priests, the sages, and astrologers:—  
 “Tell no one openly or as a secret  
 This dream of mine, or what I now shall say.  
 I will not leave the head upon the trunk  
 Of him who breatheth aught of this affair.”

V. 566

He gave them gold and silver past compute  
 That they might feel assured, then told his dream.  
 The sages, having heard the monarch's words,  
 Asked in alarm protection at his hands,  
 And said: “We cannot read this dream aright  
 Unless the king with his own mouth shall promise  
 That he will do us justice when we tell  
 What seemeth us.”

He promised not to harm  
 Or to impute the ill to them. Their spokesman,  
 One shrewd exceedingly and skilled to deal  
 With delicate affairs, said: “King of the world!  
 I will reveal this secret. From Írán  
 An army cometh mighty and alert,  
 The chiefs are brave, the leader is a prince  
 With many world-experienced counsellors,  
 Who by his horoscope, though not a Sháh,  
 Will wreck our land. If now the king shall fight  
 With Siyáwush earth will be like brocade,  
 And not a Turkman will survive; the king  
 Will grieve at having fought with him, for though  
 Thy hand will slay him, realm and throne will cease

Within Túrán, and earth be filled with strife,  
 Revenge, and combat on account of him.  
 Thou shalt bethink thee that my rede is true  
 What time thy lands lie waste for lack of people.  
 Although the king become a flying bird  
 He cannot pass the sky, which as it turneth  
 Is full at whiles of hate, at whiles of love."

The king grew sad and hasted not to fight,  
 But told to Garsíwaz the secret, adding :—  
 "None will seek vengeance if I fight him not ;  
 Thus both shall live, and men will cease from strife  
 And woe ; Káús will not desire revenge  
 Upon me, and the earth will not be troubled.  
 Instead of war and quest of world-wide rule  
 Be all my dealings peaceful. I will send him  
 Gold, silver, crown and throne, and precious gems,  
 For Minúchihhr divided earth amiss  
 And took too small a portion, wherefore I  
 Will give up some assigned to me at first,  
 And then mine ills will haply pass from me,  
 Else will my soul, I fear me, fade away.  
 When I sew up the eye of fate with treasures  
 It well may be that heaven will grant me peace.  
 I only wish for that which is mine own,  
 And let the harvest be as heaven hath sown."

V. 567

## § 21

*How Afrásiyáb took Counsel with the Nobles*

Now when the sky had half revolved, and when  
 The shining sun displayed its face once more,  
 The mighty men betook themselves to court  
 With covered heads to offer their respects.  
 Afrásiyáb convoked the experienced sages,  
 And thus addressed them : "It hath been my lot  
 To see no desert but that made by war,

V. 568

And many great ones of the Íránians  
 Have perished by my hand upon the field.  
 What cities have been turned to hospitals!  
 What beds of roses into brakes of brambles!  
 What uplands have I made my battle-grounds!  
 My troops have left their traces everywhere.  
 It is because unjust kings rule the world  
 That good of every kind is vanishing.  
 No onagers are breeding in their season  
 Upon the plains; hawks rear a sightless brood;  
 Milk faileth in the udders of the game;  
 The water in the springs is turned to pitch,  
 And they are drying up throughout the world;  
 Musk-bags no longer yield the scent of musk;  
 All that is right is frayed by villainy,  
 And population faileth everywhere.  
 My heart is satiate of strife and outrage:  
 Fain would I walk the path of godliness.  
 Then be we just and wise again; let pleasures  
 Stand in the place of misery and travail.  
 For our part let us give the world some respite;  
 Death should not come upon men unawares.  
 The more part of the world is at my feet:  
 My court is in Írán and in Túrán,  
 For see how many of the mighty men  
 Bring heavy tribute to me year by year!  
 Now if it be your minds I will dispatch  
 An embassy to Rustam, and forthwith  
 Knock at the door of peace with Siyáwush,  
 And send him every kind of precious gift."

The chieftains gave their answers one by one:  
 All were for peace and amity. They said:—  
 "Thou art the monarch and we are thy slaves,  
 With hearts devoted to perform thy hest."

The councillors dispersed with minds intent  
 On justice, with no thought of strife and turmoil.

Then said Afrásiyáb to Garsíwaz:—

“ Make all thy preparations for the journey  
With speed, and tarry not upon the road.  
Choose out two hundred horsemen from the host,  
And carry precious things to Siyáwush  
From all the divers treasures in our hoard.  
Take Arab steeds with golden furniture  
And Indian scimitars with golden sheaths,  
A crown of jewels that a king might wear,  
A hundred camel-loads of carpeting,  
And take two hundred slaves both boys and girls.  
Say thus to him: ‘ I have no quarrel with thee.’  
Hold converse with him and bespeak him thus:—  
‘ I do not set my face against Írán.  
All from the bank of the Jíhún to Chín  
Is mine, my home is Sughd—a realm distinct.  
In truth it is through Túr and valiant Salm  
That all the world is thus turned upside down,  
And since the innocent Íraj was slain  
Our warriors’ brains have lost their wits. Írán  
Is not divided from Túrán, but wars  
And feuds prevented friendship. Now I trust  
That God will give good days and joyful news.  
He raised thee from the country of Írán,  
And giveth thee the friendship of the brave.  
Let thy fair fortune dower the world with peace,  
Let war and every evil disappear.  
Now Garsíwaz hath come to add his wits  
To thine, and as the valiant Farídún  
Erst shared the world among his gallant sons,  
So be it now. Let us adopt his rede,  
And turn our feet from battle and revenge.  
Thou art a Sháh thyself; speak to the Sháh:  
Perchance his warlike purpose may relax.’  
Speak also unto elephantine Rustam  
In fair words, plying him with arguments,

V. 569

And, that the business may be carried through,  
 Give gifts to him like those to Siyáwush,  
 Except a golden throne; no Sháh is he;  
 Thrones are above a paladin's degree."

## § 22

*How Garsíwaz came to Siyáwush*

V. 570

So Garsíwaz with those rich gifts, which made  
 Earth's face look gay, sped on to the Jíhún,  
 And there chose one to go to Siyáwush,  
 And say thus: "Garsíwaz hath come in state,  
 Hath crossed the river in a single day  
 By boat, and hastened on the road to Balkh."

The envoy came and gave the prince the message.  
 Then Siyáwush called elephantine Rustam,  
 Discussed the matter from all points of view,  
 And ordered Garsíwaz to be admitted,  
 Rose when he came and welcomed him with smiles,  
 While Garsíwaz afar off kissed the ground,  
 With downcast looks and terror in his heart.  
 The prince, first seating him below the throne,  
 Asked eagerly about Afrásiyáb,  
 And Garsíwaz beholding as he sat  
 The prince on his new throne, his head, and crown,  
 Spake unto Rustam thus: "Afrásiyáb,  
 As soon as he had tidings of thy coming,  
 Dispatched at once a keepsake to the prince,  
 And I have brought it with me on my way."

He bade his followers to bring the gifts  
 And pass along in front of Siyáwush.  
 All from the city's gateway to the court  
 Were horses, drachms, boy-slaves, and troops. None knew  
 The tale of diadems, dínárs, high thrones,  
 Of slave-boys all with caps and girdles on,  
 Of women-slaves with bracelets and gold torques.

The prince was gratified and smiling gazed  
 Upon them as he heard the embassy;  
 But matchless Rustam said: "Come, let us feast  
 A week and then proceed to the reply,  
 For this request must be considered well,  
 And there are many to advise withal."

Far-sighted Garsíwaz on hearing this  
 Did lowly reverence and kissed the ground.  
 They draped a mansion with brocade for him  
 And requisitioned cooks; but Siyáwush  
 And Rustam of the elephantine form  
 Withdrew and sat to canvass all the case,  
 For Rustam had suspicions through the haste  
 Of Garsíwaz; they hurried out their scouts  
 And took precautions. Then said Siyáwush:—  
 "Come, let us bring this mystery to light:  
 What motives can they have for seeking peace?  
 Look for an antidote for this their bane—  
 Think of the names of five score noble men,  
 Close blood-relations of Afrásiyáb;  
 These let him send to us as hostages  
 To clear the dark suspicions in our minds.  
 Seest not how fear of us oppresseth him,  
 And how he taboreth beneath the blanket?<sup>1</sup>  
 This done we must send one to tell the Sháh;  
 May be he will abandon thoughts of war."

"This is the proper method," Rustam said,  
 "In this way only will a pact be made."

### § 23

#### *How Siyáwush made a Treaty with Afrásiyáb*

At daybreak Garsíwaz appeared at court,  
 With covered head and girdle round his loins,  
 And having been admitted kissed the ground,

<sup>1</sup> i.e. attempts to hide what is obvious.



V. 572

And did obeisance unto Siyáwush,  
 Who said : " How was it with thee yesternight  
 Amid this great encampment and such din ? "  
 And added : " As for this affair of thine,  
 I have considered fully thy proposal,  
 And in our object we are both agreed—  
 We both would wash out vengeance from our hearts.  
 Send then this answer to Afrásiyáb :—  
 ' Cease now to muse revenge. He that hath seen  
 The sequel of wrongdoing should recoil  
 From acting wrongfully. The heart adorned  
 With wisdom is as 'twere a hoard of gold  
 And goods. If bane be not beneath these sweets,  
 And thou intendest neither wrong nor hurt,  
 Then, since thou wishest for a stable league,  
 Dispatch to me by way of hostages,  
 And as security for thy good faith,  
 A hundred members of thy family,  
 All warriors known to Rustam, who will give  
 The list of names to thee ; and furthermore  
 Whatever cities thou hast in Írán  
 Surrender, keep within Túrán thyself,  
 Repose from wars and those that seek revenge,  
 And let right only be between us two :  
 It is not well to favour savage pards.  
 I will dispatch a letter to the Sháh : '  
 He may perchance recall the host in peace."

Then Garsíwaz dispatched a cavalier  
 Swift as a blast, and said : " Court not repose,  
 But hasten to Afrásiyáb and say  
 From me : ' I have proceeded diligently,  
 And have obtained the whole of what I sought ;  
 But Siyáwush demandeth hostages  
 If thou wilt have him turn away from war.' "

The messenger arrived and told the king  
 What Siyáwush and noble Garsíwaz

Had said, and when the king had heard the words  
He was exceeding troubled and in doubt.  
He thus bethought him : " If a hundred men  
Of mine own kin are taken from the host,  
We shall be worsted on the battlefield  
For want of those devoted to my cause ;  
While if I say : ' Demand no hostages,'  
Mine overtures will seem to him dishonest.  
I e'en must send the hostages if he  
Insisteth thereupon. May be these ills  
Will pass away from me : in any case  
I shall be better wise than otherwise."

V. 573

The monarch out of those whom Rustam named  
Selected some five score of his own kin,  
And sent them unto Siyáwush, bestowing  
Upon them many gifts and benefits.  
He then bade sound the drums and clarions,  
He struck the royal tent, evacuated  
Bukhárá, Sughd, and Samarkand, and Chách,  
The land and ivory throne of Sipanjáb,  
And led his troops upon the way to Gang  
Without excuses, pretexts, or delays.  
As soon as Rustam heard of this retreat  
His mind was eased, he sought the prince and said :—  
" All now is well, let Garsíwaz depart."

Then Siyáwush gave orders to prepare  
A present—armour, crown, and belt, a steed  
Of Arab blood with golden furniture,  
Besides an Indian falchion in a scabbard  
Of gold. When Garsíwaz beheld them, thou  
Hadst said : " He seeth the moon upon the ground."  
He went his way with blessings on his tongue :  
Thou wouldst have said : " He rolleth earth along."

## § 24

*How Siyáwush sent Rustam to Káuś*

V. 574

Then Siyáwush sat on the ivory throne,  
 And hung the crown above it. He considered  
 Whom he should send, what man of courteous speech  
 Whose words had scent and hue, a cavalier  
 Of valour and a favourite with the Sháh.  
 Then Rustam said: "On such a topic who  
 Would dare to speak? Káuś is still the same,  
 His petulance increaseth: what if I  
 Approach him and make this dark matter clear?  
 I will rend earth at thy behest. I see  
 In going naught but good."

Then Siyáwush

Rejoiced, and spake no more of messengers,  
 But sat with Rustam and discussed the matter,  
 Then called a scribe and had a letter written  
 On silk. There first he praised the Judge from whom  
 He had his fortune, strength, and excellence—  
 "The Lord of understanding, time, and power,  
 The Nourisher of wisdom in the soul.  
 None can transgress His ordinance. The man  
 Who disobeyeth Him can look for naught  
 But loss, for He is Author both of wealth  
 And right. From Him who fashioned sun and moon,  
 Who illustrateth fortune, throne, and crown,  
 Be blessings showered upon our sovereign—  
 The lord of earth, the chosen of the great,  
 Whose purview reacheth all things good and ill:  
 May his tall form be wisdom's pedestal.  
 I came to Balkh this jocund spring, rejoicing;  
 But when Afrásiyáb had news of me  
 The sparkling liquor darkened in his cup:  
 He saw that he was in a strait; the world

Was black and fortune fallen. His brother came  
 With gifts and many fair slaves richly dight  
 To me to seek protection from the Sháh.  
 Afrásiyáb will yield the crown and throne  
 Of kings, content with his own realm; observe  
 His station; never tread Írán's dark soil;  
 But wash all strife and vengeance from his heart,  
 And send as hostages a hundred kinsmen.  
 Great Rustam now hath come with this request—  
 That as the Sháh's face is a pledge of love,  
 He will show love toward Afrásiyáb."

V. 575

The peerless Rustam reached the royal court  
 In fitting state with flag and retinue,  
 While loyal Garsíwaz with all dispatch  
 Went to the presence of Afrásiyáb,  
 Gave him a full account of Siyáwush,  
 And said: "He hath no match among the kings  
 For beauty, mien, address, and common sense,  
 Good feeling, modesty, and energy:  
 Brave, affable, a gallant cavalier—  
 'His breast is wisdom's home,' thou wouldest say."

The monarch smiled and said: "To scheme, my friend!  
 Is better than to fight. The dream alarmed me,  
 Foreboding, as I saw, my fall from power;  
 So in distress I turned to artifice  
 In order to relieve me of my woe:  
 I schemed to work with coin and treasury;  
 Thus everything hath turned out well for me."

## § 25

*How Rustam gave the Message to Káús*

Now on his side like flying dust came Rustam,  
 The Lion-man, with folded arms before  
 The Sháh, who met, embraced him, and inquired

V. 576

About the prince, the progress of events,  
 The warriors, the battles, and the host,  
 And wherefore he had come. Then Rustam gave  
 The letter, first extolling Siyáwush ;  
 A ready scribe then read it, and the face  
 Of Sháh Káuś was pitch-like : " I allow,"  
 He said, " that he is young and all unversed  
 In ill—no wonder—but thou art a man  
 Experienced, and hast witnessed good and bad  
 Of all kinds : thou hast not thy peer on earth,  
 And Lions grow adept by fighting thee.  
 Hast thou not seen Afrásiyáb's ill deeds—  
 How he hath robbed us of food, rest, and sleep ?  
 I should have gone myself but I forbore,  
 Although it was my wish to fight with him.  
 I went not, for men said : ' Go not thyself :  
 Remain here that the young prince may command.'  
 When God had meant that vengeance should be taken,  
 And ills had asked a recompense of ill,  
 Ye sought to gain a heritage thereby,  
 And that it was which occupied your hearts.  
 Afrásiyáb hath led your wits astray  
 By riches plundered from the innocent.  
 A hundred hapless, misbegotten Turkmans,  
 Who do not even know their fathers' names !  
 He will think little of such hostages :  
 They are to him as water in a stream.  
 If ye have dealt unwisely I am not  
 Sick of the toils of war ; I shall dispatch  
 A man endowed with wisdom and resource,  
 To bid the young prince : ' Put those Turkmans' feet  
 In fetters ; burn the valuable things,  
 Retain not one, send me the men in bonds,  
 And I will take their heads off. Lead thy host  
 Intent on fight up to the foemen's gate,  
 At once relax all discipline, and loose

Thy troops like wolves among the sheep ; while thou  
Revengest, and thy soldiers sack and burn,  
Afrásiyáb will come to fight with thee,  
For ease and peace will yield him no delight.' ”

Then Rustam said : “ O Sháh ! be not so moved  
Because of this. First hear what I shall say ;  
And then—the world is under thy command.  
Thou saidst : ‘ In fighting with Afrásiyáb  
Cross not the river hastily, but wait  
Till he attacketh, for he will not linger.’  
Accordingly we waited his advance,  
But from the first he oped the door of peace ;  
It would be vile to haste to fight with one  
Intent on peace and mirth ; and thy well-wishers  
Would never wish the Sháh to break a compact.  
When Siyáwush obtained his victories  
He charged like some brave crocodile. What wouldst  
thou

But signet, crown, and throne, the Íránian treasure,  
And safety ? These thou hast ; shun wanton strife ;  
Wash not a clear heart in a turbid stream.

Suppose that when Afrásiyáb consented

He inly purposed to break covenant :

We on our side are ready for the fight

V. 578

With scimitars and lions’ claws. Then thou

And noble Siyáwush upon the throne

Of gold shall laugh with gladness in Írán,

While I will lead a small force from Zábul,

And leave Túrán no throne or royal seat,

But with the mace wherewith I fight will make

The sunlight gloomy to Afrásiyáb ;

For he and I have often fought, and he

Will scarcely care to try another bout.

Require not then thy son to break the treaty,

Enjoin not what amounteth to a crime.

Why should I hide the purport of my words ?

Thy son will never break his promises,  
 And this deed that the Sháh is contemplating  
 Will horrify that most illustrious prince.  
 Dim not his fortunes or it cannot be  
 But that thine heart will suffer agony."

## § 26

*How Káuś sent Rustam to Sístán*

Káuś, the mighty Sháh, was filled with wrath  
 And raged at Rustam with dilated eyes:—  
 "So then the truth is out at last! 'Twas thou  
 That prompted this to root up from his heart  
 Revenge! Thine aim was ease and not the glory  
 Of signet, crown, and throne. Abide thou here,  
 And Tús shall mount the drums as general.  
 I will dispatch a horseman with a letter  
 Writ in harsh terms to Balkh. If Siyáwush  
 Will not obey he shall resign the host  
 To Tús and come back with his own retainers.  
 He shall receive fit treatment at my hands  
 For thwarting me, and nevermore will I  
 Call thee my friend or have thee fight my battles."

V. 579

Then Rustam cried in dudgeon: "Heaven may hide  
 My head! If Tús be valianter than Rustam  
 Then know that Rustam is a nidering."

He left the presence frowning angrily,  
 And with his forces hasted toward Sístán.  
 The Sháh anon called Tús and bade him lead  
 The army forth. Tús coming from the presence  
 Commanded that the troops should be equipped  
 With drums and trumpets, be prepared to start,  
 And put all thoughts of peaceful home apart.

## § 27

*The Answer of Káús to the Letter of Siyáwush*

Káús then warned a courier, called a scribe,  
 And set him by the throne to write a letter  
 Of wrath and strife, as 'twere a poplar shaft.  
 He first gave praises to Almighty God—  
 "The Lord of peace and war, the Lord of Mars,  
 Of Saturn, and the moon, of good and ill,  
 Of Grace and throne. The turning heavens obey  
 His hest, and everywhere His love extendeth.  
 May health and fortune be for ever thine,  
 O youth! together with the throne and crown.  
 Although thou hast forgotten mine instructions,  
 And foolishly neglected to attack  
 The foe, yet thou hast heard how he entreated  
 Írán when he prevailed; side not with him  
 In wantonness; frown not upon this court;  
 Let not thy head be snared through youth as thou  
 Wouldst 'scape destruction from the turning sky.  
 Send me those hostages bound hand and foot.  
 It is no wonder if Afrásiyáb  
 Hath duped thee, if I judge him by his conduct  
 Toward myself; oft through his glozing words  
 Have I turned back from fight. Now I said naught  
 Of peace, and thou hast disobeyed for dalliance  
 With pretty slaves; while as for Rustam, he  
 Ne'er hath enough of precious gear and treasure.  
 Thou hadst no thought of war: thine only thought  
 Was to succeed to the imperial crown.  
 Seek with thy sword the gate of full contentment,  
 For provinces are glories to a king.  
 As soon as Túš the general reacheth thee  
 He will dispose all matters great and small.  
 Set all the hostages without delay

V. 580



In heavy chains upon the backs of asses.  
 It is high heaven's purpose that thy life  
 Should perish by this peace. Then will Írán  
 Hear of the evil and our prosperous times  
 Be troubled. Go, prepare thee for revenge  
 And war, admit no further parleyings.  
 When, in the course of war and night-attack,  
 Thou turnest darksome dust to a Jíhún,  
 Afrásiyáb will not resign his head  
 To sleep, but come to fight; else if thou lov'st  
 them,

V. 581

And wouldst not have them call thee treaty-breaker,  
 Resign the host to Tús and come back hither:  
 Thou art no man for glory, war, and strife."

They sealed the letter, and the messenger  
 Received it and departed. Siyáwush,  
 On hearing words so unacceptable,  
 Called in the messenger and questioned him  
 Till all was clear. The man detailed the words  
 Used by the Sháh to Rustam, and described  
 How Rustam raged against the Sháh and Tús.  
 Then Siyáwush was much displeased with Rustam,  
 And musing o'er his father's act, the Turkmans,  
 And war's vicissitudes, exclaimed: "A hundred  
 Brave cavaliers, the kinsmen of the king,  
 Such famous men, our friends and innocent!

If I shall now dispatch them to the Sháh,  
 He will not ask or think about their case,  
 But hang them all alive upon the gibbet.  
 How shall I justify myself to God?  
 Ill will befall me through my father's acts;  
 If I so madly fight Afrásiyáb  
 Without a cause I shall incur God's wrath,  
 And people will cry shame. If I return  
 To court, surrendering the host to Tús,  
 That also will bring evil on my head.

I see ill right and left, and ill in front ;  
 Súdába too will do me naught but ill,  
 And I have not an inkling of God's will !”

## § 28

*How Siyáwush took Counsel with Bahráw and Zanga*

Then Siyáwush called from the host Bahráw  
 And Zanga son of Sháwarán for counsel,  
 And having put forth strangers made both sit  
 Before him. They had shared his confidence  
 Since Rustam had departed from the host.  
 Then Siyáwush : “ Ill fortune ever heapeth  
 Ill on my head. My sire's affection seemed  
 A tree all leaf and fruit ; Súdába's wiles  
 Have made it, one may say, a biting bane.  
 Her bower became my prison, smiling fortune  
 Drooped, and as time went on her love bore fire.  
 Then I preferred war to inglorious feasts,  
 So I might shun the Crocodile's embrace.  
 Our good friend Garsíwaz was then at Balkh  
 With many troops, Afrásiyáb at Sughd  
 Was threatening us with five score thousand sabres.  
 We sped as 'twere a blast to seek the fray,  
 But when they left the province, sending gifts  
 And hostages, the archimages held  
 That we should quit the field. Now if the Sháh  
 Is merely fighting for aggrandisement  
 He may have war and territory too,  
 But why such wanton bloodshed, such revenge  
 Stirred up in others' hearts ? The brainless head  
 Will ne'er know good from bad. Kubád came, died,  
 And left the world ; from that time all was lost.  
 My deeds please not Káús, who fain would harm me,  
 Requiring me to fight without a cause.

V. 582

V. 583

I fear that I shall perish through mine oath,  
 But still we must not turn from God, or fear  
 To follow our forefathers' steps. The Sháh  
 Would rob me of both worlds, and yield me up  
 To Áhriman! If we should fight again  
 Who can foretell the fortune of the day?  
 Would I had died, or never had been born,  
 Since I am fated to endure such bale  
 And taste of every poison in the world;  
 And yet the tree hath not attained full growth  
 Whose fruit is venom and the leafage loss!  
 Such are the treaty and oaths sworn by God  
 That, if I swerve from what is right, disaster  
 Will come on every side; I shall be blamed  
 Deservedly. The world hath heard that I  
 Have treated with the monarch of Túrán.  
 Will God approve or fortune profit me  
 If I desert the Faith and fight again—  
 A fall from heaven to earth? I will go look  
 For some retreat to hide me from the Sháh.  
 Meanwhile the ordering of this bright age  
 Is in His hands Who is the Judge of all.  
 Do thou, famed Zanga son of Sháwarán!  
 Prepare for toil; haste to Afrásiyáb;  
 Give not thy head to sleep. The hostages,  
 And all the precious things—dínárs, crowns, thrones—  
 Convey to him and tell him what hath chanced."

V. 584

He charged Bahrám son of Gúdarz: "To thee,  
 Famed man! have I resigned the host and march,  
 Drums, camp, and elephants. Remain till Tús  
 The general shall arrive, then give to him  
 The treasures and the troops in perfect order,  
 Accounting unto him for everything."

Bahrám was sorely troubled when he heard,  
 While Zanga son of Sháwarán wept blood,  
 And cursed the country of Hámávarán.

The two sat there together full of grief,  
 Distracted by the words of Siyáwush.  
 Bahrá'm said: "Nay, not so: thou canst not live  
 Without thy sire. Write to the Sháh and ask  
 To have the elephantine hero back;  
 Then, if Káu's still biddeth thee, fight on;  
 'Tis but a trifle if not trifled with.  
 Or wouldst thou rest? It may be done with ease;  
 To beg thy father's pardon is no shame.  
 If thou wilt send the hostages to him  
 His heart and gloomy soul will smile; if thou  
 Art so concerned about them let them go,  
 There is no hostage for thyself. This letter  
 Commandeth war, and all may yet be well,  
 For if Káu's doth bid us we will fight,  
 And bring our foes to straits. Think not vain thoughts,  
 But capture him by complaisance, and cause not  
 Bad times for us now that the tree of power  
 Is fruiting; fill not eyes and crown and throne  
 With blood, and shrivel not the royal tree.  
 Ill will befall throne, crown, host, camp, and court  
 Without thee, for the brain-pan of Káu's  
 Is as a Fane of Fire, his war and letter  
 Are both absurd; but if heaven's purposes  
 Oppose my rede, why say I more?"

V. 585

The prince  
 Refused the counsel of those two wise men,  
 So heaven willed. He said: "The Sháh's command  
 Is higher than the sun and moon to me;  
 Yet none from straws to elephants and lions  
 May brave God's word, and he that disobeyeth  
 Hath troubled wits and is beside himself.  
 Must I put forth my hand for shedding blood,  
 And lead two kingdoms into war? Besides  
 He is aggrieved about the hostages,  
 And will demand again what I refused;

While if I quit the field, returning home  
 Without a fight, the Sháh will be incensed  
 And in his fury harm me. If your hearts  
 Are troubled by my action heed me not ;  
 I will be mine own guide and messenger,  
 And quit the camp-enclosure on the waste.  
 When one is no partaker in my gains  
 Why should he take to heart my pains ? ”

When thus

He spake the souls of those two chieftains withered ;  
 They wept at dread of parting and consumed  
 As in fierce fire ; they saw the evil eye  
 Of fortune secretly upon the prince,  
 That they would never look on him again,  
 And wept his case. Said Zanga : “ We are slaves :  
 Love for our leader filleth both our hearts.  
 Now may our souls and bodies ransom thee,  
 And may our loyalty endure till death.”

V. 586

The gentle, prudent prince replied to Zanga :—  
 “ Go tell Afrásiyáb of what hath chanced.  
 Say : ‘ Through this peace my lot is one of war :  
 Thine are the sweets, the pang and poison mine,  
 Yet will I keep my covenant with thee  
 Albeit I shall lose the throne of might.  
 God is my refuge, heaven my covering,  
 The ground my throne. I rashly disobeyed  
 And cannot face the Sháh. Give me a cistern  
 Where God appointeth and I may not hear  
 Aught of the evil nature of my sire,  
 But find for once a respite from his ire.’ ”

## § 29

*How Zanga went to Afrásiyáb*

So Zanga, with a hundred noble horsemen,  
 Bore from the prince’s court the hostages,

And all the goods that Garsíwaz had brought.  
 When Zanga reached the Turkman monarch's city  
 A shout ascended and the watch espied him.  
 A noble warrior Tuwurg by name  
 Went forth to welcome him. At audience  
 Afrásiyáb arose, embraced him warmly,  
 And set him by the throne, where he presented  
 The letter and delivered all the message.  
 Afrásiyáb was much disquieted  
 And, having ordered fitting entertainment  
 For Zanga, called his captain of the host,  
 Who came like smoke. Now when Pírán arrived <sup>1</sup>  
 The monarch cleared the room and spake with him  
 About Káuś and his intemperate words,  
 His evil nature and his warlike projects.  
 Afrásiyáb looked grave, his heart was full  
 For Siyáwush. He told of Zanga's coming,  
 And asked: "What remedy shall I employ,  
 How make a league in this embarrassment?"

V. 587

Pírán replied: "O king! live happily  
 While time shall be. Thou art more wise than we are,  
 In treasure and in manhood mightier;  
 In apprehension, kindness, understanding,  
 And counsel, none hath wit to supersede thee.  
 All that have power to benefit this prince  
 Will grudge not toil and treasure. I have heard  
 That there is no chief like him in the world  
 In stature, countenance, and gentleness,  
 In culture, counsel, and propriety.  
 His prowess and his wisdom too exceed  
 His noble birth. No monarch hath begotten  
 Another such; words cannot do him justice.  
 He is a prince illustrious and right royal.  
 If he possessed no virtue but this one—

<sup>1</sup> From this point Pírán, "a verray parfit gentil knight," plays an important part in the poem. Cf. vol. i. p. 55.

V. 588

'That he hath quarrelled with his sire to save  
 Our hundred nobles' lives, given up the throne  
 And crown to meaner men, and gone his way,  
 'Twould not be politic to let him pass  
 From us. Besides Káu's is hoary now;  
 The time hath come for him to quit the throne;  
 But Siyáwush is youthful, hath the Grace,  
 And will succeed. The nobles would condemn thee,  
 And Siyáwush himself would be aggrieved.  
 If now the king in wisdom shall see fit  
 Let him dispatch to this wise youth a letter  
 Entreating him as men entreat their children;  
 Prepare him here a dwelling, entertain him  
 With fitting honour, give him a princess  
 To wife, and let him be esteemed and cherished.  
 If he remain thy realm will be in peace,  
 If he go home thy fortune will be bettered,  
 For he will be in favour with the Sháh,  
 And honoured by the nobles; both the hosts  
 May rest, God making him the instrument.  
 It would be worthy of the Maker's justice  
 To rectify the age in this regard."

The monarch listened to Pírán and, seeing  
 What would result, took time to estimate  
 The good and ill thereof; he then rejoined:—  
 "Thou counsellest well. Among the chosen chiefs  
 And veterans thou art incomparable;  
 Yet have I heard an adage to the point:—  
 'If thou shouldst make a lion's whelp thy pet,  
 And foster it however tenderly,  
 Still, when its teeth and claws are grown, regret  
 Will be thy lot. The brute will turn on thee.'"

Pírán said: "Let the king of warriors look  
 With wisdom on this matter. Can ill nature  
 Befit one who hath not inherited  
 The ill nature and perverseness of his sire?

Dost thou not see that Kai Káús is old  
 And must depart? Then Siyáwush will take  
 The wide world, wealth untoiled for, hall and palace;  
 Thus wilt thou gain both realms, their crown and state:  
 The man that getteth them is fortunate."

## § 30

*How Afrásiyáb wrote to Siyáwush*

Afrásiyáb, when he had heard this, took  
 A wise resolve, called an experienced scribe  
 And spake to him at large about the matter.  
 The scribe first dipped his pen in ambergris,  
 Then wrote the Maker's praise, acknowledging  
 His might and wisdom: "Since He is above  
 Both time and place how can His slaves' thoughts reach  
 To Him—the Lord of wisdom, sense, and soul,  
 Whose justice is the provand of the sage?  
 His benediction be upon the prince—  
 The lord of helm and mace and scimitar,  
 The lord of modesty and reverence,  
 Pure from wrongdoing both in heart and hand.  
 From wary Zanga son of Sháwarán  
 Have I heard all thy message, and my heart  
 Is troubled that the world-lord is enraged  
 So much against thee; but what seek the wise,  
 Whose fortunes are awake, save crown and throne?  
 Here everything hath been prepared for thee,  
 E'en to the royal dignity and treasures,  
 For all Túrán will do thee reverence,  
 And I for my part long to have thy love.  
 Then thou and I will be as son and sire—  
 A sire who is a slave before his son.  
 Know that Káús hath never shown affection  
 For thee like mine, for I will ope my heart,

V. 589

V. 590



My hoards, and hand, provide thee with a home,  
 Protect thee like a son, and leave thee here  
 As my memorial. Shouldst thou go elsewhere  
 I should be blamed by high and low alike;  
 And thou wilt find the going difficult,  
 Except by Providence and Grace divine,  
 For yonder thou must lose the sight of land,  
 And cross the sea of Chín. If no constraint  
 Is put on thee by God come as a friend.  
 Troops, treasure, gold, and city all are thine,  
 And thou shalt need no pretext for departing,  
 For when thou wouldst be friendly with thy sire,  
 I will provide thee crown and throne and girdle,  
 With soldiers to escort thee to Írán,  
 And bear thee company myself for love.  
 The quarrel with thy father will not last;  
 At his age he will soon be sick of strife.  
 If fire appeareth after sixty-five  
 It cometh hardly from the damps of age.  
 Írán and host and treasure will be thine,  
 And crown with sovereignty from clime to clime;  
 Moreover I have sworn by holy God  
 To labour, soul and body, for thy welfare.  
 I will not harm thee by myself or others,  
 Or wrong thee even in thought."

He sealed the letter,

Then bade his good friend Zanga gird his loins  
 To go with speed, and gave him many gifts  
 Of gold and silver, and a steed caparisoned  
 With massive gold. When Zanga gave his tidings  
 The prince was glad and sorry too to make  
 His foe a friend. Would fire give cooling breezes?  
 A foe, however kind thou mayest be,  
 Will in the end display his enmity.

## § 31

*How Siyáwush gave up the Host to Bahrám*

Then Siyáwush wrote thus to Kai Káús  
 To tell him all: "Though young I want not wits.  
 While I have done no wrong, the world-lord's temper  
 Hath burned my heart within me. First Súdába  
 Occasioned trouble; I was forced to traverse  
 A mount of fire; my heart's blood bathed my cheeks,  
 And in the wastes the deer wept sore for me.  
 Then went I forth in shame and woe to face  
 The claws of Crocodiles. Both kingdoms now  
 Enjoy repose, yet is the Sháh's heart like  
 A sword of steel; my doings please him not,  
 And if I bind or loose 'tis all the same.  
 Since he is weary of me I will cease  
 To trouble him. Ne'er may his heart lack joy.  
 As for myself I seek the Dragon's breath  
 In sorrow, doubtful what the turning sky  
 Intendeth for me—whether hate or love."

Then said he to Bahrám: "Now give thy name  
 Fresh glory in the world; I leave with thee  
 The baggage and the camp, the cavaliers,  
 The treasure, elephants, and kettledrums.  
 When noble Tús shall come, resign thy charge  
 To him, be vigilant and fortunate."

He chose three hundred doughty cavaliers,  
 Had brought to him such money as he needed,  
 With jewels fit for kings, a hundred steeds  
 With golden furniture, a hundred slave boys  
 With golden belts, and had a reckoning made  
 Of weapons, beasts, and girdles. Then he summoned  
 The nobles, spake in many gracious words  
 To them, and said: "Pírán hath crossed the river,  
 Sent by Afrásiyáb on secret business

V. 592

To me, because his people trust in him.  
 I go to meet him; ye must tarry here.  
 Look to Bahrám for orders and obey  
 Him loyally."

The chiefs all kissed the ground  
 Before the glorious Siyáwush.

At sunset,  
 When air grew dark and earth ungenial,  
 The prince, his face obscured by tears, marched forth  
 Toward Jíhún with all his company.  
 When he had reached Tirmid, doors, roofs, and streets  
 Were full of scent and colour like the spring  
 Up to the gates of Chách: thou wouldst have said:—  
 "It is a bride with crown and necklaces."  
 At every stage were carpets laid and viands  
 Prepared, the whole way to Káchár Báshí,  
 Where he dismounted and remained a while.

When Tús reached Balkh they told him bitter news:—  
 "The son of glorious Kai Káuś hath gone  
 To join the leader of the Turkman host."

Tús called in all the troops and marched them back  
 To court. The news made Kai Káuś turn pale;  
 He mourned and heaved a deep, cold sigh; his heart  
 Was full of fire, his eye of tears for wrath  
 With Siyáwush and with Afrásiyáb;  
 But, doubtful if the sky would prove a friend  
 Or enemy, he put away his anger,  
 And thought no more of warfare and revenge.

On hearing: "Siyáwush hath crossed the river  
 With troops to us, his envoy hath arrived,"  
 Afrásiyáb bade all the chief estates  
 Go forth with kettledrums to welcome him.  
 Pírán chose out one thousand of his kin  
 To meet the prince with gifts, apprised the host,  
 And gat him ready four white elephants.  
 One bore a turquoise throne backed by a flag

Of tree-like size, surmounted by a moon ;  
 The flag was gold-embroidered violet silk ;  
 Upon the golden throne were three gold seats,  
 And each of them was covered with brocade.  
 There were a hundred noble steeds whose saddles  
 Were jewelled gold. The host, thou wouldst have said,  
 Was like the earth when graced by heaven's love.

When Siyáwush had heard : " A company  
 Hath come," perceived the banner of Pírán,  
 And heard the sound of elephants and steeds,  
 He hurried forth, embraced Pírán, inquired  
 About the king and kingdom, and exclaimed :—  
 " Why hast thou vexed thy soul by coming hither,  
 O captain of the host ? My heart's first wish  
 Was to behold thee safe and sound."

V. 594

Pírán

Kissed his fair, charming face, his head and feet,  
 And thus addressed the Maker : " Thou know'st all  
 things,  
 The open and the secret. Hadst Thou shown me  
 His soul in dreams, in sooth mine aged head  
 Had been made young."

He said to Siyáwush :—

" Now that I see thee radiant and robust  
 I offer praises to Almighty God.  
 Afrásiyáb will be a father to thee,  
 The chiefs this side the stream will be thy slaves.  
 Above a thousand of my kin will wait  
 On thee with earrings in their ears, my treasures  
 Are all thine own ; be ever hale and happy.  
 Draw not a single breath of discontent,  
 For men and women are alike thy slaves,  
 And, if thou wilt accept my hoary head,  
 I too will gird my loins to do thee service."

They went with joy, discussing divers matters,  
 While through the city there were sounds of harp

And rebeck ; sleepy heads were roused ; the soil  
 Was blackened with fresh musk ; the Arab steeds  
 All spread their wings. When Siyáwush saw this  
 Tears rained from both his eyes, his thoughts were  
 troubled,

For he recalled the hocktide in Zábul  
 When it was decked up to Kábulistán,  
 And he had gone as guest to Rustam there  
 With all the famous men for company,  
 And how the folk had showered down gold and gems,  
 And sifted musk and ambergris o'erhead.

He thought about Írán and heaved a sigh,  
 His heart burned with the memories of home.

V. 595

He turned his head to hide this from Pírán,  
 Albeit that chieftain marked the grief and pain :  
 He understood the thoughts of Siyáwush,  
 Grew sorrowful himself and bit his lips.  
 They lighted at Káchár Bashí to breathe  
 Awhile. Pírán scanned Siyáwush, and marked  
 With wondering eyes his speech, breast, neck, and  
 shoulders,

Invoked God's name, and said : " Illustrious prince !  
 Thou art the memory of sovereigns,  
 And hast three things that not a prince beside  
 Possesseth. First, thou makest men discern  
 The nature of the seed of Kai Kubád ;  
 While secondly, thou hast adorned thy tongue  
 With such uprightness and such goodly speech ;  
 And thirdly, one would say : ' Thy face distilleth  
 Thy love on earth in showers.' "

The prince replied :—

" O venerable sage who sayest sooth,  
 World-famed for thy sincerity and love,  
 Far from unkindness and from Áhriman !  
 If thou wilt make a covenant with me  
 I know that thou wilt keep it, and will make

This land my home in love and confidence  
 In thee, my friend! and, if my sojourn here  
 Is well, I need not weep for what I did:  
 If otherwise command me to depart,  
 And point me out the way to other realms."

Pírán replied: "Have no such thought. Since thou  
 Hast left Írán, in no wise hasten from us,  
 And lose our monarch's love. Though his repute  
 In this world is not good, he is a man  
 Of God, hath wisdom, prudence, and high rede,  
 And turneth not in lightness to bad ways.

He is my blood-relation<sup>1</sup> too; with him  
 I have, as paladin and counsellor,  
 High rank, abundant treasures, thrones, and troops.  
 Above a hundred thousand cavaliers  
 Obey me here. Twelve thousand of my kinsmen  
 Stand day and night before me. I have land,  
 Flocks, lassos, bows, steeds, implements of war,  
 And hoarded treasure; I need no man's aid.  
 Let all this be thy ransom if thou wilt  
 Abide with us. I swear by Holy God  
 That I will serve thee both with heart and soul.  
 I will not suffer any ill to thee. . . .  
 But no man knoweth high heaven's purposes."

V. 596

The prince rejoiced, his heart was freed from care.  
 They sat and ate, and grew like sire and son,  
 Then in high spirits sped along the road  
 To Gang—the Turkman monarch's fair abode.

## § 32

*The Interview of Siyáwush with Afrásiyáb*

On hearing: "Glorious Siyáwush hath come,"  
 Afrásiyáb descended to the street

V. 597

<sup>1</sup> Afrásiyáb and Pírán were cousins.

Afoot with girded loins right eagerly.  
 The prince beholding him got off his horse  
 And ran to meet the king. The two embraced,  
 And kissed each other's head and eyes. Then said  
 Afrásiyáb: "Now evil is asleep  
 Throughout the world; henceforward war and tumult  
 Will cease; the deer and pard will drink together.  
 The world was troubled by brave Túr, but now  
 Our realms are sick of strife; while they were filled  
 With turmoil the world's heart had no repose;  
 Peace is restored by thee; the age hath rest  
 From battle and hot blood, all in Túrán  
 Are now thy slaves, all hearts are full of love  
 For thee; in soul and body I am thine;  
 Pírán the general is thy kinsman too.  
 I will regard thee with a father's fondness,  
 And ever show to thee a face all smiles."

Then Siyáwush with many blessings answered:—  
 "May justice be the fortune of thy race.  
 Praise to the Lord, the Maker of the soul,  
 From Whom are peace and battle and revenge."

The monarch, hand in hand with Siyáwush,  
 Sat on the throne of might, and as he gazed  
 Upon the prince, said: "None can equal him  
 On earth in stature, looks, and kingly Grace."  
 Then to Pírán: "Káuś is old and witless  
 To lose sight of a son so tall and gifted  
 As this. I marvelled, when I first beheld him,  
 How any man with such a son could look  
 At aught besides."

He made choice of a palace,  
 Laid cloth of gold for carpets, set a throne  
 Of gold with feet like heads of buffaloes,  
 Bedecked the palace with brocade of Chín,  
 And furnished it throughout, then bade his guest  
 Go thither and abide in full content.

When Siyáwush arrived before the hall  
 Its dome reached Saturn, he went in and sat  
 Upon the golden throne, his wise soul wrapped  
 In thought, until the monarch's board was spread,  
 And he was summoned; there they talked together,  
 And entered on a course of happiness.

The banquet o'er they went with harp and minstrel  
 To hold a drinking-bout. They sat and quaffed  
 Until the world grew dark and heads became  
 Bemused with wine, then Siyáwush went home  
 With glee, and in his cups forgot Írán.  
 Afrásiyáb gave heart and soul to him,  
 And could not sleep for thinking. That same night  
 He said to Shída:<sup>1</sup> "When the morn shall come,  
 And Siyáwush hath risen, go to him  
 With mine own kinsmen and the paladins  
 Of highest rank, take with you noble steeds  
 Caparisoned with gold, and other gifts."

V. 599

Accordingly the warriors presented  
 To Siyáwush gold coins and royal gems  
 With courteous greetings, and the king too sent  
 Him many gifts. Thus was one sennight spent.

## § 33

*How Siyáwush displayed his Prowess before Afrásiyáb*

One night the king spake thus to Siyáwush:—

"To-morrow morning let us play at polo;  
 I hear that none among the warriors  
 Can face thy mall on thine own ground."

"O king!"

Said Siyáwush, "be fortunate and ever  
 Beyond the reach of ill! Kings look to thee  
 For teaching; who surpasseth thee? Day shineth  
 When I behold thee, from thee I accept  
 Both good and ill."

<sup>1</sup> His son.



Afrásiyáb replied :—

“ My son ! be ever glad and conquering.  
Thou art a prince, the glory of the throne,  
A royal crown and backbone of the host.”

V. 600

They went out laughing to the Ground at morn  
In gallant trim. Then said Afrásiyáb  
To Siyáwush : “ Let us be opposites,  
Select our partners, and make up our sides.”

He answered : “ What will hand and mall avail ?  
I cannot play against thee. Take some other  
As thine antagonist, I am thy partner—  
One of thy horsemen on this spacious Ground.”

The monarch was delighted at his words,  
Esteeming those of others only wind.  
“ Nay, by the life and head of Sháh Káuś,”  
Said he, “ thou shalt be friend and opposite.  
Display thy prowess to the cavaliers,  
So that they may not say : ‘ He chose amiss,’  
But give thee praise while I laugh out with wonder.”

Then Siyáwush replied : “ ’Tis thine to bid :  
The cavaliers, the Ground, and malls are thine.”

Afrásiyáb selected for his side  
Kulbád,<sup>1</sup> Púlád, Pírán, Jahn, Garsíwaz,  
With Nastíhan the gallant, and Húmán,  
Who would drive balls from water. Then the king  
Sent over to the side of Siyáwush  
Rúín, illustrious Shída, and Arjásp  
The mounted Lion, and Andarímán  
The doughty cavalier.<sup>2</sup> Said Siyáwush :—  
“ Ambitious king ! will any of these dare  
To face the ball ? They side with thee, while I  
Shall have to play alone and watch them too.  
So with the king’s leave I will bring to help me  
A few Íránian players on the Ground  
In order that both sides may play the game.”

V. 601

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 119.

<sup>2</sup> For most of the above names see vol. i. p. 92.

The monarch heard the words, gave his consent,  
And from the Íránians Siyáwush chose seven  
Well skilled. The tymbals sounded, dust arose,  
While what with cymbal-clash and clarion-blare  
Thou wouldst have said : " The ground is all a-quake ! "  
Afrásiyáb hit off and drove the ball  
Up to the clouds just as it should be struck.  
Then Siyáwush urged on his steed and smote  
The ball, or ever it could reach the ground,  
So stoutly that it disappeared from sight.  
Thereat the exalted monarch bade his men  
To give another ball to Siyáwush,  
Who as he took it kissed it, and there rose  
A flourish from the pipes and kettledrums.  
He mounted a fresh steed, threw up the ball,  
And drove it out of sight to see the moon.  
Thou wouldst have said : " The sky attracted it."  
There was not on the ground his peer, and none,  
Had such a beaming face. The monarch laughed,  
The nobles grew attentive and exclaimed :—  
" We never saw a rider like this chief ! "

The famous monarch said : " Of such a kind  
Is each one gifted with the Grace of God ;  
But Siyáwush hath bettered all report."

The attendants set a throne beside the Ground,  
The monarch beaming sat down with the prince,  
And told the company : " The Ground and balls  
Are at your service."

V. 602

Then the Íránians played  
A match with the Túránians. Dust flew up  
With shouts as these or those bore off the ball ;  
But when the Turkmans played too angrily  
In their endeavours to obtain a goal,  
And when the Íránians intercepted them  
So that the Turkmans' efforts were in vain,  
Displeased with his own people Siyáwush

Cried to them in the olden Persian tongue:—  
 “Is this a playground, or would ye cause strife  
 In our dependent and precarious state?  
 When ye are near the limits look aside  
 And let the Turkmans have the ball for once.”

His horsemen rode more gently after this  
 And did not heat their steeds, then as the Turkmans  
 Were shouting for a goal Afrásiyáb  
 Perceived the purpose of the words, and said:—  
 “I have been told by one of mine own friends  
 That Siyáwush hath no peer in the world  
 For archery and might of neck and shoulder.”

Thereat the prince uncased his royal bow;  
 The monarch, having asked to see it first  
 That one of his own kin might prove its strength,  
 Regarded it with wonder, and invoked  
 Full many a royal blessing, then presented  
 The bow to Garsíwaz the sworder, saying:—  
 “Bend thou this bow and string it.”

That malignant

V. 603

Failed, to his great amazement. Siyáwush  
 Took back the bow and sitting on his knees  
 Bent it and strung it, smiling. Said the king:—  
 “With this one might shoot over sky and moon!  
 I too in days of youth had such a bow,  
 But times are changed, and no one in our lands  
 Would dare to grasp this bow when war is toward,  
 Save Siyáwush, and he with such a chest  
 And arms would wish none other on his charger.”

They placed a target on the riding-ground,  
 And Siyáwush, who challenged none to shoot,  
 Bestrode his wind-foot charger like a div,  
 Gripped with his legs, and shouted as he went.  
 In sight of all the chiefs his arrow hit  
 The bull's eye. Then he set upon his bow  
 Another shaft, of poplar wood, four feathered,

And in the same course hit the second time.  
 Next wheeling to the right he hit the target  
 Just as he would. This being done he flung  
 The bow upon his arm, approached the king,  
 And lighted from his steed. The monarch rose :—  
 “Thy skill,” said he, “is witness to thy race.”

Returning to the lofty palace thence  
 They went with happy hearts as bosom-friends ;  
 There took their seats, arranged a drinking-bout,  
 And summoned skilful minstrels to attend.  
 They quaffed no little wine, grew glorious,  
 And drank the health of Siyáwush. The king  
 While sitting at the board arranged a gift—  
 A horse and trappings, throne and diadem,  
 Uncut stuffs, such as none had seen before,  
 Gold coins, and silver coins in bags, turquoises,  
 With many girl and boy slaves, and a cup  
 Which brimmed with shining rubies. Then the king  
 Commanded to count up those precious gifts,  
 And certain of the dearest of his kinsmen  
 To bear them to the house of Siyáwush.  
 Thus said he to his troops : “In everything  
 Regard the prince as if he were your king.”

V. 604

## § 34

*How Afrásiyáb and Siyáwush went to the Chase*

Afrásiyáb said to the prince : “Come with me  
 Some day a-hunting to refresh our hearts,  
 And banish all our troubles in the chase.”

“Whene’er thou wilt,” he answered, “whereso’er  
 Thy heart disposeth thee to lead the way.”

One day they went. The king took hawks and  
 cheetahs,  
 And many of Írán and of Túrán

Of all conditions hastened to the meet.  
 The prince spied onager upon the plain,  
 And, sped from his companions like the wind,  
 With reins held lightly and feet firmly pressed  
 He galloped o'er the hollows and the hills,  
 And, having cloven an onager in halves,  
 Made them the silver and his hands the scales,  
 And found the two sides equal to a grain.  
 The king and all his train watched eagerly,  
 Exclaiming: "What a noble swordsman this!"  
 And one man to another called and said:—  
 "Ill from Írán hath come on us erewhile,  
 And our brave leaders have been put to shame:  
 Now is the time to fight against the Sháh."

But Siyáwush still chased his onagers  
 And spread destruction over all the plain.  
 He galloped over valley, hill, and waste,  
 Employing arrow, spear, and scimitar.  
 V. 605 Where'er he went he piled a heap of game,  
 And killed enough for all the company.  
 Thence to the palace of Afrásiyáb  
 They took their way with gladness in their hearts.

The monarch in his pleasures and his griefs  
 Held intercourse with none but Siyáwush,  
 Confided not in Jahn and Garsíwaz,  
 Or other such; he took no joy in them,  
 But passed with Siyáwush his days and nights  
 In merriment. Thus while a year went by  
 They shared all griefs and pleasures equally.

### § 35

*How Pírán gave his Daughter to Siyáwush*

One day Pírán conversed with Siyáwush  
 And in the course of talk said: "In this land  
 What man surpasseth thee? Our monarch's love

Doth make him talk of thee e'en in his sleep.  
 Know that thou art to him as jocund spring,  
 His idol, and the solace of his griefs.  
 Great art thou and the son of Kai Káús ;  
 Thy many virtues raise thee to the moon ;  
 Yet since thy sire is old, and thy heart young,  
 See that thou lose not the imperial throne.  
 Thou art a king both here and in Írán—  
 A noble monument of former monarchs—  
 Yet see I none, among thy blood-relations,  
 That looketh on thee with abundant love !  
 Throughout Túrán I find none fit to be  
 Thy peer, thy partner, or antagonist.  
 Thou hast no brother, wife, or sister ; thou  
 Art like a single rose-branch in a coppice.  
 Look for a consort worthy of thyself,  
 And cease to sorrow and regret Írán ;  
 It will be thine when Kai Káús is dead,  
 And thine will be the crown and warriors' throne.  
 The curtains of the king conceal three maidens,  
 All richly dight, such that the moon itself  
 Perforce must gaze upon, and Garsíwaz  
 Hath also three of noble race on both sides  
 Through Fárídún related to the Sháh,  
 With crowns and high estate. I too have four—  
 Slaves if thou wilt. The eldest-born—Jaríra—  
 Unmatched among the fair shall be thy handmaid.”  
 Then Siyáwush : “ I give thee thanks. Henceforth  
 Regard me as thy son. She is the meetest  
 Because for me alliance with thy house  
 Is best. She will rejoice my soul and body :  
 I want none else ; herein thou layest on me  
 A life-long obligation.”

V. 606

When Pírán

Left Siyáwush he hasted to Gulshahr,  
 And said : “ Prepare Jaríra's wedding outfit

In favour of the exalted Siyáwush.  
 Shall not we joy to-day when we receive  
 The grandson of Kubád as son-in-law ? ”

Gulshahr led forth her daughter, having set  
 A coronet upon the maiden's head,  
 Arrayed her with brocade, gold, drachms, dínárs,  
 Adorned and scented her like jocund spring,  
 And then presented her to Siyáwush.  
 They thus espoused her to the princee, and set her  
 Like a new moon upon the throne. None knew  
 V. 607 What wealth she brought, how many golden seats  
 Inlaid with gems. When Siyáwush beheld  
 Her face she pleased him, and he laughed for gladness.  
 He joyed in her by night and day : his heart  
 Forgot Káuś.

Thus heaven revolved awhile,  
 And ever as time passed the atheling  
 Increased in rank and favour with the king.

### § 36

*How Pírán spake to Siyáwush about Farangís*

The good Pírán said to the prince one day :—  
 “Thou knowest that the king our sovereign lord  
 Exalteth o'er the dome of heaven his crown,  
 And that by night and day thou art his soul,  
 His heart and intellect, his might and wisdom ;  
 If thou shouldst be allied to him by marriage  
 Thou wouldst increase in greatness with each breath.  
 Now since my daughter hath become thy wife  
 I tender all thy interests great and small,  
 And though Jaríra hath much charm, and thou  
 Didst choose her out of all, it would become thee  
 To take a jewel from our monarch's skirt.  
 Of his fair daughters Farangís is best :

Thou wilt see nowhere else such face and hair.  
 She bettereth the cypress-tree in stature ;  
 Her musky tresses form a sable crown ;  
 Her parts and knowledge pass her loveliness,  
 While wisdom standeth as a slave before her.  
 Thou mayst well ask her of Afrásiyáb.  
 Where is a beauty like her in Kashmír,  
 Or in Kábul ? The noble king will be  
 Thy kinsman, and thy Grace and throne will shine.  
 With thy permission I will speak to him,  
 And thus win from him favour for myself."

V. 608

Then Siyáwush gazed on Pírán and said :—  
 "God's word must be fulfilled ; none can withstand  
 Heaven's secret purpose. If I may not go  
 To see Írán, the face of Kai Káús,  
 Or Zál who was a foster-sire to me,  
 Or matchless Rustam—mine own jocund Spring—  
 Bahrám or Zanga son of Sháwarán,  
 Or Gív, Shápúr, or other mighty men,  
 If I must needs be severed from their sight,  
 And have to choose a home within Túrán,  
 Do as thou sayest and arrange a match,  
 But speak not of it save in privacy."

While thus he spake he heaved a deep, cold sigh,  
 And filled the lashes of his eyes with tears.  
 Pírán made answer : "Every man of wisdom  
 Will let his circumstances rule his action.  
 Thou canst not scape the turning of the sky  
 Whence come our retributions, wars, and loves.  
 Grant that thou hadest friends within Írán :  
 Thou didst commend them unto God and leave them.  
 Thy house and home are here ; the Íránian throne  
 Is not at present to be made thine own."

V. 609



## § 37

*How Pírán spake with Afrásiyáb*

Píran, thus having learned the prince's wishes  
 On all points, rose, proceeded to the court  
 In merry pin, dismounted, was admitted,  
 And stood awhile before Afrásiyáb,  
 Until the king, who loved him well, spake thus:—  
 "Why standest thou before me this long while?  
 What wish hast thou on earth? What is thy purpose?  
 My host, my treasures, and my gold are thine,  
 For me thou profitest in every thing.  
 If I have any prisoner in bonds,  
 Whom 'twould be grief and danger to release,  
 Yet will I take from him my chains and wrath,  
 And for thy sake turn anger into wind.  
 Ask what thou wilt—a great thing or a small,  
 E'en sword or signet, throne or diadem."

The sage replied: "May this world praise thee ever!  
 As for myself, I have wealth, treasure, host,  
 And, by thy fortune, sword and crown and throne.  
 I bring in private for the royal ear  
 A long suit on behalf of Siyáwush,  
 Who said: 'Say to the monarch of Túrán:—  
 "I have grown blithe of heart and covet fame.  
 Thou like a sire hast reared me on thy breast  
 Till joy hath caused my fortune to bear fruit.  
 Extend thy kindness, make a match for me,  
 For I depend on thee in weal and woe.  
 Thou hast a daughter now behind thy curtains  
 Well worthy of my palace and my throne:  
 Her mother named her Farangís, and I  
 Shall find my pleasure in deserving her.'"

Afrásiyáb grew grave, tears filled his eyes.  
 He said: "Concerning this I have already

Told thee my views, and thou didst not approve them.  
 A sage of lofty rede once said to me :—  
 ‘ O thou that fosterest a lion’s whelp !  
 Why lay upon thy soul a fruitless task ?  
 Thou toilest to complete his excellence,  
 But at his fruiting thou wilt cease to bear.  
 His fosterer will be the first to feel  
 His claws when he is strong enough to fight.’  
 Again, in presence of the mighty men,  
 Archmagés learned in astrology  
 Took observations with their astrolabes,  
 And all gave utterance to the same effect  
 That my child’s son would do me wondrous hurt,  
 Destroy my throne, my treasure, provinces,  
 My host, and palace, and that I should find  
 No place of refuge ; he would seize the realm,  
 And by his deeds bring evil on my head.  
 Why should mine own hand plant a tree whose fruit  
 Is bane with colocynth for leaves ? A child  
 Sprung from Káús and from Afrásiyáb  
 Would prove a fierce flame or an ocean-wave.  
 I know not whether love will take the prince  
 Back to Írán, or fix all his regards  
 On us ; but why drink poison wittingly ?  
 One must not lightly take a serpent’s breath.  
 While he remaineth he shall be a brother  
 To me, and if he goeth to Írán  
 I will dispatch him to his sire in state  
 On such wise as the All-just shall approve.”

Pírán replied : “ O king ! Let not thy heart  
 Be grieved hereat. Those born to Siyáwush  
 Will be possessed of wits, reserved, and shrewd.  
 Trust not what readers of the stars may say,  
 Deal with his case according to thy wisdom,  
 For from this noble pair a prince will spring,  
 Whose head will be exalted to the sun

As king both in Írán and in Túrán.  
 Then those two kingdoms will repose from strife.  
 The seed of Farídún and Kai Kubád  
 Will ne'er produce a more illustrious Plant,  
 While, if the sky shall purpose otherwise,  
 No taking thought will make it love him more.  
 What is to be will be beyond all doubt;  
 No caution minisheth what is to wax.  
 See what a glorious enterprise is this!  
 Ask what thou wilt of fortune and 'tis thine."

Afrásiyáb replied: "Ill cometh never  
 Of thine advice. I order as thou wishest;  
 Depart and carry out thy kindly purpose."

Pírán bent low, did reverence, gave great praise,  
 And so departed, came to Siyáwush,  
 And told him all. That night the joyful pair  
 Sat o'er their wine and from their souls washed care.

### § 38

#### *The Wedding of Farangís and Siyáwush*

V. 612

Now when the sun upon the turning sky  
 Displayed its head as 'twere a golden shield,  
 Pírán the chief girt up his loins and mounting  
 A swift steed rode toward the prince's palace  
 To wish him joy of his high dignity,  
 And said to him: "Prepare thyself to-day  
 For welcoming the daughter of the king,  
 And if thou hold'st me worthy of the office  
 I will myself make ready to escort her."

The prince was moved and blushed. He loved his  
 wife,

The daughter of Pírán, as his own heart  
 And soul, but said: "Go, do whate'er thou wilt:  
 Thou knowest that from thee I have no secrets."

Pírán on hearing this went to his home  
 With heart and soul intent upon the business.  
 The door-key of the store-house where he kept  
 His uncut stuffs Pírán gave to Gulshahr,  
 Who was the chief wife of the paladin—  
 A lady much esteemed and bright of mind.  
 They chose the best things in the treasury—  
 A thousand lengths of cloth of gold from Chín,  
 With emerald-studded plates, cups of turquoise  
 Filled with fresh aloe-wood and musk-deer's glands,  
 Two crowns of jewels worthy of a king,  
 Two bracelets with two earrings and one torque;  
 Of carpets likewise sixty camel-loads,  
 Three sets of raiment made of cloth of gold  
 With patterns traced in gold of ruddier hue,  
 With divers kinds of jewels sewn therein;  
 Of gold and silver thirty camel-loads,  
 With salvers and apparel made in Párs,  
 A golden throne, four seats, three pairs of shoes  
 With emeralds patterned on a golden ground,  
 Two hundred servants bearing golden cups  
 (Thou wouldst have said: "The house will not contain  
 them!"),

V. 613

Three hundred servants wearing crowns of gold,  
 About one hundred kinsmen of the king,  
 Each with one tray of musk and one of saffron:  
 These with Gulshahr together with her sisters,  
 In golden litters curtained with brocade,  
 Went in procession with the precious things.  
 The lady took a hundred thousand coins—  
 Dínárs—to fling among the crowd. They brought  
 The goods to Farangís and blessed her too.  
 Gulshahr then kissed the ground and said to her:  
 "The planet Venus mateth with the Sun."

Pírán, for his part, and Afrásiyáb  
 Were instant on account of Siyáwush.

They gave the bride as custom and their Faith  
 Required, and had the contract duly witnessed.  
 As soon as they had finished pact and plight  
 Pírán dispatched a message to Gulshahr  
 Like smoke that she should go without delay  
 To Farangís to take her to the prince.  
 Thereon Gulshahr told happy Farangís  
 That she should go that night to Siyáwush,  
 And ornament his palace with a Moon.  
 She spake. They decked the bride at once and ranged  
 Her musky tresses o'er her rosy cheeks.  
 Then like a new moon Farangís approached  
 That youthful prince, the wearer of a crown.  
 They joyed in one another and their love  
 Grew ever greater as the moments sped.  
 For one whole week slept neither fowl nor fish,  
 And no man went to rest; the earth became  
 A very garden through its whole extent  
 With sounds of minstrelsy and merriment.

V. 614

## § 39

*How Afrásiyáb bestowed a Province on Siyáwush*

Thus passed the sennight, then the king prepared  
 Great gifts of Arab steeds, sheep, coats of mail  
 Withal, helms, maces, lassos, and dínárs,  
 With purses full of drachms, suits of apparel,  
 And things both great and small. They drew a list  
 Of lands and cities 'twixt the sea of Chín  
 And their own march; the region was in length  
 A hundred leagues, its breadth no man could measure.  
 For all that sovereignty in royal fashion  
 They made the patent out on painted silk,  
 Which with a golden throne and golden crown  
 The king sent to the house of Siyáwush.

He next prepared the hall of banqueting,  
And those that came to it from far and near  
Found wine, and tables ready spread, and cooks;  
Folks eat, and whatsoever each could carry  
He took away with him to his own home:  
The monarch's guests thus passed a week in joy.  
He opened wide the dungeons' bolted doors,  
Exulting as the favourite of fortune.

V. 615

The eighth day Siyáwush with brave Pírán  
Approached the king at dawn for leave to go  
To their own homes. Both offered compliments,  
And said: "O gracious worldlord! may thy days  
Be ever joyous and thy foes' backs bent."

Thence they returned rejoicing and their talk  
Was all about the monarch of the world.

Thus for a year in justice and in love  
The circling heaven turned and brought no care;  
Then from the presence of the monarch came  
A friendly messenger to Siyáwush,  
And said: "The king saith: 'O illustrious chieftain!  
I have bestowed upon thee all the realm  
From here to Chín: go round and view the lands.  
In any city where thou findest ease,  
Contentment, and no more to be desired,  
Abide in gladness and prosperity;  
Stint not thy soul one moment of delight.'"

Then Siyáwush, rejoicing at his words,  
Struck up the pipes and drums, and packed the loads.  
A host accompanied him on the way  
With arms and treasure, signet-ring and crown.  
They fitted many litters and arranged  
The curtains for the ladies. In one litter  
The prince placed Farangís and, having loaded  
The baggage-train, led forth the company.  
They went with merriment toward Khutan  
With all the famous men escorting them,

V. 616

Because Pírán, that general favourite,  
 Was of that state, and Siyáwush had promised  
 To spend a month with him. The days were passed  
 In banqueting or in the hunting-field  
 Until the month was ended ; then there rose  
 The din of drum at cock-crow, and the prince  
 Went to his realm, preceded by Pírán,  
 And followed by his troops. The news got wind,  
 And all the nobles sought their overlord.  
 They set forth from their homes with joyful hearts,  
 And, as the custom was, bedecked the land,  
 And there was such a bruit within that realm  
 That thou hadst said : " The earth is raised to heaven."  
 Such were the din and blast of clarions  
 That thou hadst said : " All hearts leap from their  
 seats."

They found one day a cultivated tract :  
 It was a goodly and well favoured site,  
 On one side mountains, on another sea.  
 Upon a third side was a hunting-ground,  
 Secluded, full of trees and rivulets—  
 A place to make the old heart young again.  
 Then to Pírán spake Siyáwush and said :—  
 " See what a noble site these fields afford !  
 Here will I fashion me a goodly seat  
 To be my heart's delight, a spacious city  
 Containing palace, hall, and pleasure-grounds ;  
 I will exalt the buildings to the moon,  
 And make them worthy of the crown and throne."

Pírán replied : " O thou of goodly rede !  
 Accomplish all that thy heart purposeth.

V. 617

If thou shalt bid, according to thy plans  
 I will erect a moon-attaining seat ;  
 I ask thee not for treasure or for lands,  
 And for thy sake reckon not of time or place.  
 And Siyáwush rejoined : " O blessed one

Thou bring'st the tree of greatness into fruit.  
 Thine are my weal and wealth ; I notice first  
 In every place thy toil on mine account.  
 I will erect a city on this ground  
 Such that beholders shall remain astound."

## § 40

*How Siyáwush built Gang-dizh*

I open now the door of history—

The charming record of the days of yore—  
 To speak of Gang-i-Siyáwush to thee,

The city, and the city's ancient lore.  
 Praise be to Him by Whom the world was wrought,  
 The Maker of the unknown and the known,  
 The Lord of being and not being ; aught  
 Besides hath peers, but God is One alone.

Praise to the Prophet, and to those who bore  
 Him company our praises be addressed,  
 And since the righteous flourish here no more

Speak not of taking this world for thy rest.  
 Where are the heads and crowns of kings of kings ?  
 Where are the gallant, noble athelings ?  
 Where are the doctors and the scientists ?  
 Where are the labour-bearing annalists ?

Where are the modest fair who charmed the sight, V. 618  
 And gently uttered words of graciousness ?

Where is the nestling of the mountain-height,  
 Inured to scorn, discomfort, and distress ?

Where he that touched the cloud-rack with his head,  
 And whither is the lion-hunter gone ?

They have but bricks and dust to form their bed,  
 And he that sowed good seed is blest alone.

From dust we come and shall return to dust,  
 And all is dread, distraction, and distrust.



The world will outlast thee ; its mysteries  
 How wilt thou ken ? 'Tis full of instancees ;  
 Shall we ignore them ? Six and sixty years

Hast thou been scheming : turn thy face away  
 From toil and emulation. Thy eompeers

Left thee in multitudes while thou didst stay  
 A greedy hand upon the world to lay,  
 And shalt thou not at last be e'en as they ?

List to the story of a bygone day.

Since earth is void of those illustrious men

Why should ambition's erown be sought by thee ?  
 In their days justice ruled the world, and then

Earth flourished under their supremacy.

So listen to the tale that I shall tell

About Gang-dizh, and see thou mark it well,

Because the world hath not in any part

Another place so grateful to the heart

As that which Siyáwush b'uilt up of yore,

And no small travail in its structure bore.

There is a wilderness across the sea—

An arid waste. Beyond it is a land

Inhabited, whose cities furnish thee

With all provision ready to thy hand.

V. 619 Thou wilt pereceive a mountain farther on

Unmatched in loftiness, and thereupon

Gang-dizh. It is no hurt for thee to know

That 'tis one hundred leagues around below,  
 And eyes that look aloft are dazed anon.

Explore and thou wilt still be at a loss  
 To find the way of access to the place ;

The rock is three and thirty leagues across,  
 Presenting everywhere a solid faee.

If only one man harnessed for the fray

Were stationed for each league, to find a way

A hundred thousand men would not avail

On barded steeds and clad themselves in mail.

A spacious city next will meet thine eye

With rose-beds, gardens, open space, and hall,  
Stream, river, and hot baths, while minstrelsy,

Perfume, and brilliant hues pervade it all.

The hills are stocked with game, the plains with deer.

Once having seen it thou wilt tarry here,

And in thy rambles o'er the higher ground

Will pheasants, peacocks, partridges be found.

No winter's frosts to summer's heats succeed,

There is no lack of food, repose, or mirth,

Thou wilt not see a single invalid ;

In short it is a paradise on earth.

The water here is wholesome, clear, and bright,

The whole champaign in vernal garb is dight.

Its length and breadth have thirty leagues extent

According to the Persian measurement,

And one league and a half in altitude :

'Twould weary any one to scale the height,

And when the place is from the summit viewed

None ever saw a scene more exquisite.

When Siyáwush had visited the place

He chose it out of all Írán to bear

His name, and built of marble, stone, cement,

V. 620

And some material to us unknown,

A wall above one hundred cubits high

And eight and thirty broad ; the hold out-ranged

Both shaft and catapult, but thou shouldst see

The place itself, for one that hath not seen it

Will, thou wouldst say, be angry with the poet.

The prince endured much hardship thereabout

All for the sake of greatness, throne, and crown,

And made himself in that delightful spot

A charming seat with palace, hall, and park.

He planted many trees, and made the place

Like Paradise, and for its flowers chose

Narcissus, tulip, hyacinth, and rose.

## § 41

*How Siyáwush discoursed with Pírán about the Future*

The noble Siyáwush went with Pírán  
 One day to see the place whereof the sight  
 Would make the agéd young. It was delightful,  
 With treasures everywhere fulfilled with wealth;  
 And this imperial seat pleased Siyáwush  
 More than all other seats of kings and nobles.  
 When they were leaving Siyáwush was sad,  
 And asked the astrologers: "Will this abode  
 Secure me Grace and fortune, or shall I  
 Regret what I have done?"

V. 621

They all replied:—

"This place will not prove very fortunate."

The prince was angry with the astrologers;  
 His heart was full of pain, his eyes shed tears;  
 His hand relaxed his swift-paced courser's reins,  
 And hot tears trickled down. Pírán exclaimed:—  
 "My lord! what is the cause of this distress?"

"High heaven," he said, "hath filled my heart and soul  
 With pain and trouble, since what I amass,  
 My home, and treasury, will be my foe's  
 At last. Ill will be ill and I shall die.  
 The fairest spot in this world is Gang-dizh  
 Where by the Grace of Him Who giveth good  
 My wisdom and my fortune have not slept,  
 And I have raised the summit to the Pleiads.  
 Still am I busy gathering works of art,  
 But when the place is decked, and precious things  
 Abound, mine own enjoyment will be short;  
 Another will be seated in this palace.  
 The joy is not for me, or for my child,  
 Or hero of my race. My life will close  
 Ere long; I shall not want a hall or palace.

Afrásiyáb will have this for his throne,  
And death will overtake me for no fault  
Of mine. Such is the mystery of heaven  
With its vicissitudes of joy and grief!"

Pírán replied: "My lord! encourage not  
Vain thoughts, Afrásiyáb safe-guardeth thee,  
And on thy finger is a royal signet.  
I also, while my soul is in my body,  
Will strive to keep my faith to thee unbroken;  
I will not let the wind pass over thee,  
Or breezes tell the hairs upon thy head."

V. 622

Then Siyáwush: "O honourable man!  
I see that honour is thy one desire.  
Thou knowest all the secrets that I have,  
Thou who art shrewd of heart and sound of limb!  
Now will I tell thee by the Grace of God  
What I have learned of heaven's purposes,  
And advertise thee what will be hereafter  
When I am gone from halls and palaces,  
So that thou mayst not, seeing such, exclaim:—  
'Why were they not disclosed to Siyáwush?'  
Pírán, thou warrior exceeding wise!  
Hear what I say; no lengthy time will pass  
Ere by the hand of our shrewd-hearted monarch  
I shall, though guiltless, cruelly be slain.  
Another will possess this crown and throne.  
Thou wilt prove just and true, but heaven's purpose  
May not be thwarted. By a slanderer's words,  
And evil fate, my blameless head will suffer.  
Írán will be in conflict with Túrán,  
Revenge will make life wretched, and the earth  
Will be in travail through its length and breadth;  
The scimitar of feud will rule the age.  
Thou wilt see many standards from Írán  
Approach Túrán—red, yellow, black, and violet—  
With ravaging and bearing off of spoil,

V. 623

And scattering of treasures. Provinces  
 In plenty will be trampled underfoot  
 Of horses, and the streams of water fouled.  
 The monarch of Túrán will then repent  
 Both of his words and works, but penitence  
 Will not avail when homesteads are in flames.  
 Both here and in Írán will be the din  
 Of war, and my blood will convulse the world.  
 Thus hath the Almighty written in the sky  
 By Whose decree seed sown will bear its fruit. . . .  
 Come, let us give ourselves to joy and feast :  
 When it is time for us to pass we pass.  
 Why set thy heart upon this Wayside Inn ?  
 Why toy with treasure ? Why complain of toil ?  
 Our wealth will be another's. Why should one,  
 Because he is a king, enrich his foe ?"

Whenas Pírán had heard and taken thought  
 His heart was filled with trouble at these words.  
 He said : " I have brought evil on myself  
 If this that he hath spoken be the truth.  
 I drew him to the country of Túrán,  
 And scattered through the world the seeds of feud.  
 I drew him to Túrán by mine own efforts,  
 And gave to him a province, crown, and wealth,  
 Not recking of the king's repeated warnings."

And then his loving heart suggested this :—  
 " Who hath revealed to him these mysteries—  
 The motions and the purpose of the sky ?  
 He surely must be thinking of Írán,  
 Of Kai Káús, and of the imperial throne ;  
 It is the memory of happier days."

V. 624

Pírán with these words solaced his own heart,  
 And entered on no prudent policy.  
 The two discussed the future all the way,  
 Then lighting from their steeds they ceased from  
 talk,

And, having had a golden table dressed,  
Wine, harp, and minstrelsy were in request.

### § 42

#### *How Afrásiyáb sent Pírán into the Provinces*

They thus passed seven days in merriment,  
Discoursing of the monarchs of the world.  
The eighth day came a letter from the king  
To bid Pírán: "Choose from the warriors  
A host and go toward the sea of Chín.  
Thence cross the marches to the river Sind,  
Demand the tribute from the provinces,  
And over-run the borders of Khazar."

Then from the portal of the paladin  
Shouts rose, while drums and tymbals shook the ground,  
And troops from all sides gathered round Pírán—  
A mighty army eager for the fray.  
Whenas the troops had mustered at his gate  
He bade farewell and marched, while Siyáwush,  
Rich in dínárs and goods of every kind,  
With well appointed steeds, remained behind.

### § 43

#### *How Siyáwush built Siyáwushgird*

A cameleer brought from Afrásiyáb,  
In hottest haste about the time of sleep,  
To Siyáwush a letter full of love,  
And blazoned like the starry sky: it ran:—  
"Since thy departure I enjoy no pleasure,  
My thoughts permit me not a moment's peace.  
Moreover I have sought thee out a seat,  
Such as thou wilt approve, within Túrán.

V. 625

Though it be pleasant whither thou hast gone,  
And griefless there, yet quit thy realm and bring  
The heads of evil-wishers to the dust."

The chieftain packed the baggage and set forth  
With all speed as the king commanded him.  
A thousand female camels with red hair  
They loaded up with various merchandise.  
He made a hundred camels carry treasures  
And drachms, while forty others bore dínárs.  
Ten thousand swordsmen went along with him—  
Picked horsemen from Írán and from Túrán—  
Preceded by the baggage-train and litters  
With lovely ladies in their bravery.  
Of rubies and turquoises fit for kings,  
Or torques and diadems inlaid with gems,  
Of ambergris, of aloe-wood, and musk,  
Of spicery, brocade, and silken cushions,  
From Párs and Chín and Mizr were thirty loads.  
The leader and his noble retinue  
Proceeded till they came to blithe Bahár.  
When he arrived he pointed out a site  
Two leagues in length and breadth. Thereon he built  
A city famous for its rosaries,  
Its lofty palaces, and orchard-grounds.  
He limned within the hall full many a picture  
Of kings, of battle, and of banqueting,  
And painted there Káuś with mace and armlets,  
Crowned on his throne, with elephantine Rustam,  
With Zál, Gúdarz, and all that company.  
Elsewhere he limned Afrásiyáb, his army,  
Pírán, and Garsíwaz the vengeful one.  
That pleasant city was the talk of all  
Good men both in Írán and in Túrán.

V. 626

At every corner was a cupola,  
Whose summit reached the clouds. There minstrels  
sat

And sang while chiefs and warriors kept guard  
 Around. Siyáwushgird the common voice  
 Called it ; that city made all hearts rejoice.

## § 44

### *How Pírán visited Siyáwushgird*

Now when Pírán returned from Hind and Chín  
 All men were talking of the glorious city,  
 For, founded on the auspicious day of Ard,  
 Siyáwushgird was famed throughout Túrán.  
 He heard of palace, orchard, garden, hall,  
 Plain, streamlet, hill, and dale, and longed to see  
 What Siyáwush had done with that fine site.  
 Pírán took with him all his retinue—  
 A thousand wise and valiant warriors—  
 Men fit to share with him in the rejoicings.  
 On his approach the prince went with the host  
 To welcome him. Pírán on catching sight  
 Of Siyáwush alighted, as did Siyáwush,  
 Who clasped him closely. Coming to the city  
 They went around what erst had been a thorn-brake,  
 But then lamp-bright with palace, hall, and pleasance.  
 The chief Pírán went everywhere, invoked  
 Full many a blessing on the prince, and said :—  
 “If Grace and royal height and wisdom too  
 Were not thine own in this thine undertaking  
 How could results like these have been achieved ?  
 Be this thy monument among the brave  
 And noble till the Resurrection-day,  
 And may thy sons and sons’ sons live rejoicing—  
 World-lords triumphant and magnanimous.”

V. 627

Pírán surveyed part of that jocund city,  
 Then reached the hall and grounds of Siyáwush,  
 And in high spirits and ambitious hopes



Proceeded to the home of Farangís.  
 The daughter of the king met, greeted him,  
 And proffered him a handsel of dínárs.  
 When, seated on the throne, he looked around,  
 And saw the crowds of servants standing by,  
 He uttered many words of thankfulness,  
 And praised the Maker ; then they fell to feasting  
 With wine, cup-bearers, meats, and minstrelsy,  
 And thus they passed a sennight wine in hand,  
 Now blithe and joyous-hearted, now bemused.  
 On the eighth day Pírán produced the presents  
 Brought from abroad, and other fitting gifts  
 Of rubies, royal jewelry, dínárs,  
 Brocade, crowns all inlaid with precious stones,  
 And steeds with golden furniture, the saddles  
 Of poplar-wood, their pummels leopard-skin.  
 He gave a coronet to Farangís,  
 With earrings, bracelets, and a jewelled torque,  
 Then went upon his way toward Khutan  
 In order to attend his sovereign.

On reaching home he spake thus to Gulshahr :—  
 “ Whoe’er hath seen not jocund Paradise,  
 And known what things Rizwán<sup>1</sup> hath planted there,  
 Should see this splendid place, this paradise  
 Of thrones and palaces, where Siyáwush,  
 The wise and glorious, sitteth like the sun  
 Inside the palace of the blest Surúsh.  
 Allow thyself the pleasure of a visit ;  
 The lord is goodlier than his city ; thou  
 Wouldst say : ‘ He lighteth up the Occident ! ’  
 See Farangís—all loveliness and lustre,  
 As ’twere a two weeks’ moon beside the sun.”

Swift as a bark that speedeth o’er the sea  
 He went thence to Afrásiyáb, and told  
 What he had done, what tribute he had brought,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 39, *note*.

How he had battled in the land of Hind,  
 And laid ill-doers' heads upon the dust.  
 The monarch asked how Siyáwush had prospered,  
 And of his city, province, crown, and throne.  
 Pírán replied: "Whoever shall behold  
 The springtide-gaiety of Paradise  
 May in good sooth mistake this place for that,  
 And this illustrious monarch for the sun.  
 I saw a city such that none will see  
 Its like on earth in Chín or in Túrán.  
 What with its wealth of gardens, halls, and streams,  
 Thou wouldst have said: 'There wisdom mixed with  
 mind!'

One must dismiss fault-finding where is naught  
 To blame. When from afar I saw the palace  
 Of Farangís 'twas like a hoard of jewels  
 As bright as light. If now Surúsh should come  
 From Paradise he would not have the Grace,  
 The majesty, the common sense, the splendour,  
 And ordered usance of thy son-in-law,  
 Who is as good as thy glad heart would wish.  
 Both realms too rest from strife and stir, like men  
 Restored to reason. Mayst thou ever have  
 The rede of princes and the heart of sages."

V. 629

The monarch gladdened at the words on hearing  
 That this his Bough of promise was in bearing.

## § 45

*How Afrásiyáb sent Garsíwaz to Siyáwush*

Afrásiyáb made known to Garsíwaz  
 Pírán's account without suppressing aught,  
 And said: "Go blithely to Siyáwushgird,  
 And scan it well. The heart of Siyáwush  
 Is on Túrán; he thinketh not of home

Now that he hath farewelled the throne and crown,  
Farewelled Gúdarz, Bahráw, and Kai Káús.  
He looketh not to Rustam son of Zál,  
Nor taketh mace or battle-ax in hand,  
But hath erected, where was once a field  
Of thorns, a city like the jocund spring,  
Hath raised a lofty dwelling-place therein  
For Farangís, and holdeth her in honour.  
Prepare to visit noble Siyáwush,  
Say little when thou seest him on the throne,  
But judge him from a monarch's point of view  
At chase, at wine, on mountain or on plain,  
And in assemblies, show him all respect  
Before his nobles and exalt his name.  
Prepare for him exceeding many gifts  
Of horses and dínárs, of crowns and girdles,  
As well as jewelled thrones, brocade of Chín,  
And armlets, maces, swords, and signet-rings,  
With carpeting and trinkets of all kinds.  
See what thou findest in the treasury,  
And take besides a gift for Farangís.  
Go thou with naught but praises on thy tongue,  
And, shouldst thou find a joyous, smiling host,  
Abide two sennights in that jocund city."

Thereat the noble Garsíwaz selected  
A thousand cavaliers, men of repute,  
To go with all speed to Siyáwushgird.  
The prince when news arrived went forth with troops  
To welcome Garsíwaz; the two embraced  
And Siyáwush inquired about the king,  
Then going back provided for his guests.  
Next morning early Garsíwaz drew nigh  
And brought the monarch's message and the gifts.  
When Siyáwush saw what Afrásiyáb  
Had sent him he was like a rose in spring;  
Then mounting on his proudly stepping steed,

And followed by the Íránian cavaliers,  
Took Garsíwaz about the place, and when  
He had shown all went to his home again.

### § 46

#### *The Birth of Farúd the Son of Siyáwush*

At that time came to Siyáwush like wind  
A cavalier who brought good tidings, saying :—  
“The daughter of the captain of the host  
Hath borne a babe as ’twere the shining moon—  
A glorious child, whom they have named Farúd,  
And when Pírán at night received the news  
He bade me and another cavalier :—  
‘Go bear the joyful tidings to the prince.’  
The mother also of the precious babe—  
Jaríra, chief among the high-born dames—  
Commanded from her couch the slaves to smear  
The infant’s hand with saffron, and to take  
The impression on this letter’s back, and said :—  
‘Bear this to Siyáwush, whose wish is granted,  
And tell him : “Stricken though I be in years,  
Yet notwithstanding God hath made me glad.”’”

V. 631

Then Siyáwush thus answered : “May this babe  
Ne’er leave the seat of majesty unfilled !”  
And gave the messenger so many drachms  
That he who bare them wearied of the weight.

When Garsíwaz had heard the news he said :—  
“Pírán to-day is equal to a king.”

They sought the house of Farangís with joy  
And told her those glad tidings. Garsíwaz  
Beheld her sitting on her ivory throne,  
A crown set with turquoise was on her head,  
While many slaves with golden caps were standing  
With moon-like cheeks in presence of the Moon.

She came down from her throne and, greeting him,  
 Inquired about his longsome journey's toil;  
 But Garsíwaz was wroth, was wholly changed,  
 And thus he thought: "Let but a year pass thus  
 And Siyáwush will care for nobody;  
 Throne, kingdom, host, and treasure will be his."

He writhed but hid his feelings, and exclaimed  
 With pallid cheeks to Siyáwush: "Thou hast  
 The fruit of toil, enjoy the gains for life!"

They took their seats within the golden hall  
 Upon two jewelled thrones of gold, rejoicing  
 In fortune; minstrels and cup-bearers came,  
 And Garsíwaz, amid the joy and din  
 Of minstrelsy, forgot his own chagrin.

v. 632

## § 47

*How Siyáwush played at Polo*

Now when the bright sun made the distance clear,  
 And showed its face from heaven to all the land,  
 The prince went from his palace to the Ground  
 To play at polo. Garsíwaz came up  
 And drove the ball, which Siyáwush pursued  
 And caught it fairly with the polo-stick,  
 While his opponent only found the dust.  
 The ball struck by the prince was seen no more:  
 Thou wouldst have said: "The sky hath drawn it up!"  
 Then to his eager followers he said:  
 "I leave the ball and sticks and Ground to you."

Whenas the warriors came upon the Ground  
 The Íránians in the tussle took the ball,  
 While Siyáwush rejoiced at their success,  
 And looked as 'twere a noble cypress-tree.  
 He bade a golden throne be set and contests  
 With javelins to take place, both princes sitting  
 Upon the throne to watch the combatants.

The cavaliers rushed on the Ground like dust  
And, dart in hand, began to strive for honour.  
Then Garsíwaz spake thus to Siyáwush:—  
“O king renowned, the Memory of kings!  
Thy prowess is still greater than thy birth:  
Vouchsafe to let the Turkmans witness it:  
Display before them just for once what thou  
Can'st do in javelin-play and archery.”

V. 633

The prince, who laid his hand upon his breast  
At this, arose and mounted on his horse.  
They bound together coats of mail five thick—  
Coats any one of which would tire a man—  
And set them up at one end of the Ground,  
While all the troops stood looking. Siyáwush  
Took up a royal spear wherewith his father  
Fought in Mázandarán and slaughtered lions.  
He went upon the Ground, this spear in hand,  
And plied his reins like some mad elephant.  
He pierced the coats of mail and bore them off,  
The links and joints alike had given way.  
The charge thus made he raised his spear erect  
And flung the coats of mail about at will.  
Then valiant Garsíwaz and other horsemen  
Went on the Ground with their long javelins,  
And many gathered round those coats of mail,  
But found not one whose fastenings had not yielded.  
The prince then called for four shields of Gílán,  
With two cuirasses also of bright steel,  
And likewise for his bow and poplar shafts.  
With six thrust through his belt and three in hand  
He set another on his bow and gripped  
His saddle firmly. Then in sight of all  
He shot the ten shafts, piercing every time  
The shields and both cuirasses. Old and young  
Applauded and invoked the name of God.  
“Thou hast, O prince!” said Garsíwaz to him,

"No equal in Írán or in Túrán.

Come now! Let us two go upon the Ground  
Before this company, there let us grasp  
Each other's leathern belt as warriors  
Would do in battle. I have not a peer  
Among the Turkmans, thou wilt see few steeds  
Like mine, and thou in the Íránian host  
Art matchless both in prowess and in stature.  
If I shall take thee from thy charger's back,  
And throw thee to the ground, acknowledge me  
Superior both in prowess and in might,  
While if thou layest me upon the earth  
I wheel no more upon the battlefield."

V. 634

But Siyáwush made answer: "Speak not thus.  
Thou art a prince, a Lion of the fray;  
Besides thy charger is a king to mine,  
Thy helmet is Ázargashasp to me.  
Make choice of some one else out of Túrán  
To strive with me, but not by way of fight."

Then Garsíwaz: "O seeker of renown!  
No harm will come of pastime such as this."

But Siyáwush replied: "It is not well:  
I cannot fight thee. Two opposed in sport  
Fight on in earnest; anger filleth them  
Although they smile. Thou art the monarch's brother,  
And tread'st the moon beneath thy horse's hoofs;  
I will perform thy bidding but not break  
Our good relations by an act like this.  
Call from thy friends some Lion of the fray,  
Let him be mounted on this swift-paced steed,  
And if thou art resolved that I should fight,  
And lay the heads of proud ones in the dust,  
I will endeavour not to be disgraced  
Before thy presence, O illustrious prince!"

Ambitious Garsíwaz was flattered, smiled,  
And thus addressed the Turkmans: "Noble men!

Who is there fain to make his mark on earth ?  
Who will be matched with Siyáwush and lay  
The chief of all the nobles in the dust !”

The Turkmans heard him and their lips were locked.  
At length Gurwí the son of Zira said :—  
“ I am prepared to fight if Siyáwush  
Hath no antagonist.”

The prince's face  
Was full of frowns and sternness at the words,  
But Garsíwaz said unto him : “ O prince !  
No warrior in our host can match Gurwí.”

Then Siyáwush : “ I hold it but a trifle  
To fight with any noble but thyself :  
Two warriors should be chosen out of these  
To strive with me upon the battlefield.”

There was another noble hight Damúr,  
Who had no equal in Túrán in strength.  
He, when he heard the words of Siyáwush,  
Came and made ready swift as smoke for fight.  
They wheeled about, and Siyáwush began  
By snatching at the girdle of Gurwí,  
And holding by the buckle lifted him  
And flung him on the plain, but used no mace  
Or lasso. Then he turned upon Damúr  
And, catching him about the neck and body  
In firm embrace, unhorsed him with such ease  
That all the chiefs were lost in wonderment.  
The prince thus bore him safe to Garsíwaz ;  
Thou wouldst have said : “ He carrieth a bird !”  
Then, having lighted down and disengaged,  
He sat down laughing on the golden throne ;  
But Garsíwaz was wroth at that exploit ;  
His heart was sullen and his cheek was pale.

They hied them homeward from their golden seats,  
“ Raised,” thou hadst said, “ o'er Saturn in the ascendant,”  
And all the famous men and fortunate



v. 636

Assembled for a week with harp and wine.  
 Upon the eighth day they prepared to go,  
 And Siyáwush in spite of what he knew  
 Yet wrote a letter to Afrásiyáb,  
 Full of submission and kind interest,  
 And gave unstinted gifts to Garsíwaz;  
 Anon the Turkmans left that noble city  
 Rejoicing, and conversed about the land  
 And most accomplished prince; but Garsíwaz  
 The vengeful said: "Mishap hath come to us,  
 For from Írán the king hath summoned one  
 Who causeth us to sit in blood disgraced.  
 Fierce Lions like Damúr and like Gurwí—  
 Both battle-loving warriors—became  
 Thus abject, helpless, and contemptible  
 When clutched by one foul-hearted cavalier.  
 He will push matters further, and I fail  
 To see in our king's actions head or tail."

## § 48

*How Garsíwaz returned and spake Evil before Afrásiyáb*

He went thus minded to the Turkman court  
 Without repose or sleep. Afrásiyáb  
 Asked many questions which his brother answered  
 And gave the letter; this the smiling king  
 Perused with joy. The famous noble marked  
 The brightened features of Afrásiyáb,  
 And sunset found him all revenge and anguish.  
 All night he writhed and when its pitch-hued robe  
 Was riven by clear day his vengeful head  
 Still slept not, and he sought Afrásiyáb.  
 They sat and talked in private. Garsíwaz  
 Said to his brother: "Siyáwush, O king!  
 Hath wholly changed, the envoys of Káuś

Come often secretly, he correspondeth  
 With Rúm and Chín, and drinketh to his father.  
 Moreover he hath gathered many troops,  
 And soon will vex the king's soul. Had not Túr  
 Beeome so fierce he had not wronged Íraj,  
 But now our hearts resemble fire and water  
 Opposed; thou wouldest, but in vain, unite them,  
 And keep the tempest hidden out of sight.  
 Had I withheld this trouble from thy knowledge  
 I should have smirehed my name before the world."

V. 637

The king was grieved and said to Garsíwaz:—  
 "The bond of blood between us moveth thee.  
 We will take counsel with ourself three days  
 For more assurance; if the case be clear  
 It shall be thy part to undo the coil."

The fourth day Garsíwaz appeared at court  
 With helmet on and tightly girded loins.  
 The monareh ealled him to an interview,  
 Talked much about the case of Siyáwush,  
 And said: "O thou memorial of Pashang!  
 Whom have I in the world at hand but thee?  
 I must diselose the secret of my mind;  
 Observe what thoughts oecur to thine. My heart  
 Was troubled at that evil dream, my brain  
 Affected somewhat, yet I kept from war,  
 And Siyáwush for his part hurt me not.  
 When he farewelled the throne of might he made  
 My love the weft across his wisdom's warp.  
 He was obedient and I used him well.  
 I gave to him a province and my treasure,  
 But kept my griefs and sorrows for mine own.  
 I bound him to me by the ties of blood,  
 Foregoing thoughts of vengeance on Írán,  
 And did not grudge my treasures or my child,  
 But trusted him with both my precious Eyes.  
 Now, after all these pains and benefits,

V. 638

And sacrifice of province, crown, and wealth,  
 For me to purpose ill to Siyáwush  
 Would raise no little outcry. If I do  
 An injury however slight to him  
 The mighty men will cry out shame on me,  
 And I shall be a butt for every one.  
 Of beasts the lion hath the sharpest teeth,  
 His heart is not afraid of scimitars,  
 And if a whelp of his shall be aggrieved  
 He will lay all the meadow desolate ;  
 Moreover if we persecute the guiltless  
 How shall the Judge of sun and moon approve ?  
 I know none else that I can take to me,  
 Yet now I will dismiss him to his father.  
 So, if he seeketh throne and signet-ring,  
 He will not make our coasts the scene of strife."

But Garsíwaz : " O king ! treat not so lightly  
 This grave affair. If he departeth home  
 He will bring desolation on our coasts,  
 For when an alien is made a kinsman  
 He learneth all thy secrets great and small.  
 A sage once spake a proverb as to this :—  
 ' Domestic storms that burst externally  
 Will prove but travail and distress to thee,  
 And dissipate wealth, fame, and family.'

V. 639 Dost thou not know that he who reareth leopards  
 Will get no recompense but pain and strife ?"

Afrásiyáb, when he had mused awhile  
 And thought that Garsíwaz had spoken rightly,  
 Repenting of his own advice and conduct,  
 And owning that his policy had failed,  
 Thus answered Garsíwaz : " From this affair  
 I see no good appear in any way.  
 Let us be patient till the turning sky  
 Shall make its aspects known. In everything  
 Delay is better than precipitance ;

Wait till the sun hath shone on this awhile ;  
 I shall discern God's purpose, and to whom  
 The bright cheek of revolving heaven is turned,  
 And then if I recall him to the court  
 I shall discover what his secret is.  
 All will no doubt be clear in course of time,  
 And if his villainy be manifest,  
 So that my heart must needs be pitiless,  
 No one will blame me afterward, for naught  
 But evil fitly recompenseth evil."

Then vengeful Garsíwaz : " Discerning king,  
 Whose words are righteous ! Siyáwush possesseth  
 Grace, stature, maces, swords, and god-like hands ;  
 He will not come to court without a host,  
 But make both sun and moon turn dark to thee.  
 He is much changed, his crown is raised to heaven,  
 And Farangís thou wouldst not recognize,  
 But say : ' This world can give her nothing more.'  
 Thy troops will all go over to his side,  
 And when there is no flock there is no shepherd.  
 An army having seen a king like him,  
 So generous, so beaming, and so wise,  
 Thenceforth would never have thee for their king ;  
 The Ram would be his throne and thine the Fish.  
 Moreover wilt thou call on him to quit  
 The noble city and the prosperous seat  
 That he hath built, and bid him : ' Be my slave,  
 Content with meanness and obscurity ?'  
 None seeth lions couch with elephants,  
 Or flames upon the surface of a stream.  
 If one should take a lion's whelp unsuckled  
 As yet, should bring it up on milk and sugar,  
 And nurse it on his bosom constantly,  
 It will revert to nature when full-grown  
 And fear no furious elephant's assault."

V. 640

The monarch's heart was straitened at his words ;

He grew despondent, anxious, and distressed,  
 But judged it best to pause, for prudent men  
 Win in the end, while those of windy pate  
 Obtain no praise. A wise man spake this saw :—  
 “ A tempest that hath not been unforeseen  
 Thou mayst encounter with untroubled mien,  
 While Feather-brains will be in evil plight  
 Albeit cypress-tall and men of might.”

Unrest and talk went on ; their hearts were full  
 Of vengeance for the wrongs of ancient days,  
 For ever and anon came Garsíwaz—  
 The villain full of malice—to the king,  
 Concocting lying tales of Siyáwush,  
 And stirring the Túránian monarch's heart,  
 Until he was possessed by care and vengeance.  
 One day the king in private conference  
 With Garsíwaz declared his purposes,  
 And said : “ Thou must go hence. Hold intercourse  
 With Siyáwush for long, then speak him fairly  
 From me, and say : ‘ Thou in thy happy home  
 Hast no desire to look on any one ;  
 But my heart resteth not for love of thee.  
 Arise ! Come hither, thou and Farangís,  
 Awhile, because we yearn to look upon thee,  
 With thy shrewd mind so full of excellence.  
 We too have game upon our hills, we too  
 Quaff wine and milk in cups of emerald.  
 Thus let us pass a season and be glad,  
 And, when thou longest for thy prosperous city,  
 Go thou with singing and with happiness.  
 Why are the wine and cup denied to us ?  
 Think not about thy throne of majesty,  
 But straitly gird thy loins and come to me.’ ”

## § 49

*How Garsíwaz returned to Siyáwush*

The crafty, vengeful Garsíwaz made ready.  
 When he drew near Siyáwushgird he bade  
 A fluent speaker : "Go to Siyáwush  
 And say: 'Famed son of an aspiring sire!  
 By our king's life and head, and by the life,  
 The head, and royal crown of Sháh Káús,  
 Leave not thy throne to meet me on the way,  
 Because thou art so great in dignity,  
 In fortune, Grace, crown, throne, and lineage,  
 That every wind should have to gird its loins  
 To make thee quit that royal dwelling-place.'"

The messenger approaching kissed the ground  
 And told the words of Garsíwaz; the heart  
 Of Siyáwush was pained, he sat and mused  
 Awhile, then said: "Here is some mystery!  
 I know not what my good friend Garsíwaz  
 Hath said about me to Afrásiyáb."

When Garsíwaz arrived the prince went out  
 Afoot to him, asked of the king's affairs,  
 Of throne and crown and host, and Garsíwaz  
 Then gave the message which made Siyáwush  
 Rejoice, and thus he said: "For his dear sake  
 I would not turn away from swords of steel.  
 Lo! I will bind my girdle on to go,  
 And link my rein to thine; but we will tarry  
 Within this pleasance arabesqued with gold  
 Three days and hold a revel, for this world  
 Is fleeting by in pain and toil. Alas  
 For him whose little life is passed in sorrow!"

Revengeful Garsíwaz writhed when he heard  
 The prudent prince's words: "If Siyáwush,"  
 He thought, "departeth with me to the king,

With his astuteness and his lion-strength  
 The prince will trample on my bow, my words  
 Will tarnish, and the king will deem my plan  
 A fraud ; I must devise a scheme to urge  
 The heart of Siyáwush to evil courses."

He fixed an earnest gaze on Siyáwush  
 In silence, while his eyes shed tears of gall  
 To further his intent. The prince beheld  
 Those swimming eyes as of one greatly moved,  
 And gently said : " My brother ! what is this ?  
 Is it a nameless grief, or hath the king  
 By his unkindness caused thy tears to flow ?  
 Lo ! I will go along with thee and fight  
 Thy battle with the monarch of Túrán,  
 Will find out why he useth thee so ill,  
 And treateth thee as his inferior,  
 While if it is an open enemy  
 That causeth thee insufferable grief  
 And trouble, lo ! I am thy friend in all,  
 And will provide thee with the means to fight.  
 But if the royal favour is bedimmed,  
 Not by thy fault but through some slanderer's lies,  
 Or one hath ousted thee, confide in me,  
 That I may make all well, assuage thy griefs,  
 And purge the monarch of his faults herein."

V. 643

But Garsíwaz replied : " O man of fame !  
 It is no question with me of the king,  
 Nor am I troubled by a foe. My courage  
 And wealth dispense with schemes. I mused on  
 questions  
 Of race, and called to mind true tales of old ;  
 The wrong began with Túr who lost the Grace,  
 And made feud with Íraj, who did not brawl.  
 Beneath Afrásiyáb and Minúchihr  
 Túrán hath been like water and Írán  
 Like fire ; they mingled not but broke away

From wisdom's bonds ; Afrásiyáb is worse  
 Than Túr ; this wild bull still is in his hide.  
 In truth thou knowest not his evil moods,  
 But wait until a little time hath passed.  
 First judge him by the guiltless Ighrías,  
 His brother in full blood, whom he destroyed  
 With his own hand in very wantonness,  
 While afterward full many a famous man  
 Was slaughtered by him for no fault at all.  
 My chief anxiety is now for thee,  
 For thou art shrewd of heart and stout of frame,  
 And, since thou camest to our land, hast done  
 No wrong to any, but adorned the world  
 With wisdom, seeking right and manliness.  
 Malignant Áhriman, who parteth hearts,  
 Hath seared the king's through thee, and it is all  
 Revenge and grief at thee ! God's will I know not,  
 But thou dost know me as thy friend, thy partner  
 In weal and woe, and thou must not suspect  
 Hereafter that I knew of all this coil.  
 I therefore tell thee of the monarch's ease,  
 Which it had been a fault in me to hide."

V. 644

Then Siyáwush : "Have no concern hereat,  
 The Maker of the world is mine ally ;  
 I did hope otherwise than that the king  
 Would turn my day to night ; had he been wroth  
 With me he had not raised me over others,  
 Or given me a province, crown, and throne,  
 Domain, his daughter, treasure, and a host.  
 Now will I go with thee to court and make  
 His dim moon shine again. Where'er truth shineth  
 The light of falsehood waneth. I will show him  
 This heart of mine, a heart that doth outshine  
 The sun in heaven. Be happy then, reject  
 Suspicion, for whoever suffereth  
 That dragon's breath departeth from God's way."



But Garsíwaz made answer: "My dear friend!  
 He is much changed. So long as heaven shall turn  
 He will be harsh and wear a frowning face.  
 Not e'en the wisest knoweth of the wiles  
 That lift on his horizon. Thou thyself,  
 With all thy learning and thy prudent heart,  
 Thy towering stature and high purposes,  
 Discernest not 'twixt artifice and love:  
 May no ill fortune ever come to thee!  
 He dealt in charms and spells with thee, and sewed  
 The eyes of wisdom up by his devices.  
 First, when he named thee son-in-law, thy joy  
 Was ill advised. Next when he sent thee forth  
 He made a feast for thee, and called his lords,  
 In hope that thou wouldst take some liberty,  
 And give occasion to the world to talk.  
 Besides thou art not closer unto him  
 By any ties than prudent Ighrías,  
 Whom he cut down, and filled the nobles' hearts  
 With terror. Since his purposes are clear,  
 Accept the fact; trust not the ties of blood.  
 Now like the shining sun have I displayed  
 My thoughts, my trade, and wit. Thou hast rejected  
 A father in Írán, and in Túrán  
 Hast builded cities, yielding to the words  
 And sharing in the troubles of the king.  
 It is an ill tree that thy hand hath planted,  
 With poisonous fruit and leaves of colocynth."

He spake deceitfully with running eyes  
 And sighing lips, while Siyáwush in tears,  
 Regarding him with wonder, called to mind  
 His own sad fate that heaven's love should cease,  
 And that though young his life was well nigh sped.  
 His heart was pained, his cheeks turned pale, he sighed  
 In heaviness of soul, and said: "I find not  
 That I deserve requital for ill done,

For nobody hath heard a fault of mine  
 In word or deed. Good sooth if I have squandered      V. 646  
 His treasure my heart is wrung at his displeasure,  
 But come what may I never will transgress  
 His wishes or commands. Now let me go  
 With thee, without an escort, and discover  
 The reason of the anger of the king."

Then Garsíwaz replied: "Aspiring one!  
 It is not well to go. No need to walk  
 Thus into fire, or to expose thyself  
 To breakers; 'tis but rushing into danger,  
 And sending smiling destiny to sleep;  
 I surely shall suffice to mediate  
 And fling cold water on the flames; but write  
 A letter telling all things fair or foul,  
 And if I find him free from vengeful thoughts,  
 And in a lucid interval of good,  
 I will dispatch a cavalier and make  
 Thy gloomy counsels bright. I trust in God,  
 Who knoweth all things, that Afrásiyáb  
 Will turn to good and shun perverse, bad ways:  
 But if I find him rash and obstinate  
 I likewise will dispatch a camel-post  
 In haste; then make thee ready instantly.  
 Illustrious monarchs and their realms are near  
 At hand, it is but six score leagues to Chín,  
 And only seventeen score to Írán,  
 Where all are friendly and prepared to serve thee.  
 On that side too thou hast a yearning father,  
 A host attached to thee, and loyal cities.  
 Dispatch a lengthy letter to all parts,  
 And haste to get thee ready."

Siyáwush

Gave credence to the words of Garsíwaz,  
 So much was his shrewd intellect asleep,  
 And answered: "I will do as thou hast said,

V. 647

And not transgress thy counsel and advice.  
 Make intercession for me with the king :  
 And show me the right course in everything."

## § 50

*The Letter of Siyávuush to Afrásiyáb*

A ready scribe was called to whom the prince  
 Gave full instructions. First invoking God—  
 The Assuager of His servant's grief—he spake  
 The praise of wisdom, blessed the king, and said :—  
 "O king victorious and fortunate !  
 May time ne'er prove thine only monument.  
 Thou calledst me and I rejoiced thereat :  
 May thy seat be amongst the archimages.  
 Moreover thou didst summon Farangís,  
 And fill her heart with love and loyalty  
 But Farangís is ailing at this present  
 With weakness and the loss of appetite,  
 She cannot rise and will not let me leave  
 Her side (I see her lying 'twixt two worlds)  
 Although my heart desired to look on thee,  
 And thy words gave new lustre to my spirit.  
 When Farangís is well she shall become  
 The ransom of the monarch of Túrán ;  
 Her sufferings are also mine excuse,  
 For I am privy to her pains and griefs."

He gave the letter, when it had been sealed,  
 At once to evil-natured Garsíwaz,  
 Who boldly made request for three fleet steeds,  
 And rode without a halt both day and night.  
 He traversed in three days the long, hard road  
 O'er hill and vale, and on the fourth day reached  
 The monarch's court, a villain bent on ill.  
 Afrásiyáb, on seeing him thus pressed,

And full of hurry, questioned him at large:—

“Why hast thou come in haste,” the monarch said,

“Why didst thou make a journey of such length?”

Then Garsíwaz replied: “When fortune loureth .

It is not well to put thy trust therein.

Now Siyáwush showed no regard for me,

Nor even came to meet me on the way,

Would hear no words, would not peruse thy letter,

But set me on my knees below his throne.

He had much correspondence with Írán,

And kept his city's portals shut on us.

What with a host from Rúm and one from Chín

There is a constant bruit within the land.

Unless thou actest promptly thou wilt have

Naught left but wind. While thou art hesitating

He will attack thee, and obtain both realms,

For should he lead his army toward Írán

What man would dare come forth to challenge him?

My purpose in forewarning thee is this

That thou mayst suffer by no act of his.”

## § 51

### *How Afrásiyáb came to fight with Siyáwush*

Whenas Afrásiyáb had heard these words

The feelings of old days returned to him.

His heart grew full of fire, his head of wind,

He could not answer Garsíwaz for wrath,

But in his fury bade pipes, cymbals, trumpets,

And Indian bells be sounded, and troops summoned.

He flung away the letter all unread,

And, through the words that wicked Garsíwaz

Had spoken, set another tree of feud.

Now, while the guileful Garsíwaz was toiling

Upon the saddle, Siyáwush in anguish

Went pale and trembling to his ladies' bower.  
 "Chief of the lion-clutch!" said Farangís,  
 "Why is thy favour changed?"

"My fair!" he answered,  
 "Mine honour hath been blackened in Túrán.  
 I know not how to answer thee, for I  
 Am all confounded at the case myself;  
 But, if the words of Garsíwaz be true,  
 My share is point and not circumference."

Then Farangís plucked at her tresses, rent  
 With filbert-nails her cheeks of cercis-bloom,  
 Blood drenched her locks of musky hyacinth,  
 Her heart was full of fire, her face all tears,  
 Which fell in showers upon the silver hills.  
 She bit with pearly teeth her tulip lips,  
 She tore her hair out by the roots, and wept  
 For what Afrásiyáb had said and done.  
 She said to Siyáwush: "O noble king!  
 What wilt thou do? Make haste to tell me all.  
 Thy father is enraged, thou durst not speak  
 About Írán; 'tis longsome hence to Rúm,  
 And thou wouldst be ashamed to go to Chín.  
 Whom wilt thou take to be thy refuge now?  
 Thy refuge is the Lord of sun and moon."

He answered her: "My good friend Garsíwaz  
 Will come with joyful tidings from the king,  
 Who surely will forgive through tenderness,  
 And turn his vengeance into clemency."

He put his trust in God while thus he spake,  
 But his hard fortune made his heart still ache.

## § 52

### *How Siyáwush had a Dream*

For three days Siyáwush wept bitterly  
 By reason of this treacherous turn of fate.

The fourth night as the prince lay fast asleep,  
 Clasped to the breast of moon-faced Farangís,  
 He shuddered, woke in fright, and cried as 'twere  
 A maddened elephant. The fair one clung  
 To him, exclaiming: "For love's sake, O king!  
 What aileth thee?"

When he called out they lit  
 The lamps and kindled aloë-wood before him,  
 And ambergris. The lady asked again:—  
 "O prudent prince! what sawest thou in sleep?"

Then Siyáwush made answer: "Tell not thou  
 This dream of mine to any of the folk.  
 My dream was this, O silvern Cypress-tree!  
 I saw a mighty river stretching far,  
 And on the further bank a mount in flames;  
 The river-side was held by men in mail.  
 On one side was the swiftly rolling fire—  
 A fire whereby Siyáwushgird was burned.  
 Here fire, there water, while Afrásiyáb  
 Stood right before me with his elephants.  
 He looked upon me with a louring face,  
 And blew the already fiercely burning flames."

The lady answered him: "It bodeh well,  
 Unless thou slumberest for this one night."

Then Siyáwush assembled all his guards  
 And posted them about the court and hall;  
 He mounted in full armour, sword in hand,  
 And sent out scouts upon the road to Gang.  
 Whenas the more part of the night had passed  
 There came a scout on horseback from the waste,  
 Who said: "Afrásiyáb with many troops  
 Appareth in the distance, pressing forward."

Then came a messenger from Garsíwaz,  
 Who said: "Gird up thy loins to save thy life.  
 My words have proved to be of no avail,  
 I see black smoke although I see no fire:

Consider now what course thou shouldest take,  
And how thou mayest best dispose thy troops."

But Siyáwush, who knew not the design,  
Believed in Garsíwaz. Then Farangís  
Said : " O wise king ! take no account of us,  
But mount upon a courser fleet of foot,  
And trust not to the country of Túrán.  
I fain would see thee in security  
Abiding here, but save thyself and flee."

### § 53

#### *The Parting Words of Siyáwush to Farangís*

He said to Farangís : " That dream of mine  
Hath come to pass : my glory is bedimmed.  
For me existence draweth to an end,  
The misery of bitter days hath come.  
My palace may reach Saturn, yet death's poison  
Hath to be drunk ; though life should be prolonged  
Twelve hundred years dark dust is our last home ;  
Some are the food of lions, some of vultures  
Or eagles. Nobody possessed of wisdom  
Expecteth any brightness from the night.  
This is the fifth month of thy pregnancy  
With our illustrious and growing babe :  
This precious Tree of thine will bring forth Fruit,  
A glorious monarch ; name him Kai Khusrau,  
And in thy sorrowing find peace in him.  
None from the bright sun to the darksome dust,  
From gnat's wing to the mighty elephant's foot,  
And from the well-spring to the river Nile,  
Can scape the justice of All-holy God.  
Túránian soil will be my grave, and none  
Will say : ' His dust repositeth in Írán.'  
May not men call this old world new whose sky

So quickly altereth? My jocund fortune  
 Will sleep henceforward by the king's command.  
 They will strike off this guiltless head of mine,  
 And lay my diadem in my heart's blood.  
 For me no bier, shroud, grave, or weeping people,  
 But like a stranger I shall lie in dust,  
 A trunk beheaded by the scimitar;  
 While thee, thy head unveiled, thy body bare,  
 The guards shall drag in shame along the road.  
 Then will Pírán the chieftain reach the court,  
 Plead with thy sire to spare thy blameless life,  
 And bear thee to his palace in thine anguish.  
 There in the house of that old, honoured man  
 Wilt thou bring forth illustrious Kai Khusrau,  
 And there will come a saviour from Írán,  
 One with his loins girt up by God's command,  
 Who will convey thee and thy son in haste  
 Toward the Jíhún. Thy son will have the throne,  
 And rule o'er fowl and fish. A host will come  
 For vengeance from Írán and shake the world.  
 Such is the process of the fickle sky,  
 Which cottoneth to no man out of love!  
 Oh! what a mighty host will don their mail  
 To vindicate mine honour! Battle-shouts  
 Will rise, and Kai Khusrau will vex the age;  
 Then Rustam's Rakhsh will trample earth, despising  
 Túránian folk, and thou wilt see no vengeance  
 Ta'en for me till the Resurrection-day  
 Save by the mace and trenchant scimitar."

V. 653

The noble hero turned himself to her,  
 Bade her farewell, and said: "Fair spouse! I go;  
 Be strengthened by my words, and think no more  
 Of luxury and throne."

He left the palace,  
 Heart-broken, pale, lamenting sore. O world!  
 I wot not why thou nuturest men if they



Whom thou hast nurtured are to be thy prey !

The lady tore her cheeks, plucked out her hair,  
Sent two streams pouring from her eyes, and hung  
Upon him as he spake the words of woe.

With cheeks and eyes which ran with his heart's blood  
He sought the stables of his Arab steeds,  
And led forth from its stall night-hued Bihzád,  
Which overtook the wind in days of battle.  
He groaned, he clasped its head upon his breast,  
And took the halter and the headstall off.  
Long while he whispered in his charger's ear,  
And said : " Be prudent, have to do with none.  
When to avenge me Kai Khusrau shall come  
It is on thee that he must put the bridle,  
So now renounce the stable once for all,  
For thou shalt carry him to his revenge.  
Be thou his charger, trample on the world,  
And with thy hoofs sweep foemen from the earth."

V. 654

He hamstrung all the other steeds and slashed  
Their legs like rushes with his scimitar.  
As for the riches in the treasury,  
His palace, and rose-garden, his brocade,  
Dínárs, pearls, jewelry, the diadem,  
Sword, belt, and helm, he burned and wasted them.

## § 54

### *How Siyáwush was taken by Afrásiyáb*

This done, he with his chiefs marched toward Írán,  
Lost in amazement at his evil fortune,  
And with his cheeks suffused by tears of blood  
Fared half a league then met Afrásiyáb,  
Beheld an armoured host with sword and mace,  
And, buckling up his mail, thought : " Garsíwaz  
Hath told the truth, a truth too evident !"

Now Siyáwush feared for his life what time  
 The monarch of Túrán drew nigh. His troops  
 Partook his fears. The Turkmans occupied  
 All hills and roads, and each host eyed the other,  
 For hate had been a stranger to their hearts.  
 Through fear of Siyáwush the Turkman horsemen  
 Sought not to fight but hung back cautiously.  
 With things at such a pass the Íránians cried  
 To Siyáwush: "O monarch of the world!  
 Why should they slay us with impunity  
 And drag us o'er the plain? Think this no trifle  
 But let them witness the Íránians' prowess."

V. 655

Then Siyáwush: "This is not well, for we  
 Have neither room nor force to fight. To offer  
 My sovereign battle would disgrace my stock.  
 The turning sky is bent on my destruction,  
 Though guiltless, by the hands of wicked men,  
 And I can make no bold attack to-day,  
 For none can strive with God. What said the sage,  
 That man of prudence? 'Brave not adverse fate.'"

Then to Afrásiyáb said Siyáwush:—  
 "O full of virtues, great and glorious king!  
 Why hast thou come to battle with thy host?  
 Why wouldst thou slay me in mine innocence?  
 Thou wilt embroil the forces of two realms,  
 And fill the earth and age with malisons."

Said Garsiwaz the insensate: "Do these words  
 Befit thee? If thou art so innocent  
 Why hast thou come thus mail-clad to the king?  
 Men come not to receive their sovereigns  
 With gifts of bow and mail."

Then Siyáwush  
 On hearing answered: "Villain! through thy words  
 I left the right path in my heedlessness.  
 Thou saidst: 'The monarch is enraged at thee!'  
 Now guiltless men in thousands will be slaughtered

V. 656

Through what thou saidst, but punishment will come  
At last. As thou hast sown so shalt thou reap.”  
Then to the king: “Let not thine anger burn.  
It is no jest for thee to shed my blood,  
And wage a war against the innocent.  
Give not thyself and kingdom to the winds  
For what that miscreant Garsíwaz hath said.”

But Garsíwaz the double-dealer watched  
And, while the prince was speaking to the king,  
Grew wroth and cried: “O king! what aileth thee?  
Why shouldst thou hold a parley with thy foe?”

Now when the king had heard what Garsíwaz  
Had spoken, and it being then broad day,  
He bade his soldiers draw their trenchant swords,  
And raise a shout like Resurrection-morn;  
But Siyáwush, still constant to his pledge,  
Put not his hand to sword and javelin,  
And let not one of his companions  
Advance a foot to battle with the foe.  
Malevolent and fell Afrásiyáb  
Then wrought upon that chieftain of Írán  
Gross outrage, saying: “Give them to the sword,  
And float a ship in blood upon the plain.”

The Íránian army was a thousand strong,  
All men of name and doughty warriors,  
Who perished on the field and made the earth  
Like tulips with their gore. Amid the mellay  
v. 657 The prince fell from his sable steed, sore wounded  
By shaft and dart. Gurwí the son of Zira  
Bound both his hands, as he was lying senseless,  
Behind his back firm as a rock, while others  
Placed on his neck a yoke. The blood ran down  
Those cheeks of cercis-bloom; he ne’er had seen  
A day like that! The executioners  
Urged him and dragged him on the road afoot  
With troops around him toward Siyáwushgird.

Afrásiyáb commanded, saying: "Take him  
Beside the road and let him be beheaded  
On some bare spot where grasses never grow,  
And pour his blood upon the burning earth.  
Let there be no delay and have no fears."

The soldiers said: "What fault hast thou discerned?  
Wilt thou not say, O king! how he hath wronged thee  
That thou shouldst steep thy hands thus in his blood?  
Why wilt thou slay a man for whom the crown  
And ivory throne will weep with bitterness?  
Plant not in times of happiness a tree  
Whose fruitage fortune will convert to bane."

But Garsíwaz, that man of evil note,  
Was in his folly on the murderers' side,  
And fain would shed the blood of Siyáwush  
Through dudgeon ever since the day of contest.<sup>1</sup>  
There was a warrior younger than Pírán,  
His brother and his noble peer, by name  
Pílsam, a bright, accomplished youth, who reasoned  
Thus with the king: "The fruitage of this shoot  
Is pain and grief. I have heard sages say,  
And wisdom too agreeth therewithal:—  
'How can deliberation cause regret?'  
And: 'Reason is the medicine of the angry.'  
And: 'Haste and ill are works of Áhriman—  
Pain and remorse to body and to soul.'

V. 658

It is not reason to behead thy subject  
So recklessly; keep him in bonds till time  
Shall give its teaching; when the breath of wisdom  
Shall breathe upon thy heart thou mayst behead him,  
But give no order now, be not in haste,  
For hastiness is rooted in regret.  
It is not fit to sever, O wise king!  
A head whose covering will be the crown;  
And if thou shalt behead a guiltless man,

<sup>1</sup> See § 47.

One whom Káuś and Rustam will avenge—  
 The Sháh's own son whom Rustam hath brought up  
 And nourished fondly—we shall see the wrong  
 Revenged, and thou wilt suffer for this day.  
 Bethink thee of the sword with flashing blade,  
 The sword whereby the world is filled with blood,  
 And those famed leaders of the Íránians,  
 Whose wrath confoundeth earth, as Fariburz,  
 The son of Kai Káuś, the ravening Lion,  
 Whom none e'er yet saw satiate of fight ;  
 That hero too and snorting Elephant,  
 Great Rustam, in whose eyes a host is vile.  
 Then will Gúdarz, Gurgín, Farhád, and Tús  
 Make fast the drums upon the elephants' backs,  
 Gird up their loins to take revenge, and fill  
 The wide campaign with spearmen. I, my peers,  
 And our best warriors cannot countervail.  
 Good sooth Pírán will come at dawn, the king  
 Will also hear what he hath got to say,  
 And seeing that there is no urgency  
 Dispread not such a carpet of revenge  
 Upon the world. Enjoin not haste herein,  
 For it will be the ruin of Túrán."

Afrásiyáb was softened by these words,  
 But Garsíwaz his brother had no shame,  
 And said : "Check not thy purpose, man of wisdom !  
 Because of this youth's talk. The plain is full  
 Of vultures feeding on the Íránian dead,  
 And if thou fearest vengeance there is cause.  
 Should Siyáwush cry out earth would appear  
 All mace and scimitar from Rúm and Chín.  
 Hath he not done thee wrong enough that thou  
 Shouldst listen weakly to what others say ?  
 The snake's tail thou hast crushed and bruised its  
     head ;  
 Now wilt thou deck its body with brocade ?

If thou shalt spare his life I will depart  
To some retreat and perish."

Then Damúr  
Went with Gurwí, both writhing with affright,  
Before the monarch of Túrán and said :—  
"Mind not the blood of Siyáwush so much,  
Because 'tis vile to rest with all to do,  
But hearken to the words of Garsíwaz,  
The counsellor, and sweep away thy foe.  
Since thou hast laid the snare and captured him  
Slay him at once, and tarnish not thy glory  
Through folly. Holding him is not enough;  
'Tis needful that we break our foemen's hearts.  
Thou hast destroyed his troops! Mark how the prince  
Will now regard thee. Had none injured thee  
Aforetime water could have purged this fault;  
Now policy would have him seen no more  
At large or in restraint."

V. 660

The king replied :—  
"I have myself beheld no fault in him;  
Albeit astrologers declare that ill  
Will come to me through him, and if I shed  
His blood revenge will raise dust in Túrán  
And dim the sun. That day will daze the wise.  
Misfortune is upon me and my realm;  
Affliction, pain, and bondage are at hand,  
Yet freeing him is worse than slaying him,  
Though slaying him will cause me pain and anguish."  
But neither sage nor villain can make sure  
What new expedient heaven may have in store.

## § 55

*How Farangís bewailed herself before Afrásiyáb*

The news reached Farangís, who tore her cheeks  
And came afoot before Afrásiyáb,

Girt with a bloody cord, her moon-like face  
 Besmirched with blood ; she came in fear and trembling,  
 And, as she scattered dust upon her head,  
 Exclaimed : " O monarch full of excellence !  
 Why wilt thou bring me to such misery ?  
 Why hast thou wrapped thy heart up in deccit ?  
 Dost thou not from thy height perceive the abyss ?  
 Take not a monarch's and a guiltless head ;  
 The Judge of sun and moon will disapprove.  
 When Siyáwush departed from Írán  
 He did thee homage—thee of all the world—  
 Gave umbrage to the Sháh, left treasures, crown,  
 And throne to make thee his support and shelter.  
 What hast thou seen in him to make thee quit  
 The path of right ? No man bcheadeth kings  
 And long retaineth his own sovereignty.  
 Wrong not my blameless self too, for the world  
 Is fleeting and is full of sobs and sighs.  
 One man though crowned it casteth into prison,  
 One who ne'er had a crown it maketh king ;  
 Yet fate hath laid the grave's grip on them both,  
 And in the end both lie alike in dust.  
 Make not thyself a butt to all the world  
 By listening to malicious Garsíwaz.  
 Thou knowest well what tyrannous Zahhák,  
 The Arab, suffered from brave Farídún ;  
 And likewise how both Salm and savage Túr  
 Fared at the hands of great Sháh Minúchihr.  
 Now living at the throne of Sháh Káús  
 Arc Zál and Rustam the vindictive one,  
 Gúdarz, son of Kishwád, whose hand is steel  
 And rendeth lions' hearts and leopards' hides,  
 Bahrám and Zanga son of Sháwárán,  
 Who heedeth not the maces of the valiant,  
 And Gív, son of Gúdarz, at whom the earth  
 Is all a-tremble on the day of battle.

In grief for Siyáwush the streams will boil  
 And heaven will execrate Afrásiyáb.  
 Herein thou art a tyrant to thyself,  
 And often will my words recur to thee.  
 Thou art not casting onagers in sport,  
 Nor art thou terrifying antelopes,  
 But plundering a monarch of his throne,  
 And sun and moon will curse thee. Give not thou  
 Túrán so madly to the winds, and never  
 Mayst thou have reason to recall my words."

V. 662

She as she spoke caught sight of Siyáwush,  
 And tore her cheeks with lamentable cries:—  
 "O king! O brave! O chief! O sovereign!  
 O lion proud of head! O man of might!  
 Thou hast left home and country in Írán,  
 And recognised my father as thy king,  
 Yet art thou haled afoot with bounden hands!  
 Where are the crown and throne of high estate,  
 Where all the royal oaths and covenants  
 That made the Sun and Moon and Saturn quail?  
 Where would be Sháh Káús and his proud chiefs  
 If at this moment they beheld thee thus?  
 Where are the mighty Rustam, Tús, and Gív,  
 Zál, Farámarz, and their associates?  
 The tidings of this wrong will reach Írán  
 And vex the day of its prosperity.  
 Ill hath befallen thee through Garsíwaz:  
 Curse on him, on Gurwí and on Damúr!  
 He that shall lay a hand on thee for ill,  
 Be his head smitten off and flung away.  
 May God vouchsafe to lighten this for thee,  
 And make thy foes' hearts quake. Would that mine eyes  
 Were out ere they beheld thee haled like this,  
 But could I ever deem that mine own sire  
 Would banish all the sunlight from my breast?"

The monarch heard his child's words and the world



Was blackened in his eyes. He said to her :—  
 “Begone. What know'st thou of our purposes?”

His heart was all a-fire against his daughter,  
 He shut the eye of wisdom recklessly.  
 Within the lofty palace was one chamber  
 Unknown to her; the monarch bade his guards  
 To drag her thither, as they would the mad,  
 And having flung her down inside that room  
 To bolt the door and leave her in the gloom.

### § 56

*How Siyáwush was slain by Gurwí*

v. 663      Then Garsíwaz glanced at Gurwí; that villain  
 Turned round and going up to Siyáwush  
 Showed no observance and humanity,  
 But grasping with his hand the prince's beard  
 Dragged him, O horror! vilely through the dust,  
 While Siyáwush thus prayed Almighty God :—  
 “O Thou that art above the change of time!  
 Cause from my seed an Offshoot to appear,  
 In all men's eyes as 'twere a shining sun,  
 Who will avenge me of my foes, maintain  
 My precedents, exhibit all achievement  
 And manliness, and reinstate the world.”

Pílsam came following Gurwí with tears  
 Of blood in anguish. “Fare thee well,” the prince  
 Exclaimed. “Be thou the woof and be the world  
 Thy warp. Farewell Pírán for me and say :—  
 ‘The fashion of the world hath changed!’ I hoped  
 Much otherwise of him, for his advice  
 Was like the breeze and I was like the willow.  
 He told me: ‘I with five score thousand men,  
 All cavaliers in mail on barded steeds,  
 Will be thy helper when the day shall come,

Will be thy pasturage at feeding-time.'  
 Now hurried on in front of Garsíwaz,  
 Afoot thus in my shame and gloom of soul,  
 I see no friend or one to wail for me."

When he was past the city and the host  
 They bore and dragged him bound upon the plain,  
 And then Gurwí received from Garsíwaz  
 A blue-steel dagger for the bloody deed.  
 He dragged the prince on by the hair afoot  
 And when he came to where the mark had stood  
 The day that Siyáwush and Garsíwaz,  
 That lion-taker, had the shooting-bout,  
 The son of Zira, villain that he was,  
 Flung to the ground the mighty Elephant,  
 And showed no shame or reverence for rank,  
 But set a golden basin on the ground,  
 Turned up the prince's face as 'twere a sheep's,  
 Cut off the silver Cypress' head and filled  
 The bowl with blood. Gurwí took up the bowl  
 And emptied it where he had been commanded.  
 From that blood presently there sprang a plant,  
 Which I will teach thee how to recognise,  
 For it is called "The Blood of Siyáwush."

V. 664

Now when the Sun had left the Cypress-stem,  
 And when the prince's head had fallen asleep,  
 (And what a sleep! For how much time hath passed  
 And he hath never stirred, hath never waked!)  
 A tempest with a cloud of darksome dust  
 Arose enveloping the sun and moon,  
 And no man could discern his neighbour's face.  
 Then all of them began to curse Gurwí.

I turn me left and right and all around,    7  
 But knowledge of this world have I not found.  
 One man doth much amiss but good alone  
 Is his, the world and fortune are his own;  
 Another walketh this earth righteously

Yet withereth away in misery.

V. 665

From every anxious care thy soul release,  
And let thy sorrow over this world cease,  
For 'tis a fickle thing, not ever sure,  
And will be so till time shall be no more.  
But this is certain—whatso'er thy lot  
May be in this world it abideth not.

A cry rose from the halls of Siyáwush,  
For Garsíwaz had filled the world with tumult;  
The slaves all rent their hair, and Farangís  
Plucked off and bound a long and musky tress  
Around her, tore her cheeks of cercis-bloom,  
And cursed with tears and shrieks her father's soul,  
Who hearing how she wailed and cursed him, said  
To Garsíwaz the villain: "Bring her forth,  
Drag her outside the curtains by the hair,  
And tell the guards and executioners  
To take her by the tresses, strip, and beat her,  
Until she casteth on Túránian soil  
The seed of vengeance, for I will not have  
A tree or bough or leaf or crown or throne  
Come from his root."

Then all the nobles present  
Began to curse Afrásiyáb, and said:—  
"From king or minister or warrior  
None e'er heard such a sentence!"

V. 666

With his cheeks  
Blood-stained, his spirit seared, his face all tears,  
Pílsam approached Lahhák and Farshídwaz.  
"E'en Hell is better than Afrásiyáb's  
Throne!" he exclaimed. "No rest or sleep for us  
In this land! We must hasten to Pírán  
In sorrow and concern about the captives."

They put the saddles on three noble steeds:  
"They roll the earth before them," thou hadst said.  
Now these three horsemen, when they reached Pírán,

Their faces blood-stained and their souls all thorns,  
 Recounted to him what had come to pass,  
 And how the ills of fortune had begun.  
 Pírán, when he had diligently heard  
 Their words, fell from his throne and swooned away.  
 He rent his clothes, threw dust upon his head,  
 Plucked out the hair, and in his bitter anguish  
 Exclaimed: "Alack! thou worthy of the crown!  
 For ivory throne will never see thy like."

V. 667

Lahhák said: "Haste! oh! haste! or greater grief  
 Will come, for they have carried Farangís,  
 Her body all a-quiver like a tree,  
 Dethroned, disgraced, unrespited, away  
 To give her over unto those that slay!"

## § 57

*How Pírán saved Farangís*

Pírán on hearing this cried out in wrath,  
 Descended to the street and from the stable  
 Brought forth ten roadsters up to warriors' weight,  
 And with the brave Rúin and Farshíðward  
 Sent up the dust forthwith.<sup>1</sup> He reached the court  
 In two days and two nights, there found the deathsmen  
 About the portal, Farangís bereft  
 Of all her wits dragged roughly by the guard  
 With sword in hand, and all the court in uproar;  
 All hearts were full of grief, all eyes of tears,  
 All tongues of curses on Afrásiyáb.  
 The populace—men, women, and young children—  
 Were talking at the palace-gate and saying:—  
 "It were a cruel, fearful, shocking deed  
 To cut asunder Farangís! This fury

V. 668

<sup>1</sup> No doubt Pílsam and Lahhák were with them, as the mention of ten horses looks like a re-mount for each man. Rúin was the son of Pírán.

Will wreck the reign and none will call him king  
Henceforward."

At that moment came Pírán  
Like wind, and all the men of wisdom joyed.  
When noble Farangís saw him her cheeks  
Were hidden by a flood of tears, she said :—  
" Ill hast thou dealt with me ! Why hast thou flung me  
While living into fire ? "

Pírán dropped off  
His steed, he rent the raiment that he wore  
As paladin, and bade the officers  
To hold awhile. He sought Afrásiyáb  
In haste, grief-stricken, and with tearful eyes,  
To whom he said : " O king ! live prosperously,  
Be evil's hand afar ! What hath occurred,  
My gracious king ! to turn thy face to ill  
To-day ? Why hath the foul Dív gained thy heart,  
And robbed it of its reverence for God ?  
Thou hast slain Siyáwush though innocent,  
And flung his name and kingship to the dust.  
News of this wrong will reach Írán and vex  
Our prosperous times, for many a paladin  
Will march in anguish and revenge against us.  
The world reposed from ill, the way of God  
Was clear until the wily Dív from Hell  
Smote to the heart the monarch of Túrán ;  
And rightly be that Áhriman accursed,  
Who turned thy counsels to an evil course.  
Thou wilt repent of this for many a day,  
And surely writhe and burn in agony.  
I know not whose ill words have prompted this,  
Or what the Maker's purpose is hercin !  
Now, quit of Siyáwush, thou hast ill-treated  
Thine own child, and hast madly left thy throne  
To make a day of woe ! She wisheth not  
For fortune, royal state or throne or crown.

Make not thyself a butt to all the world  
 By what thou doest to thy pregnant child,  
 Else while thou livest thou wilt be accursed,  
 And when thou diest Hell will be thy portion.  
 If now the king would make my spirits bright,  
 Let him send Farangís to mine abode.  
 If there be apprehension through this babe,  
 In truth the trouble and concern are small.  
 Have patience only till the child is born ;  
 Then will I bring it thce and—do thy worst."

He answered : " Do as thou hast said, for thou  
 Hast made me cease to wish to shed her blood."

Pírán rejoiced, his heart was eased from fear.  
 He sought the court-gate, rescued Farangís,  
 Bestowing many a curse upon the guards,  
 Then bore her to the country of Khutan,  
 Unhurt, amid the applause of camp and court.  
 When he had reached his palace he espake  
 Gulshahr : " We needs must harbour this fair dame  
 Until she hath brought forth her royal babe,  
 And after that I will devise some scheme.  
 Meanwhile attend upon her like a slave,  
 And mark the pranks of fortune."

Time passed by,

The Moon grew near to her delivery. V. 670

## § 58

### *The Birth of Kai Khusrau*

One dark and moonless night, while birds, wild beasts,  
 And cattle slept, Pírán in dream beheld  
 A splendour that outshone the sun itself,  
 While Siyáwush, enthroned and sword in hand,  
 Called loudly to him, saying : " Rest no more !  
 Throw off sweet sleep and think of times to come,

For from to-day new feasts and customs date,  
Because to-night is born Sháh Kai Khusrau !”

The chieftain roused him from his sweet repose :  
Gulshahr the sunny-featured woke. Pírán  
Said unto her : “ Arise ! Betake thyself  
To minister to Farangís, for I  
Saw Siyáwush in sleep a moment since,  
Surpassing both the sun and moon in lustre,  
And crying : ‘ Sleep no more, but join the feast  
Of Kai Khusrau, the monarch of the world.’ ”

Gulshahr came hasting to the Moon and saw  
The prince already born ; she went with cries  
Of joy that made the palace ring again  
Back to Pírán the chief. “ Thou wouldest say,”  
She cried, “ that king and Moon are fairly matched !  
Oh ! hasten and behold a miracle—  
The Maker’s greatness and His providence—  
For thou wilt say : ‘ The babe hath need of naught  
But crown, mail, mace, and lands to devastate.’ ”

The chieftain visited the royal babe,  
And offered many praises to the Almighty  
For that tall stature and those arms and neck.  
Thou wouldest have said : “ The child is twelve months  
old ! ”

Pírán’s eyes filled with tears for Siyáwush ;  
He uttered curses on Afrásiyáb,  
And thus addressed the noble company :—  
“ Although the king shall break my soul therefor  
I will not suffer him to touch the child,  
Not though he fling me to the crocodiles ! ”

When gloomy murk was sleeping, and the sun  
Displayed its rays, the captain of the host,  
“ Twixt fear and hope, went to Afrásiyáb  
In haste, but waited till the court had cleared ;  
Then came anear the famous throne and thus  
Addressed the king : “ O sunlike sovereign

And world-lord, shrewd and versed in magic arts!  
 'Thy lot last night was bettered by one slave,  
 'Dowered by the moon,' as thou wouldst say, 'with  
 sense.'

He hath engrossed all beauty: thou wouldst say:—  
 'It simply is the moon inside the cradle!'  
 If Túr could have his lifetime o'er again  
 He would desire to see this infant's face.  
 None looketh on a picture in a palace  
 So fair. The royal Grace is fresh in him,  
 And thou wouldst say: "'Tis valiant Farídún  
 In Grace and countenance, in hand and foot.'  
 Now purge thy mind from every thought of ill,  
 Exalt thy heart, and illustrate the crown."

God gave the king a better mind. He banished  
 Thoughts of injustice, harshness, and revenge:  
 His spirit sorrowed for his evil deed.  
 Then from his heart he heaved a sigh, repenting  
 Of evil done, and putting by revenge  
 Replied: "Much evil will befall me now:  
 That is the gist of everybody's words.  
 The age will be disquieted by war,  
 For an adviser hath reminded me  
 That from the seed of Túr and Kai Kubád  
 A king of noble birth will lift his head,  
 The world will seek his love and all men pay  
 Him homage in Írán and Túrán.  
 What is to be will be, no anxious thought  
 Will aught avail; rear not the child at home,  
 But send him to the shepherds on the mountains  
 That he may know me not or why I sent him  
 To them, not know the truth about his birth,  
 But be in ignorance of all the past."

V. 672

He spake upon the matter as he thought,  
 And deemed this old world young! Canst thou do  
 aught?



There is no remedy. The world is vast,  
 No hooks or nets of thine will hold it fast ;  
 But if misfortune's ills thou hast to feel  
 There is instruction also for thy weal.

The paladin went forth with joy, his heart  
 Full of glad thoughts, began to bless the Maker,  
 And sing the praises of the infant king ;  
 Then journeyed to his palace musing thus :—  
 " This little gift—what will it prove to us ? "

### § 59

*How Pírán entrusted Kai Khusrau to the Shepherds*

v. 673

Pírán had shepherds called from Mount Kalúr,  
 To whom he spake about the infant prince,  
 Then trusted to their care his Heart and Eyes—  
 The child that was so good and admirable—  
 And said : " Entreat him like your souls. No wind  
 Or dust must see him. Keep him from mischance  
 E'en at the cost of your own eyes and hearts."

They said : " We will obey."

He furnished them,

And sent a nurse to tend the royal babe ;  
 They laid their fingers on their eyes and heads,  
 And took the young prince with them to the mountains.  
 The heavens revolved awhile with matters thus,  
 And looked upon Khusrau with loving face.  
 Now when the brave young prince was seven years old  
 His prowess told the secret of his birth ;  
 He made a bow of wood and string of gut  
 Looped at both ends, he made an arrow blunt  
 And featherless, and would go on the plain  
 To hunt ; at ten he was a valiant warrior,  
 Who fought with boars and wolves, anon with lions  
 And leopards. armed with that rude weapon only,

And thus he fared until as time went on  
 His teacher came to ask for fresh directions.  
 The shepherd left the mountains and the waste,  
 And came before Pírán with loud complaints:—  
 “I come complaining to the paladin  
 Anent this noble Lion running loose:  
 He hunted antelopes at first, attacked  
 No leopards, and avoided lions’ tracks,  
 But now to fight fierce lions is the same  
 For him as following the antelope,  
 And yet I must not let him come to harm!  
 The noble paladin expecteth this  
 Of me.”

V. 674

Pírán on hearing smiled and said:—  
 “High birth and excellence will show themselves.”

He mounted on an easy-going nag  
 To seek the sunlike Lion, and observed  
 The stalwart youth as he approached like wind.  
 He kissed Pírán upon the hand, who, seeing  
 Such Grace and such a countenance, shed tears,  
 And long and lovingly embraced the youth  
 In secret commune with all-holy God.  
 Khusrau said: “O thou pure of Faith! mayst thou  
 Illume the country of Túrán, for all  
 That know thee call thee friend! Thou dost embrace  
 A shepherd’s son and feelest not ashamed!”

The heart of wise Pírán grew hot, his cheeks  
 Flushed, he replied: “Thou memory of the great,  
 So good and yet defrauded of the world!  
 There is no shepherd that is kin to thee,  
 And on this matter I have much to tell.”

He had an Arab steed brought for the youth,  
 Clothed him in royal robes and carried him  
 Home to the palace, thinking mournfully  
 Of Siyáwush. He cherished Kai Khusrau,  
 Rejoiced in him, and spent a happy time,

V. 675

But lost food, rest, and sleep through tenderness,  
And terror of the anger of the king.

With matters thus the heavens turned above  
Awhile o'er Kai Khusrau in peace and love.

### § 60

*How Pírán brought Kai Khusrau before Afrásiyáb*

One night Pírán received a messenger,  
Who bade him wait upon Afrásiyáb.  
The monarch spake about the past: "My heart,"  
He said, "is vexed by thoughts and grief too hard  
To put aside; this child of Siyáwush  
Hath, so to speak, o'ercast my day; but will  
High policy allow a shepherd-swain  
To rear one of the race of Farídún?  
If ill through this child hath been written for me  
No caution will avert it; 'tis God's doing.  
But while the child suspecteth not the past  
Let him be glad and we too will rejoice;  
Still, if he showeth any evil bent,  
He, as his father did, must lose his head."

Pírán replied: "O king! thou needest none  
To teach thee. This boy is as mad folk are!  
What notions can he have about the past?  
A child brought up by shepherds on the mountains  
Is like wild animals; what can he know?  
The foster-father told me yester-night:—  
'The boy is comely but devoid of wits.'  
In spite of beauty, stature, form, and Grace,  
The prince's head yet lacketh understanding;  
Vex not thyself and think no more hereof.  
What said the sage—a man exceeding wise?  
'More potent than the sire the nurse will prove,  
But the great secret is the mother's love.'

If at this time the king shall order me,  
 I will present this lauded youth to him,  
 But make me easy by a promise first  
 And swear by such an oath as kings employ.  
 Sháh Farídún, when he affirmed a matter,  
 Swore by his crown and throne and diadem;  
 Túr, who enjoyed both fortune and high state,  
 Swore by the Ruler of the universe;  
 And that great king Zádsham, thy grandsire, swore  
 By Him that ruleth Saturn, Mars, and Sun."

The wits of fierce Afrásiyáb were lulled  
 At hearing this, he swore a royal oath  
 By white day and by sombre night, by God—  
 The Omnipotent, the Maker of the world,  
 The Maker of the sky, the soul, and beasts:—  
 "No harm shall come upon the boy through me,  
 And I will never breathe sharp breath on him."

Pírán then kissed the ground and said: "O king,  
 Who judgest justly and art wed to justice!  
 Be wisdom evermore thy guide to good,  
 Be earth and time the dust beneath thy feet."

He came in haste to Kai Khusrau with cheeks  
 Like cercis-blossom, glad exceedingly,  
 And said: "Put wisdom from thee. If the king  
 Shall talk to thee of fight, talk thou of feast.  
 Appear before him as an alien  
 And speak insanely, show no kind of sense,  
 And thus thou mayst perchance outlive the day."

Pírán equipped him with a royal crown  
 And belt, and called for him a pretty palfrey  
 Whereon the shrewd, young hero sat and rode  
 Toward the palace of Afrásiyáb.  
 Tears filled the eyes of all on his account,  
 And shouts were raised before him: "Clear the way:  
 The brave aspirant to the crown hath come."

V. 677

When he arrived Pírán the general

Took him before the king. The grandsire's cheeks  
Grew wet with tears of shame, meanwhile Pírán  
Shook like a willow, fearing for Khusrau.

The king remembering his pledge and spurning  
All fell designs, gazed in astonishment

Upon that royal neck, the young man's hands,  
His gait, his bearing, and his dignity.

There was a pause. The monarch's face relaxed,  
And love at length prevailed within his heart.

"O youthful shepherd!" said Afrásiyáb,

"Describe to me thy life by day and night.

On what wise hast thou shepherded thy flock?

What is the number of thy sheep and goats?"

Khusrau thus answered him: "There is no game:  
Besides I have not arrow, bow, or string."

The monarch asked him next about his teacher,  
And whether he was prosperous or not.

Khusrau replied: "Where'er there is a leopard  
The hearts of valiant warriors are rent."

Afrásiyáb the third time questioned him  
About Írán, his parents, and his home.

"The rending lion," thus he made reply,

"Is not o'er-powered by a fighting-dog."

The king said: "Wilt thou go hence to Írán,  
To him who is the monarch of the brave?"

Khusrau thus answered him: "Two nights ago  
A horseman passed me on the hills and plains."

The monarch smiled and blossomed like a rose,  
Then asked of Kai Khusrau in gentler tones:—

"Dost thou not wish to learn to write? Hast thou  
No wish for vengeance on thine enemies?"

v. 678

He said: "There is no cream upon the milk:  
I fain would drive the shepherds from the plain."

The monarch smiled at what Khusrau had answered,  
And turning to the captain of the host  
Said thus to him: "The fellow is a fool:

I ask of heads ; he answereth of feet !  
 In sooth no good or ill will come from him :  
 Of other stuff are they that seek revenge.  
 Go ! Send him by the hand of some good man,  
 And let his mother have him back to her.  
 Dispatch him to Siyáwushgird, allow  
 No evil teachers to resort to him,  
 But furnish him with treasure, money, steeds,  
 Attendants, and whate'er may serve his needs."

## § 61

*How Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird*

" Bestir thyself," Pírán said to the prince,  
 Then took him from the presence of the king,  
 And went back to his palace, flushed with joy  
 And triumph, since the eye of ill was closed.  
 He said : " A new Tree fruiteth in the world  
 Through Him that ruleth over destiny."

He oped the portals of his ancient hoards  
 And furnished all that Kai Khusrau required—  
 Brocade, dínárs, and precious stones, with pearls,  
 Steeds, implements of war, and crowns and girdles,  
 Besides a throne and purses full of drachms,  
 With carpetings and matters great and small.  
 He brought them all to Kai Khusrau with speed,  
 And with the present gave his blessing also,  
 Then sent both son and mother to the seat  
 That good king Siyáwush had built. They went  
 Their way rejoicingly toward the place,  
 Which had become by then a brake of thorns.  
 When Farangís and Kai Khusrau arrived  
 Much folk from every side appeared to greet them,  
 While all the city's tongues were full of praise :  
 " Thus then," they said, " hath fortune made a Shoot  
 Sprout from the razed roots of a noble Tree !

Far be the eye of evil from the king,  
And may light fill the soul of Siyáwush."

The brambles of the city turned to box,  
The meadow-grass to noble eypresses;  
The very beasts rejoiced and all the folk  
Felt solace for the death of Siyáwush,  
Since eloudward from the dust that drank his blood  
There rose an Evergreen of sweet perfume,  
Upon whose leaves his likeness was portrayed,  
Exhaling through his love the scent of musk,  
And flourishing in winter as in spring  
Would be a prayer-place for the sorrowful.

This is the process of the ancient sky—  
It robbeth infants of their mother's breast,  
And to the dust deposeth suddenly  
A heart by fondness for the world possessed.  
Brave not the world but seek its joys to win;  
It hideth evils more than thou canst know,  
Yet treat it as a garden and therein

Abstain from sniffing at the leaves of woe,  
For whether thou art king or shod by want  
In any case thy length of days is scant.  
Vex not thy soul, this home is but a cheat,  
Thy sole possession is a narrow bier;  
What needeth thine amassing? Sit and eat;

God is thy treasurer, thou need'st not fear.  
Albeit here much happiness is found  
The world hath no real love for anyone.

'Twill raise a head one moment to the sun,  
And in the next will lay it underground.  
It is the process of the lofty sky  
To bring down princes and set slaves on high.

I turn from blood to vengeance and tell how  
Giv bare off from Túrán Sháh Kai Khusrau.

## PART V

### HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH, AND HOW GÍV BROUGHT KAI KHUSRAU TO ÍRÁN

#### ARGUMENT

The poet, after bewailing the approach of old age, tells of the arrival in Írán of the news of the death of Siyáwush, of the remorse of Kai Káuś, and of the wrath of Rustam, who slays Súdába, invades Túrán, expels Afrásiyáb, and rules there himself for seven years; after which he retires to Sístán. Afrásiyáb returns, recovers his authority, and wars with success against Írán.

At this juncture Gúdarz is warned in a dream to have search made for Kai Khusrau, the son of Siyáwush, who is kept as a prisoner of state by Afrásiyáb, and Gív departs on the quest. His adventures are described, and he ultimately returns to Írán in company with Kai Khusrau and his mother Farangís in spite of all the efforts of Pírán and Afrásiyáb to stop them.

Subsequently a quarrel takes place between Gúdarz and Tús as to whether Kai Khusrau or Fariburz shall be associated as joint Sháh with Kai Káuś, who puts the matter to the test and Kai Khusrau is successful.

#### NOTE

The most conspicuous character in this Part is Gív, a word which means "warrior." The feats which he is described as performing would be more than worthy of Rustam himself, who, after his withdrawal from Túrán, is relegated for a time to the background. We must conceive, as the Persians themselves would, that Gív, employed on the sacred mission of discovering and bringing to Írán the destined prince, was favoured with divine assistance in his enterprise.

§ 31. The quarrel between Gúdarz and Tús, as to the respective claims of Kai Khusrau and Fariburz to be associated as Sháh with Kai Káuś, bears important results in the next reign. Tús was the



son of Naudar, and he and his brother Gustaham were deliberately passed over after the death of that Sháh, and again after the death of Garshasp, when Kai Kubád was fetched from Mount Alburz to fill the vacant throne.<sup>1</sup> Tús can never forget that he is the direct representative of the line of the Pishdádian Sháhs, and, despairing of ever becoming Sháh himself, he on this occasion attempts to obtain power indirectly by advocating the claims of a candidate of his own.

§§ 34, 35. In the account of the expedition of Fariburz and Kai Khusrau to Ardabíl we have another proof of the truth of the view, often advanced in the present work, that the true seat of the legends of the Sháhnáma is to be looked for in the regions lying between the Euxine and the Caspian. Ardabíl is in Ázarbáiján, a land exposed to invasions from the north through the Pass of Darband, and where the numerous fire-springs doubtless gave rise to the legend of the heat which distressed the host of Fariburz in the neighbourhood of the castle of Bahman.

## § 1

### *Firdausi's Lament over his old Age*

v. 680

When threescore years hang swordlike o'er one's head  
Give him not wine, for he is drunk instead

With them! They give to me a staff for reins,  
My wealth is squandered and my fortune sped.

The watchman cannot from his hill descry  
The countless army of the enemy,

And hath not wit to turn away although  
Their spears confront the lashes of his eye.

The runners too that were so fleet of yore  
Bend and are bound by pitiless threescore;

The singer is aweary of his song,  
And one are bulbul's note and lion's roar.

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. pp. 369, 381.

Since I took up the cup of fifty-eight,  
The grave and shroud, naught else, I contemplate.

Ah! for my swordlike speech when I was thirty,  
Those luscious days, musk-scented, roseate!

Drawn by pomegranate-bloom and cypress-bough  
The pheasant haunteth not the dog-rose now.

Sufficient respite from my destiny  
I ask the Judge Almighty to allow

That from the famous tale of days gone by  
I may bequeath the world a history

Such that whoe'er shall judge my work aright  
Shall never speak of me but lovingly;

And I that am the Prophet's household-thrall  
In dust before his Mandatary fall—

Him of the pulpit and of Zú'lfakar <sup>1</sup>—  
On him to plead my cause above I call.

The story of the rustic bard again  
I take in hand; heed thou the minstrel's strain.

## § 2

### *How Káús heard of the Case of Siyáwush*

The news reached Sháh Káús: "The prince is slain!      V. 681  
The monarch of Túrán wrung off his head  
As 'twere a bird's! On every mountain-top  
Wild beasts lament the guiltless. Bulbuls mourn  
Upon the cypress, francolins and pheasants  
Beneath the rose. Túrán is seared and sore,  
Pomegranate leaves are yellow in the gardens.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. "The lord of the vertebrae"—the name of a famous sword taken at the battle of Badar from an infidel by Muhammad, from whom it passed to his son-in-law 'Alí, who is here referred to.

Gurwí set down a golden bowl and raised  
 As 'twere a sheep's the face of Siyáwush ;  
 They cut his royal head off; there was none  
 To help or plead."

When Sháh Káuś heard this  
 His crowned head bowed itself upon the state,  
 He rent his robes, he tore his cheeks, and quitted  
 His high throne for the dust. The Íránians  
 Went mourning on their way, the cavaliers  
 Put on their funeral weeds, their eyes wept blood,  
 Their cheeks were pale, all spake of Siyáwush.  
 Tús and Gúdarz, the gallant Gív, Shápúr,  
 Bahrám the Lion and Farhád arrayed  
 Themselves in raiment black and blue; no head  
 Retained its helmet but had dust instead.

### § 3

#### *How Rustam came to Káuś*

The world-illuming chief heard at Nímruz:—  
 "A wail ascendeth from Írán, the death  
 Of Siyáwush hath shocked the world, Káuś  
 Hath thrown dust on his crown and rent his robes!"

v. 682

When matchless Rustam heard his senses fled;  
 A wail rose from Zábul, Zál tore his cheeks,  
 And scattered dust upon his crown and shoulders.  
 Thus passed a week in heaviness and mourning,  
 But on the eighth day rose the trumpet-blast,  
 And at the gate of elephantine Rustam  
 Troops gathered from Kashmír and from Zábul.  
 Blood in his eyes and vengeance in his heart  
 He marched toward the court of Kai Káuś.  
 On coming near Írán he rent his robe  
 Of office, swearing by the Almighty Judge:—  
 "I will not rest from arms and war or wash  
 Dust from my face, whereat we need not grieve,

Till I have taken vengeance for the princee,  
 And brought our foes' heads to the shears. My crown  
 Shall be a easque, my eup a seimitar,  
 My net the leathern lasso on mine arm,  
 Until I take for our young princee's death  
 Revenge upon that Turkman dark of soul."

All dust from head to foot he came before  
 The throne of Kai Káús and said to him:—  
 "The noxious weeds that thou hast sown, O king!  
 Are fruiting now! Thy passion for Súdába,  
 And thine ill bent, have robbed thee of thy Crown,  
 And now thou seest clearly that thy seat  
 Is on the ocean's waves. A heavy loss  
 Hath come upon Írán through the distrust  
 And disposition of a cruel Sháh.

V. 683

For one who is the ruler of people  
 A shroud is better than a woman's bidding.  
 A woman's talk hath murdered Siyáwush,  
 And blest is she who is as yet unborn.  
 Among the Sháhs there was not one like him,  
 As great, as noble, and as reticent.  
 Alas for that tall stature and that face,  
 That face that had the mien of majesty!  
 Alas for that so famous sovereign,  
 For time will never look on such another!  
 'Twas ever spring when he was on the throne;  
 At feasts he used to be the crown of kings,  
 In fight a Pard, a Tiger, and a Lion:  
 None ever saw a man so deft of hand.  
 Now, while I live, I give up heart and brain  
 To execute revenge for Siyáwush.  
 Ne'er shall I fight dry-eyed, and like my heart  
 The whole world shall endure the fiery smart."

V. 684

## § 4

*How Rustam slew Súdába and led forth the Host*

V. 685

Káús perceived on Rustam's countenance  
 How great his love was by his tears of blood,  
 And out of shame said nothing in reply,  
 But poured down scalding tears. The chief departed  
 And went toward the palace of Súdába.  
 He dragged her from the bower by her hair,  
 Dragged her all bleeding from her throne and clave h  
 Asunder with his dagger in the street  
 While Sháh Káuś sat passive on his throne;  
 This done, the matchless Rustam felt a pang  
 Yet keener in his heart, he sought his palace  
 In pain and woe, with blood-drops in his eyes,  
 And livid cheeks. Írán was all in mourning,  
 And people flocked around him in their trouble,  
 While he for seven days in grief and tears  
 Sat in his palace wrathful and distressed.  
 Upon the eighth he sounded trump and drum,  
 And to his palace came Gúdarz and Tús,  
 Shídúsh, Farhád, Gurgín, Gív, and Ruhhám,  
 Shápúr, Kharrád the warrior, Faríburz—  
 The son of Kai Káuś—Bahrám the Lion,  
 And dragon-bold Guráza. Rustam said:—  
 "I stake heart, soul, and body on revenge,  
 For in this world there is no man of name  
 In arms like Siyáwush the cavalier.  
 Treat not the matter lightly. None can deem  
 Such vengeance trifling. Banish all dismay,  
 And make the earth run like Jíhún with blood. .  
 By God! while I am living in the world  
 I will not cease to grieve for Siyáwush.  
 On that unwatered waste where rash Gurwí  
 Poured on the ground the life-blood of the prince

I fain would chafe my face and eyes ; perchance  
 It may relieve my heart of grief for him.  
 Perchance my hands like his may be secured,  
 A yoke placed on my neck, and both my wrists  
 Bound with a twisted lasso, and myself  
 Thrown like a hapless sheep upon the ground ;  
 But if not, with my trenchant scimitar  
 And mace will I bring Domesday on the world ;  
 Mine eyes shall see naught but the dust of fight,  
 And I renounce for life the cup of pleasure."

The chiefs and paladins on hearing this  
 All shouted like one man : thou wouldst have said :—  
 " Írán is seething." From the land the uproar  
 Rose to the clouds. " Earth is a lion's den,"  
 Thou wouldst have said.

V. 686

Then from his elephant  
 He dropped the ball into the cup. The troops  
 Unsheathed the sword of vengeance. Rose the din  
 Of horn, of brazen trump, and kettledrum ;  
 The world was all revenge, and thou hadst said :—  
 " It is a seething sea ! " Earth had no room  
 For walking, air was ambushed by the spears ;  
 The stars began the fray, and time and earth  
 Washed hands in mischief. The Íránian warriors  
 Girt up their loins and Kawá's standard led them.  
 Then Rustam of Zábúl chose from Kábúl,  
 Írán, and from the forest of Nárwan,  
 Troops that were wielders of the scimitar :  
 There mustered five score thousand men of war.

## § 5

*How Farámarz slew Warázád*

The leader of the van was Farámarz,  
 The son of Rustam and a youthful chieftain,

Whom, when he reached the border of Túrán,  
The watch descried.

The king of Sipanjáb  
Was Warázád, a lustrous Pearl mid chiefs.  
Whenas the blast of trump and clarion,  
And din of Indian bells came to his ears  
He beat the tymbals, marched out to the desert,  
And from the desert to a sea of blood.  
His troops and scimitars were thirty thousand  
Prepared for fight. Advancing from the centre  
He made all haste to counter Farámarz,  
And questioned him and said: "Who art thou? Speak  
Why hast thou set thy face against this land?  
Com'st thou in sooth by order of the Sháh,  
Or captain of the host? Dost thou not know  
Afrásiyáb, his state, his throne, and crown  
Of majesty? Be pleased to tell thy name,  
For this is thy last fight. Thy swarthy form  
May not give up the ghost beneath my hands,  
Unnamed."

v. 687

Then Farámarz: "Ill-fated chief!  
The Tree that bare me is a paladin,  
In whose hands lions writhe, while elephants  
Grow lifeless at his wrath, but as for thee,  
Thou ill-conditioned bantling of the Dív!  
Why should I talk to thee of how and why?  
The elephantine hero is behind  
With troops—a foe sufficient anywhere.  
He armed to take revenge for Siyáwush,  
Advancing like a furious lion. He  
Will raise the reek from this vile land. The wind  
Will not adventure meddling with his dust."

As soon as Warázád had heard the words  
He knew that it was useless to dispute,  
And bade the troops: "Lay on; string up your  
bows."

Both hosts arrayed themselves and donned their helmets,

The war-cry rose, and ears grew deaf with drumming.

Now at the sound of drum and clarion

The heart of Farámarz began to throb.

He came on like a mighty elephant,

With loins girt up and bow upon his arm,

And in a single onslaught overthrew

A thousand warriors, then turning back

With spear in hand he sought for Warázád,

And, when he saw the Turkman leader's flag,

Rushed like a lion from among the troops,

And giving to his sable steed the spur,

And stiffening the clutch upon his lance,

Struck Warázád a blow upon the girdle,

So that cuirass and buckle brake, and took him

In such a fashion from the poplar saddle

That thou hadst said: "He dealeth with a fly!"

Flung him upon the dust and then dismounting,

While oftentimes invoking Siyáwush,

Cut off the head of his illustrious foe,

Blood-boltering his raiment and exclaiming:—

"See the first head of our revenge! The seed

That hath been scattered sprouteth from the dust!"

They gave up all the country to the flames,

The reek rose to high heaven, and Farámarz

Wrote to his sire respecting Warázád:—

"I opened wide the door of war and vengeance,

I took him from his sell of poplar wood,

Cut off his head, so doth revenge require

For Siyáwush, and set his land a-fire."



## § 6

*How Surkha led his Troops to fight with Rustam*

A runner came and told Afrásiyáb:—

“The elephantine Rustam hath come forth  
To war, the Íránian chieftains are assembled;  
They have, alack! beheaded Warázád,  
And robbed the marches of Túrán of breath;  
His army they have utterly o'erthrown,  
And given up his country to the flames.”

Afrásiyáb was grieved and called to mind  
The ancient prophecy that he had heard  
From wise archmages and astrologers;<sup>1</sup>  
He summoned all the nobles, paid his troops,  
Gave largess from his treasures, and brought home  
All herds of horses that were on the waste.  
He took his minister's and treasurer's keys  
To ope his magazines, and furnished swords,  
Horse-armour, maces, and artillery,  
Dínárs, gold, gems, crowns, torques, and golden belts,  
And strewed the palace and the ground with drachms.  
With troops equipped and treasure lavished on them  
He sounded kettledrum and Indian gong,  
And then the horsemen turned their thoughts to war.  
He marched from Gang, and, having reached the open,  
Called Surkha and spake much of Rustam, saying:—  
“Lead thirty thousand Sabres swift as wind  
To Sipanjáb, ignoring rest and pleasure,  
For Farámarz is there. Send me his head;  
But ware the son of Zál! Thou hast no peer  
In fight save him, yet where the pard would combat  
What will the dog of war avail in battle?  
Thou art mine own son and my loyal subject,  
The Pillar of mine army and my Moon;  
Be so alert and circumspect that none

V. 689

<sup>1</sup> See p. 234.

Will venture to attack thee. Lead in person,  
Be vigilant, and guard the host from Rustam."

V. 690

When Surkha left the presence of his sire  
He took the troops and standard to the plain,  
And marched along like wind to Sipanjáb,  
Intent on war. The outposts saw the dust,  
Turned round, and hurried in to Farámarz.  
The din of drums rose from the Íránian troops,  
Whose dust transformed the earth to ebony ;  
The clamour of the cavaliers and chargers  
Rose from the plain, out-topping Sol and Venus ;  
The bright steel falchions flashed like diamonds,  
The spearpoints fed on blood. Thou wouldst have  
said :—

"An exhalation riseth from the earth,  
And giveth fuel to the flames of war."

The earth from end to end was heaped with slain ;  
Their severed heads were scattered everywhere.

As Surkha marked the progress of the fight  
He saw the spearhead of prince Farámarz,  
Then gave the rein to his high-crested steed,  
And, giving up the bow, charged with the spear,  
While Farámarz, abandoning the centre,  
Came forth with lance in hand to counter him,  
And by a trust swift as Ázargashasp

V. 691

Laid him unseated on his horse's neck,  
While with the impetus and that rude shock  
The lance was shivered. Then the Turkman chiefs  
Advanced intent on battle and revenge,  
While Surkha in the anguish of defeat  
Fled. Farámarz, like some mad elephant,  
Pursued him, brandishing an Indian sword.  
The Íránian horse rushed after him like dívs,  
And shouted. Farámarz came up with Surkha  
And, like a leopard springing, seized his girdle,  
Unseated him, and hurled him to the ground,

Then, driving him afoot, brought him to camp,  
 Disgraced. With that the flag of matchless Rustam  
 Was seen approaching mid the tramp of troops  
 And elephants; the prince went to his father  
 As quick as dust and told of his success.  
 In front was Surkha with his hands in bonds,  
 There lay the severed neck of Warázád;  
 The plain and hollows were all filled with slain,  
 The foe in full retreat. The soldiers blessed  
 The brave, young paladin, while peerless Rustam  
 Gave blessings to him also and bestowed  
 Great largess on the poor. Of Farámarz  
 Spake elephantine Rustam: "He whose head  
 Is raised o'er others must have noble nature,  
 Instruction, prowess, and befriending wisdom:  
 His nature using these will bring the world  
 Beneath his feet by virtue of his manhood.  
 Thou seest naught but brightness in a flame,  
 Yet he is burned that toucheth. 'Tis not strange  
 That Farámarz should triumph, for the heart  
 Of steel is full of fire, and when steel fighteth  
 With flint the secret of its heart is shown."

Then elephantine Rustam looked on Surkha—  
 A noble Cypress of the garth was he,  
 His breast was like a lion's, and his cheeks  
 Were like the spring, cheeks where black musk was  
     traced

On roses—bade men bear him to the plain,  
 And executioners with bowl and dagger,  
 To make his hands fast in the lasso's coils,  
 To throw him like a sheep upon the ground,  
 Behead him as was done to Siyáwush,  
 And let the vultures be his winding-shect.  
 When Tús the general heard he went in haste  
 To do the bloody deed. Then Surkha said:—  
 "O most exalted king! why slay me guiltless,

For Siyáwush was of my years, my friend ?  
My soul was full of pain and grief for him,  
By day and night my eyes o'erflow with tears ;  
I ever oped my lips to curse the man  
By whom the prince's head was stricken off—  
The man that brought the dagger and the bowl."

The heart of Tús was very pitiful  
For that illustrious but luckless prince.  
He went to Rustam and repeated to him  
The pleading of the Turkman monarch's son,  
But Rustam answered : " If there be a king  
Who should be thus heart-seared and sad, then may  
The heart and spirit of Afrásiyáb  
Be ever full of pain, his eyes of tears.  
This youth, engendered by those recreant loins,  
Will but employ fresh stratagems and guile.  
As Siyáwush was laid upon the ground  
With shoulders, breast, and hair bedrenched with  
blood,  
So by the head and life of Kai Káús,  
The glorious, noble ruler of Írán,  
I swear that every Turkman that I find  
Throughout my life, be he a king or slave,  
So he be of these marches and this folk,  
I will behead."

And therewithal that Lion  
Looked at Zawára and commanded him  
In peremptory tones to do the deed  
Of blood. He took the dagger and the bowl,  
And gave the youth to executioners,  
Who cut his throat—a cry, and all was over.  
What wouldst thou, world ! with those whom thou  
hast fed ?

Fed ! Say thy broken-hearted slaves instead !

Then Rustam took the head off, hung the trunk  
Feet upward on a gibbet, and flung dust

In vengeance on the corpse, which afterwards  
The soldiers hacked to pieces with their swords.

## § 7

*How Afrásiyáb led forth the Host to avenge his Son*

When the Túránian troops returned from battle,  
Their bodies bloody and their heads all dust,  
They said : " The noble chieftain hath been slain,  
His eager fortune hath been overturned,  
And they have set his severed head and body  
Blood-boltered upside down upon a gibbet !  
The people of Írán are all in arms,  
Their hearts ache with revenge for Siyáwush."

V. 694

Afrásiyáb hung down his head and crown,  
Plucked out his hair, shed tears, and rent his robes,  
Cast dust upon his head, and cried aloud :—  
" O prince ! O gallant heart ! O warrior !  
O chief ! O man of name ! O hero ! King !  
Woe for that moonlike cheek of cercis-bloom !  
Woe for that royal breast and mien and stature !  
Thy sire shall ne'er seek rest unless it be  
Upon his charger's saddle on the field."  
Then to his men : " Our ease and feasts are over.  
Keep ye your eyes wide open for revenge,  
And make your jerkin and cuirass your bed."

Rose at his gate the din of kettledrums :  
His warriors armed. Upon the elephants  
The trumpets blared, the world was like a sea  
Of indigo, and when they bound the drums  
Upon the elephants heaven kissed the earth.  
Then said the king : " Ye chiefs and warriors !  
When both sides sound the drum he is no soldier  
That laggeth. Let our hearts be full of vengeance,  
Full as the bodies of our foes with javelins !"

Thus spake he to the troops, then bade to sound  
 The clarions, cymbals, and the Indian bells.  
 Arose the war-cry and the blare of trumpets,  
 The din of cornet, pipe, and kettledrum,  
 Earth shook beneath the trampling of the steeds,  
 The shoutings of the soldiers reached the clouds.

Now when that army's dust rose from the plain  
 One came to vengeful Rustam and spake thus:—  
 "Afrásiyáb the chieftain is at hand ;  
 His troops move like a vessel o'er the sea.  
 All have prepared for combat and revenge,  
 And set their hands to blood."

Now when he heard:—

"The monarch of Túrán hath come in sight,"  
 The troops marched forth with Káwa's flag ; the air  
 Turned blue with warriors' swords ; a shout arose  
 From both sides and the world was filled with fighters. V. 695  
 Thou wouldst have said: "The sun and moon are  
 darkened,

A crocodile hath swallowed up the stars!"

The monarch of Túrán arrayed his men,  
 Who grasped their maces and two-headed darts.  
 Upon the right Bármán came proudly on  
 Before his troops, Kuhram was at the left,  
 And in the centre was the king in person.  
 On his side Rustam too arrayed his host,  
 And earth was lost in dust. He took the centre  
 With Farámarz in front and in the rear  
 Zawára ; on the left he placed Gúdarz,  
 Hajír, and other chiefs. He stationed Gív,  
 And Tús—those wary horsemen—on the right  
 With trump and drum, then armed himself for battle,  
 And eased his heart by vengeance. Earth became  
 Musk-black with troops, air like a leopard's back  
 With spears. "It is an iron mount whose crest  
 Is full," thou wouldst have said, "of helms and mail."

The staff-heads of the banners rose towards  
The clouds, and brightly flashed the blue-steel swords.

## § 8

*How Pílsam was slain by Rustam*

Pílsam with angry looks and vengeful heart  
Came to the centre to Afrásiyáb,  
And said : " O full of wisdom, famous king !  
Unless thou here forbiddest me the use  
Of charger, helmet, falchion, and cuirass  
I will myself to-day encounter Rustam,  
And cover all his name with infamy,  
Will bring to thee his head, his steed, his mace,  
And world-apportioning sword."

V. 696

The king rejoiced

Thereat and raised his spearpoint o'er the sun,  
Then answered : " O thou Lion of renown !  
In sooth no elephant will conquer thee.  
If thou dost take that elephantine chief  
The age will rest from strife, and not a man  
Within Túrán shall equal thee in rank,  
In throne, in signet-ring, in crown, and sword.  
Thou wilt exalt my head to turning heaven,  
And I will give to thee my crown and daughter ;  
The more part of Írán and of Túrán  
With treasures, gems, and cities shall be thine."

Pírán was grieved and, coming to the king,  
Said to him : " This young man in his rash youth  
Is laying violent hands upon himself,  
For, if he combat with the matchless Rustam,  
He will but lay his own head in the dust.  
The king will share in his disgrace, 'twill break  
The spirit of the troops : he is, thou knowest,  
My younger brother, and my love for him

Is greater than an elder brother's love."

Pílsam rejoined: "My heart doth not misgive me,  
And, if I fight this warlike Crocodile,  
By thy good fortune I will bring no shame  
Upon the king. Thou once beheld'st my prowess  
In fighting with four famous warriors,<sup>1</sup>  
And verily my strength is greater now.  
It is not right of thee to break my spirit;  
The enterprise is well within my reach:  
Haunt not the portal of an evil star."

The monarch, hearing what Pílsam replied,  
Gave him a barded charger, helm, cuirass,  
A sword, and massive mace. Pílsam made ready,  
And lionlike impetuously advanced,  
Exclaiming to the Íránians: "Where is Rustam,  
Who is, they say, a Dragon on the day  
Of battle? Bid him come to fight with me,  
For I am ready to encounter him."

V. 697

Gív, furious at the challenge, drew his sword  
And answered: "Rustam fighteth not one Turkman,  
'Twould but disgrace."

The champions closed. Pílsam  
Struck with his spear at Gív, who in dismay  
Lost both his stirrups. Farámarz saw this,  
And went at once to aid his gallant comrade;  
He struck athwart Pílsam's spear with his sword,  
And cut it like a reed; he struck once more,  
The blade was shivered on his foeman's helm,  
Who wheeled like some fierce lion on the plain  
With those two warriors. Rustam from the centre  
Espied them fighting with one lion-man,  
The dust sent cloud-ward with their wind-like speed,  
And thought: "Pílsam alone among the Turkmans  
Hath dash and spirit." He had heard moreover  
From hoar archmagas and astrologers,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 112.



Amid his wanderings, how the stars foretold  
That: "If Pílsam survive his evil day,  
And heed his counsellors, no warrior  
Like him in all the world shall gird his loins  
For battle in Írán or in Túrán,"

V. 698

And thought: "Assuredly his time hath come,  
For he hath set forth to encounter me."

He spake thus to his troops: "Let none advance  
A single step from where he standeth now.

I go to prove the prowess of Pílsam,  
And try his lustihood, his strength, and spirit."

He took a weighty spear, gripped fast his steed  
With both his legs, and, putting on his helmet,  
Pressed on the stirrups, let the reins hang loose,  
And lowered the shining spear-head to his eye.  
He wheeled about and foaming at the lips  
Rushed from the centre toward the foemen's lines,  
And cried: "O famed Pílsam! thou called'st me  
To scorch me with thy breath! Thou shalt behold  
The onslaught of the warrior-crocodile,  
And ne'er turn rein toward a battle more.  
My heart is burned with pity for thy youth:  
Alas for thine estate of paladin!"

He spake and urged his charger on. He came  
To battle like high heaven. With his spear  
He smote Pílsam upon the girdlestead,  
And took him from the saddle like a ball,  
Rushed to the centre of the Turkman host  
And there flung down the corpse contemptuously,  
Exclaiming: "Dress it in brocade of gold,  
For now 'tis lapislazuli with dust!"

Then wheeling round he went back to the centre.  
Pírán rained tears; the body of Pílsam  
Was past a lecch's skill. The heart of all  
The army of the monarch of Túrán  
Was broken and the battlefield was darkened.

A shout rose from both hosts; the din of chiefs  
 Keen for the fray, the drumming on the backs  
 Of elephants, were heard for miles around.  
 Earth trembled with the chargers' tramp, the hills  
 Were seas of blood, the plains were hills of slain.  
 The cries and blaring clarions shook the sky,  
 The stones were coral and the dust was gore;  
 The heads of many chieftains were laid low,  
 And thou hadst said: "The sky is raining blood."  
 It was no time for love 'twixt sire and son.  
 A breeze arose upon the battlefield,  
 And murky dust usurped the firmament.  
 Then both hosts charged with fury o'er the plain  
 While neither could distinguish foe from friend;  
 The world became as sombre as the night,  
 And day in sooth had well nigh spent its light.

## § 9

*How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam*

Afrásiyáb said to his troops: "Our fortune  
 That was awake is sleeping. Ye are feeble,  
 And I must to the field. Be leopard-like  
 In resolution if but for to-day,  
 Attack from every quarter and fight on.  
 Lay ambuscades on all sides for the foe,  
 And bring the sun down with your spears."

He quitted

The centre of his host, heart-seared, revengeful,  
 Charged Tús and slaughtered many of Írán  
 Till Tús, whose heart misgave him, showed his back.  
 One came for aid to Rustam saying thus:—  
 "The matter goeth ill with us to-day:  
 Our whole right is a sea of blood, the banner  
 Of our Íránian horsemen hath gone down."

V. 700

Came elephantine Rustam from the centre  
With Farámarz and troops. Confronting them  
Were many buckler-men who hated Rustam,  
Allies and kinsmen of Afrásiyáb,  
Swift in revenge, of whom the matchless one  
Slew many, backed by Tús and Farámarz.  
Afrásiyáb, when he beheld the flag  
Of violet and Káwa's standard, knew :—  
“ 'Tis Rustam of the elephantine form,  
The noble chieftain sprung from Narímán,”  
And raging as it were a warrior-leopard,  
Sat tight and went up to encounter him.  
As soon as Rustam saw the sable flag  
He bounded like a lion in its rage,  
Then full of fury gave fleet Rakhsh the reins  
And, with blood streaming from his lance's point,  
Encountered proud Afrásiyáb. One shaft  
Of poplar, pointed like a willow-leaf,  
Pinned to his head the Turkman's helm, while he  
Speared warlike Rustam full upon the breast,  
The point went through the leather of his belt  
But failed against the tiger-skin cuirass ;  
Then matchless Rustam, bent upon revenge,  
Speared his opponent's charger through the chest.  
The speedy steed fell prone in agony  
And threw the rider, whom the hero strove  
To seize around the waist and make an end.  
Húmán apart caught sight of him and, raising  
His massive mace upon his shoulder, smote  
The shoulder-blade of elephantine Rustam,  
While both the armies shouted. Rustam turned  
And looked behind him, thus the king escaped  
His grasp, and mounted on a speedy steed,  
While by a hundred shifts Húmán, the son  
Of Wísa, saved him from that Dragon's clutch.  
The hero-flinging crown-bestower followed

V. 701

Húmán in furious haste but caught him not,  
 His time had not yet come. Shouts rose to heaven,  
 And massive maces whirled. There came to Rustam  
 Some of the army of Írán lest harm  
 Might fall upon him, and the noble Tús  
 Made question of him: "Felt the Elephant  
 The impact of the Onager's assault?"

He answered: "Neither heart of stone nor anvil  
 Can bear the buffets of a massive mace  
 When wielded by a man with chest and arms;  
 As for that mace wherewith Húmán struck me—  
 Call it not iron; it was merely wax."

When Rustam's foeman turned and fled the troops  
 All gave a shout and raised their spearheads eloudward.  
 If slain and wounded covered not the ground  
 It was a field of tulips and of saffron;  
 The horses trampled blood, the elephants  
 Had feet incarnadined. The Turkmans fled,  
 Swift as the wind, because the arm of Rustam  
 Did execution on them. For three leagues  
 That matchless hero like a raging dragon  
 Pursued the foe. Then he returned to camp,  
 And thou hadst said that heaven befriended him;  
 The soldiers came back satiate with spoil;  
 And iron, gold, and silver, weapon, rein,  
 Spearhead, and girdle covered all the plain.

## § 10

### *How Afrásiyáb sent Khusrau to Khutan*

Now when the sun rose o'er the mountain-tops,  
 And scattered jewels on night's pitchy back,  
 A shout rose and the din of elarions  
 As matchless Rustam led his army forth.  
 They marched against Afrásiyáb with cheeks

All tearful for the death of Siyáwush.

The king, on hearing that a host pursued him,

Led by the matchless chief intent on vengeance,

Marched his own forces to the sea of Chín ;

The broad expanse of earth was narrowed to him.

He went across the sea to where he would,

And thus addressed Pírán : " Advise me well

What should be done about this wretched boy ;

Because if Rustam take and carry him

Off to Írán, they will enthrone and crown

This dív-begotten as Sháh. Convey him hither,

Bestir thyself, and slight not my command."

Pírán replied : " We must not rashly slay him,

But I will take such order that the king

Shall praise his faithful slave. Fetch we the youth,

And fix his residence within Khutan.

We must not give occasion to ill-doers

Eternally to blame our sovereign."

The king replied : " O master of wise rede !

Thou art my guide to good. Use all dispatch ;

'Tis not a matter that will brook delay."

Pírán at once sent off a prudent man

Of noble birth to fetch the prince. The envoy

Made haste and sped like smoke, for so the chieftain

Had bidden. When he came before Khusrau,

And saw the young man's Grace and majesty,

He gave unstinted praise, did reverence,

And tarried long delivering his message

In fitting language fittingly received.

V. 703 Khusrau, bewildered, sped to tell his mother :—

" Afrásiyáb hath sent and summoned me

Down to the sea ! What shall we do ? Perchance

We yet may make a shift to save our lives."

They talked together and discussed it much,

But found no remedy. They had to go,

And set off, though unwillingly, in haste.

They mourned and wept and cursed Afrásiyáb  
 Until they reached Pírán, who, when he saw  
 Khusrau, descended from his throne, inquired  
 About the tedious journey courteously,  
 And full of praises set the prince beside him.  
 As for those things whereof Khusrau had need,  
 Provisions, raiment, carpetings, pavilions,  
 Tents, steeds, Pírán provided him with all,  
 Then went to king Afrásiyáb and said :—  
 “O king of wisdom, Grace, and glory! I  
 Have brought the little boy that hath the Grace;  
 What further orders hast thou for me now?”

The king said: “Send him from the sea of Chín  
 So that the chiefs may find no trace of him.”

Pírán performed his task without delay,  
 And sent like smoke the youth upon his way.<sup>1</sup>

## § 11

### *How Rustam reigned over Túrán for Seven Years*

The chief, the elephantine hero, marched  
 Toward the realm of Chín, and with his sword-arm  
 Subdued Khatá, Khutan, and all the coasts  
 Of Chín, and took the throne of him whose fortune  
 Had come to dust. This saw spake Rustam first:—  
 “The man of worth will seek the enemy;  
 ’Tis good to slay him if he countereth thee,  
 And good too if he shun the fight and flee.”

V. 704

He searched the palace for its hoards; the people  
 Disclosed them all. The slaves, both boys and girls  
 Famed for their beauty, steeds, and treasuries  
 Of gold, crowns, robes, brocade, and ivory throne,  
 Fell into Rustam’s hand, with many a jewel  
 Out of the hoards at Gang, and all the soldiers  
 Were rich in armlets, torques, and coronets.

<sup>1</sup> Kai Khusrau was sent to Máchín (China). See p. 370.

He gave torques, armlets, and the ivory throne  
 To Tús, besides the government of Chách,  
 And said: "If anybody shall revolt,  
 Or even call Afrásiyáb to mind,  
 Cut off his head and make him food for vultures;  
 But like a father keep from want and travail  
 The wise and peaceful, shunners of the Faith  
 Of Áhriman. Offend not the offenceless,  
 And practise all humanity and justice,  
 For this world is a lodging not a home.  
 None ever had more Grace than had Jamshíd,  
 Yet still high heaven trod him under foot,  
 And found the world a monarch in his stead."

Next, to the worthy, pious paladin  
 Gúdarz he gave a crown of royal gems,  
 With earrings, torque, and throne, and made him  
 lord

V. 705

Of Sughd and Sipanjáb; he added counsel  
 With commendations and felicitations,  
 And said: "The seal of majesty and justice,  
 And feast and fight remind us still of thee;  
 But worth is better than high lineage,  
 Though lineage assisteth men of worth.  
 Since thou hast worth and lineage and wisdom,  
 And mak'st thy soul a concourse of sweet sounds,  
 It is but right that thou shouldst hear my rede,  
 Who art thyself a teacher of the great.  
 From Sipanjáb to the Gulzaryún  
 Be thy word law."

To Faríburz he sent  
 A crown of gold beside dínárs and gems,  
 And said: "Thou art a prince and potentate,  
 And brother unto Siyáwush; avenge him!  
 Ne'er loose thy lasso from the saddle-straps,  
 Cease not from vengeance on Afrásiyáb,  
 And take no thought of food, repose, and sleep.

Be just in all thy doings here below,  
For justice never ruined any one."

The tidings spread through Chín that Rustam sat  
Enthroned as over-lord. Then all the folk  
Brought handsel of dínárs and royal gems,  
And said: "We are thy servants and thy slaves;  
We only tread the earth to do thy bidding."

The chieftain gave them quarter for their lives,  
Perceiving that they had discerning minds,  
And occupied himself for many a day  
With hawk and cheetah. Passed a while away.

## § 12

### *How Zawára went to the Hunting-ground of Siyáwush*

Now as it chanced one day Zawára went  
To hunt the onager. He rode apace  
Conducted by a Turkman. On the open  
He saw a forest, "which," thou wouldest say,  
"One cannot pass, it fresheneth the soul,"  
So many were the scents and tints and streams.  
The Turkman told Zawára thoughtlessly:—  
"This was the hunting-ground of Siyáwush,  
This was his favourite spot in all Túrán,  
Where was he wont to be both glad and merry,  
But elsewhere sad."

V. 706

The Turkman's talk recalled  
Old recollections to Zawára's mind.  
A hawk was on his hand; he let it go;  
The lashes of his eyes ran tears of blood.  
His comrades of the host approached, observed him  
In grief and tears; then they began to curse  
The Turkman guide and felled him to the ground.  
With gall-drops streaming from his eyes Zawára  
Swore a great oath: "I will not hunt or sleep,



Or cease from vengeance on Afrásiyáb.  
 I will not give a moment's rest to Rustam :  
 All must prepare for fight."

He sought his brother.

"Did we come hither to revenge or bless?"  
 He said. "The Giver of all good hath given  
 Thee strength and made the circle of the sun  
 Thy star. Why should this realm be populous,  
 Or any soul live joyfully therein?  
 Forget not to avenge that prince, whose peer  
 Thou wilt not look upon for many a year."

### § 13

*How Rustam harried the Land of Túrán*

V. 707 Roused by Zawára's words the matchless Rustam  
 Began to ravage and to massacre  
 Till all the land showed signs of misery,  
 And from Túrán up to Sakláb and Rúm  
 Folk saw no cultured tract. The Íránians  
 Beheaded all the men, both young and old,  
 And made the women and the children slaves.  
 Thus o'er a thousand leagues and more the reek  
 Of burning rose. Then all of noble race  
 Came with the dust upon their heads protesting:—  
 "We are aweary of Afrásiyáb,  
 And would not see him even in a dream.  
 As for the guiltless blood that he hath shed,  
 We had not any voice or part therein,  
 And now, although we are a scattered people,  
 Yet are we all thy slaves. As thou art mighty  
 Shed not, provoking God, more guiltless blood.  
 . None knoweth where our king is, or if he  
 Is well or blasted by the dragon's breath."  
 The prudent Rustam's heart was grieved thereat,

He summoned all the chieftains of the host,  
 And marched the army to Káchár Báshí.  
 The wise, the great men, and the veteran chiefs  
 Flocked to his presence, and one said: "Káús,  
 Who hath not Grace, and cannot soar or stand,  
 Is seated on the throne without a guide,  
 And if Afrásiyáb should suddenly  
 Come with an army to invade Írán,  
 And conquer old Káús, our joy and peace  
 Would be destroyed. We all have won both honour  
 And vengeance, and have burned up every city.  
 Now let us go back to the agéd king;  
 When feasts begin we shall be all new men.  
 For six years we have had not one glad day;  
 Our slaves, our states, our signets, and our crowns  
 Are in Írán. 'Tis wealth hath dazed us thus!  
 Heart sated is soul bated! If thou settest  
 Thy heart upon this ancient dwelling-place  
 'Twill flatter thee but cozen thee withal;  
 So, if thy heart be not with Áhriman,  
 Abstain from greed which is the enemy.  
 Array thyself and lavish, drink and eat,  
 Such is thy portion of this fleeting show."

V. 708

The matchless Rustam yielded his assent  
 To what the noble archimage had urged.  
 That jocund counsellor went on to say:—  
 "Choose pleasure in this Wayside Inn. Reflect  
 That in the dust there is no brotherhood,  
 And how thou wilt deplore this present good!"

## § 14

*How Rustam returned to Írán*

The matchless Rustam heard the words with shame,  
 And felt an ardent longing to depart.  
 He gathered horses out of all the herds

That wandered o'er the deserts of Túrán,  
Together with ten thousand boys and girls—  
Slaves fit to serve a king—with bags of musk,  
With skins of marten, ermine, and grey squirrel,  
Of minever and weasel. On the backs  
Of elephants were furs, perfumes, dínárs,  
Gold, tapestries, and havings great and small,  
Stuffs for apparel, treasures, drachms, and swords,  
As well as other weapons, crowns, and thrones.  
They packed the loads, set forward to Írán,  
And, going from Túrán toward Zábul,  
Drew near to glorious Zál, while Tús, Gúdarz,  
And Gív, those famous chiefs, went to the Sháh  
At Párs.

V. 709

When news reached base Afrásiyáb  
That Tús and Rustam were across the river  
He set off westward toward the sea of Gang,  
With vengeance in his heart intent on war.  
He found the country all turned upside down,  
The nobles slaughtered and the folk enslaved ;  
No horses, treasures, crowns, or thrones were there,  
There was no verdant leafage on the trees ;  
The world had been consumed with fire, and all  
The palaces had been o'erthrown and burned.  
The king wept tears of blood and thus harangued  
The captains of the host : “ A man must lose  
His reason to forget these outrages !  
Fill all your hearts with vengeance, make your shields  
Your beds, your helmets pillows, let us fight  
Till heaven itself shall fall in our revenge ;  
For country's sake, for treasure, child, and kin,  
We will tread down the cities of Írán  
In striving after vengeance ; 'tis not well  
To be thus downcast just because the wind  
Was in their favour in a single fight.  
From all sides will we gather arms and troops,

And make a new departure."

He assembled

Without delay a host equipped for war,  
 And led his warriors and lion-men  
 Against Írán. His plan was to attack  
 From every side. No respite was afforded,  
 He burned up all the settlements and trees,  
 And brought the Íránians to a parlous case.  
 For seven years there was a rainless sky,  
 The favour changed, conditions were reversed,  
 And all were beggared by distress and travail.  
 Much time elapsed with matters in this stay  
 While at Zábúl the mighty Rustam lay,  
 And Turkman sworders in the world held sway.

V. 710

### § 15

*How Gúdarz had a Dream of Kai Khusrau*

Gúdarz one night dreamed that a watery cloud <sup>1</sup>  
 Rose o'er Írán, and on it sat Surúsh,  
 Who thus addressed him: "Give to me thine ear  
 As thou wouldst be released from this distress,  
 From this injurious Turkman dragon-fierce.  
 There is a youthful prince now in Túrán,  
 Sháh Kai Khusrau by name. He is a prince,  
 The offspring of the loins of Siyáwush,  
 A man of worship and of noble race,  
 Illustrious, of the stock of Kai Kubád,  
 And sprung from Túr upon the mother's side.  
 Whenas his glorious feet shall reach Írán  
 Heaven will accord to him his full desire.  
 Then will he gird him to avenge his father,  
 Will overturn the sovereignty of Túr,

<sup>1</sup> An emblem of coming prosperity in a land where rain is the chief want.

Will make the waters of the Red Sea boil,  
 Pause not in vengeance on Afrásiyáb,  
 But live in his cuirass the whole year through,  
 And pass his days and nights upon the saddle.  
 Among the chiefs and warriors of Írán  
 None will discover him excepting Gív :  
 Such is the outcome destined by the sky.  
 On Gív the Judge hath rightly lavished love."

Gúdarz awoke and, with his hoary beard  
 Upon the ground, gave thanks to God : his heart  
 Was hopeful of a Sháh to rule the world.

Now when the sun appeared above the dales,  
 Ascending as it were a shining lamp,  
 The chieftain sat upon his ivory throne,  
 And furnished forth the hall with seats of teak.  
 V. 711 Fulfilled by anxious thought he summoned Gív  
 And told him of the dream in many words,  
 Thus saying : "Glorious are thy feet and days,  
 And glorious is thy world-illuming star ;  
 Since thy blest mother bare thee earth hath been  
 Fulfilled with blessings. Blest Surúsh appeared  
 Last night to me in sleep by God's command.  
 He sat upon a cloud mid wind and rain,  
 And purged the world of woe. He looked at me  
 And said : ' Why all this grief ? Why is the world  
 Thus filled with warfare and thus parched with drought  
 Because Káuś hath neither Grace nor might,  
 And heedeth not the precedents of Sháhs.  
 When Kai Khusrau arriveth from Túrán  
 He will bring war and trouble on the foe ;  
 But none of all the valiant chiefs can find him  
 Save Gív, the famous offspring of Gúdarz.'  
 Thus heaven hath ordained thee to remove  
 • Our sorrow, toil, and bondage. Thou hast sought  
 For fame in war, and now eternal fame  
 Is in thy reach, for, while the world hath men

And words, thy good name will continue fresh.  
 'Twill be a toil, but one with fame and treasure,  
 A toil which surely will exalt thy fame ;  
 And, since thou wilt not tarry here for ever,  
 That fame is better than this Wayside Inn,  
 For thou wilt bring a monarch to the world,  
 And cause the tree of fealty to fruit."

Gív answered : " Father ! I am but a slave ;  
 For thy sake will I labour while I live.  
 If this may be I will accomplish it :  
 By thy great name I swear it, O my guide ! "

He went home and prepared for setting forth,  
 Lost in amazement at his father's dream.  
 The spouse of Gív was of exalted rank—  
 The well-loved daughter of the hero Rustam—  
 Bánúgashasp. News reached her that Gív's steed  
 Was being saddled for his expedition.  
 She went to him and said : " Aspiring chief !  
 I hear that thou art going to Túrán  
 To seek both far and near for Kai Khusrau ;  
 So, if the paladin will give me leave,  
 I will betake me joyfully to Rustam,  
 Because I long to look upon his face,  
 And through not seeing him my soul is sad.  
 Farewell to thee, O chief of paladins !  
 Mayst thou for ever be our heroes' stay."

The chieftain having given his consent,  
 Toward Sístán with speed the lady went.

## § 16

### *How Gív went to Túrán in Quest of Kai Khusrau*

At sunrise, when the earth resembled flowers  
 Of fenugreek, the gallant Gív approached  
 With girded loins, upon a steed with feet

As swift as wind. Gúdarz inquired of him :—

“What comrade hast thou? Who will fare with thee?

He thus replied: “O chief of paladins,  
 Brave, ardent, and exalted! I have need  
 Of no companions save my horse and lasso.  
 Suspicion will be roused if I take men,  
 And I shall bring a quarrel on myself.  
 A lasso in the straps, a rapid steed,  
 A sword and Indian vesture are enough,  
 Unless perhaps a guide to lead the way.  
 My home awhile will be the plain and mountain,  
 I may not pass through cities, for the folk  
 Will recognise me and I shall repent it.  
 I shall return rejoicing, bright of soul,  
 Through thy good fortune, chief of paladins!  
 Tend heedfully my little son Bízhan<sup>1</sup>  
 And guard him carefully against mischance,  
 Give him instruction in the art of war,  
 He need learn nothing but to feast and fight;  
 Young as he is I note his manliness  
 With satisfaction. Fare well. Think of me  
 Without anxiety. I cannot tell  
 If we shall meet again. The secret things  
 Of God who knoweth? When thy cheeks are bathed  
 For prayer entreat the Lord on mine account,  
 For He is higher than all height; the mighty  
 Are but His slaves. This day revolveth not  
 Without His will; there is no food or sleep  
 Save at His word. He made both time and space,  
 The mighty and the weak. He is our hope  
 And fear, the Lord of all the elements,  
 And oh! may He vouchsafe to be my Helper,  
 And guide me to illustrious Khusrau.”

The father hoary-headed, while the youth

<sup>1</sup> The first mention of this famous hero who is an especial favourite of the poet's.

Fierce as a lion girded up his loins,  
Knew not if he should see his son again,  
And was distracted at his setting out.  
The gallant Gíy dismounted from his steed,  
And kissed the hand of that exalted Lion,  
Who clasped him tightly in a fond embrace,  
And kissed him oft upon the face and head.  
That ancient man cried unto God : " Just Judge !  
Be Thou my Helper. To Thy care I leave  
Him who is sense and soul and life to me—  
My son so noble and so young—that haply  
The realm may be delivered from this stress.  
Restore him to me safely, O my King ! "

Those in the world who toil laboriously,  
And win applause because their aims are high,  
Must make the dust their bed when all is done ;  
That is their bane, and antidote is none.  
Thy sojourn here, thou knowest, is soon sped,  
Why set the crown of greed upon thy head ?  
Canst thou still wear it after thou art dead ?  
In this world ample pleasure thou canst take,  
Why art thou toiling for another's sake ?  
Thou toilest and another will consume  
At ease, unmindful of thy bier and tomb,  
But for him also pleasure hath its bound,  
And his head too must pass beneath the ground.  
Think then upon the day when thou must go,  
And make it thine to serve God here below,  
Incline to good and do to no man scath,  
For, in a word, this is Salvation's path.  
Upon this world that whirlleth set no store,  
It will not last with thee for evermore.  
Long though thou stayest thou wilt reach the bourne  
And, having reached it, there is no return.  
So now thou sage, whose heart is wakeful ! cease  
From doubt, and from the mire thy foot release.

V. 714



'Tis God Almighty that sustaineth thee,  
 His servant thou and thy Creator He.  
 Although thou weighest down thy neek with thought,  
 Of His existence ask and question naught,  
 And if by any it be not confest  
 With such thou shalt not eat or sleep or rest,  
 Because their heads are witless, their hearts blind,  
 And wise men count not such among mankind.  
 Both earth and water of God's being tell,  
 Let not thy knowledge prove thy way to Hell,  
 For His are power and knowledge and control,  
 The Artist He of wisdom and the soul.

V. 715

When mused the monarch of Túrán and said :—  
 "Above all people will I lift my head,"  
 And slew a youth so royal, then was he  
 Confronted by his evil destiny.  
 Howbeit from his loins God caused to shoot  
 A Tree<sup>1</sup> of noble height and yielding fruit,  
 A Tree that dealing with him as was just  
 Sent both his wits and palaees up in dust.  
 The Lord of Saturn, Sun, and Moon is He  
 That giveth victory and mastery ;  
 The Lord of being and of righteousness,  
 'Tis He that giveth us our more and less.  
 There is one path—His will—and only one—  
 A knowledge hidden from the moon and sun.

At His command Gív girded up his loins,  
 And like a savage lion sallied forth ;  
 He took no comrade with him, but resigned  
 To God his body used to luxury ;  
 If, when he reached the marches of Túrán,  
 He found a man alone Gív questioned him  
 In Turkman as to Kai Khusrau. When such  
 Replied : "I wot not of that prince," Gív used

<sup>1</sup> Kai Khusrau, son of Siyáwush and of Farangis, daughter of Afrásiyáb.

To slay him, hitch him in the lasso's noose,  
 Drag him aside, and cover him with dust,  
 That no one might discover his own secret,  
 Or hear his name or any news of him.  
 He had awhile a countryman as guide  
 From whom he hid the object of his quest.  
 At length he said: "I fain would ask a question  
 In confidence. If thou shalt wisely purge  
 Thy heart of craft and answer truthfully  
 Then I will give thee whatso'er thou wilt,  
 And not deny thee e'en my soul and body."

V. 716

."There is no lack of knowledge," said the guide,  
 "But then it is dispersed 'mongst all the folk.  
 If I have any knowledge of the matter  
 Thou wilt not find me speechless."

"Where," said Gív,  
 "Is Kai Khusrau? Thou must declare the truth."

The guide thus answered: "I have never heard  
 Or asked concerning one so named."

And so  
 Gív smote him with the sword and laid him low.

## § 17

*The Finding of Kai Khusrau*

Gív like a madman roamed about to find  
 Some traces of the prince. While seven years passed  
 His loins were galled by sword and leathern girdle.  
 He fed on onagers and wore their skins,  
 At times had brackish water and green herbs,  
 And went about the desert and the mountains  
 In travail and in hardship far from men.

Now at the time when Rustam led his host  
 Across the river to the Íránian side  
 Afrásiyáb returned to Gang, Túrán

Came to his hand again, and then he bade  
 Pírán : " Bring hither ill-starred Kai Khusrau  
 Back from Máchín and give him to his mother,  
 But have the roads well watched."

Pírán dispatched

A messenger upon a noble camel,  
 And had the son of Siyáwush brought back—  
 A prudent and a life-inspiring youth—  
 And gave him to his mother. Passed a while.

As gallant Gív was roaming o'er Túrán

In melancholy case, it so fell out

V. 717

One day that, full of anxious thoughts, he came  
 Within the precincts of a famous wood,  
 And wandered woe-begone along the mead ;  
 The world was jocund but his heart was sad.  
 He saw the earth all verdant, brooks a-brim,  
 And all the scene right apt for rest and sleep.  
 Dismounting from his horse he turned it loose,  
 And laid him down but with an anxious heart.  
 He said : " The foul Dív verily possessed  
 The paladin when he beheld that dream.  
 I find no traces here of Kai Khusrau ;  
 What do I gain by all my wanderings ?  
 Now while my comrades are engaged in war,  
 And while my friends are sitting at the feast,  
 These seeking pleasure, those in quest of fame,  
 My lot is throwing walnuts on a dome !  
 I do but spend my soul in vain, 'tis like  
 A bended bow ; Khusrau hath not been born  
 At all, or fate hath flung him to the winds.  
 I get but toil and hardship by my quest :  
 Blest is the man that perisheth by poison."

With heart all sorrowful he roamed about  
 Those meadows in his search, and spied afar  
 Beside a sparkling stream a beauteous youth  
 Of cypress-height, a wine-cup in his hand,

And on his head a bright, sweet wreath. His mien  
Betokened Grace and wisdom. Thou hadst said :—  
“’Tis Siyáwush upon his ivory throne,  
And turquoise-crowned ; his looks exhale the scent  
Of love itself, his locks adorn the crown.”

Gív thought : “ This is none other than the prince !  
Naught but a throne befitteth such a mien.”

Dismounting from his charger he advanced

V. 718

On foot and, as he drew anear, the bolts

Were loosened on the portal of his travail,

And all his splendid treasure came in sight.

When Kai Khusrau looked from beside the stream

He smiled, while gladness made his heart to throb,

And thought : “ This warrior is none else but Gív :

This land hath not a chief of such a stamp.

He is engaged in making quest for me

To bear me to Írán to make me Sháh.”

As that redoubted warrior approached,

Khusrau the prince moved forward from his place,

And said to him : “ O Gív ! thou art well come ;

Thy coming here is wisdom’s fitting gift.

How didst thou make thy passage to this land ?

What tidings hast thou touching Tús, Gúdarz,

And Sháh Káús ? Are they in happiness,

And do they in their hearts think of Khusrau ?

How is it with the elephantine Rustam,

The aspiring one, with Zál, and all the rest ? ”

Gív heard the words amazed, invoked the name

Of God, and answered : “ O exalted chief !

All yearn for thee. Methinketh that thou art

The son of Siyáwush, of royal race,

And wise ; but say, thou head of upright men !

Who told thee of Gúdarz, Gív, and Kishwád ?

May Grace and happiness be thine.”

He answered :—

“ O lion-man ! my mother told me this—

V. 719

That when my father by the Grace of God  
 Entrusted unto her his last commands,  
 He said: "Whatever mischief may befall me,  
 Still in the end will Kai Khusrau appear,  
 And bring a key to open all the locks.  
 When he hath grown a noble warrior  
 The doughty Gív will come forth from Írán,  
 And bear him to the throne among the nobles  
 And lion-men. His valour will restore  
 The world, and execute revenge for me."

Gív said: "O head of all the chiefs! what mark  
 Hast thou to indicate the Grace of kingship?  
 The mark of Siyáwush was manifest  
 As 'twere a drop of pitch upon a rose-bed,  
 Uncover then and show to me thine arm,  
 Because thy mark is known to every one."

The prince made bare his arm and Gív perceived  
 The black mark on it. Now this mark had been  
 A birth-mark from the time of Kai Kubád—  
 A clear distinction of the Kaian race.  
 When Gív beheld that mark he did obeisance,  
 And weeping told his errand. Kai Khusrau  
 Embraced him, giving thanks with joy, and asked  
 About Írán, the imperial throne, Gúdarz,  
 And Rustam, lover of the fray. Gív said:—  
 "O royal world-lord, noble, fortunate,  
 And wise! were God, who knoweth good and ill,  
 To give to me the whole of Paradise,  
 The seven climes and sovereign sway withal,  
 The seat of greatness and the crown of might,  
 My heart would not exult therein so much  
 As in beholding thy face in Túrán.  
 Who knoweth in Írán if I am living,  
 Or if I have been laid in dust or burned,  
 Or have encountered Siyáwush alive,  
 And questioned him about his care and travail?

Thanks be to God that fate determineth  
This irksome toil in happiness and joy."

Together they departed from the wood  
While Kai Khusrau asked after Sháh Káús,  
About Gív's seven years of grief and pain,  
His lodging, sleep, and food. Gív answered all,  
And spake about the purpose of the Lord,  
The vision of Gúdarz, his own long toil,  
His vietuals, eloths, and rest, his pains and pleasures ;  
How years had spent the Grace of Kai Káús,  
And how he was distracted for his son ;  
How all was dark and scentless in his palace,  
And how the desolation was complete.  
The heart of Kai Khusrau burned at these woes,  
His two ehceeks flamed like fire. He said to Gív :—  
" Fate giveth thee for travail rest and ease ;  
Be as my sire, but say not anything  
To any one, and note what time will bring."

### § 18

*How Gív and Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird*

The ehieftain mounted on the steed of Gív,  
And that brave warrior preceded him  
With Indian sword in hand. If any met them  
Gív, ever on the watch, struck off his head,  
And covered up the eorpse with earth and dust.  
They made their journey to Siyáwushgird,  
And, when they both reeovered heart and wit,  
They made a eonfidant of Farangís,  
And privily agreed to quit the place,  
Unnoticed by the troops. " We shall but straiten  
The world to us if we delay," said she.  
" Afrásiyáb will hear, will neither eat  
Nor sleep, but like the White Dív follow us,

V. 721

Will make our hearts despair of pleasant life,  
 And leave not one of us, at large or hiding,  
 Alive. The world is full of enemies,  
 Our whole land is the abode of Áhriman.  
 Hear mine advice, my son endowed with Grace !  
 There is a meadow near out of the track  
 Of Turkman cavaliers ; be there at dawn,  
 And have this saddle and black bridle with thee.  
 Thou wilt behold a mountain whereupon  
 Clouds fret their faces. Having scaled the height  
 Thou wilt behold the mead like jocund spring,  
 All rivulets and purling streams : the soul  
 Reviveth at the sight. When it is noon,  
 And thou art eager for repose, the herds  
 At pasture there will water at the streams.  
 Show to Bihzád the saddle and the bridle,  
 And, if he proveth tractable, advance,  
 Go quickly to him, let him see thy face,  
 Caress him with thy hand and speak to him.  
 When Siyáwush had given up all hope  
 Of this world, and his day was turned to night,  
 He spake thus to Bihzád his sable steed :—  
 ‘ Be thou henceforth free as the wind itself.  
 Remain upon the mountains and the meadows,  
 And when Khusrau shall come in quest of thee  
 Be thou his charger, tramp the whole world thro’,  
 And sweep the earth of foemen with thy shoe.’ ”

.

## § 19

*How Kai Khusrau won Bihzád*

V. 722

The valiant chieftain mounted on his steed  
 With Gív in front on foot. They set their faces  
 Toward the heights as men who seek for safety.  
 Now when the herds came down to watering,

And having drunk their fill turned to depart,  
 Illustrious Khusrau went hastily  
 Toward the stream and, to attain his wish,  
 Showed to Bihzád the saddle and the reins.  
 The steed looked at him, recognised a master,  
 And stirred not from the stream, but gazed with sighs  
 Upon the pard-skin seat of Siyáwush,  
 The lengthy stirrups, and the poplar saddle.  
 This Kai Khusrau observed and hurried up.  
 Meanwhile the noble black stood still and wept.  
 Moreover Kai Khusrau and Gív wept too,  
 As though they had been burning in fierce flame,  
 And while they shed tears from their eyes their tongues  
 Were full of curses on Afrásiyáb.  
 Khusrau caressed the horse's eyes and face,  
 Stroked down his chest and shoulders, scratched his  
     hide,  
 Put o'er his head the bridle, saddled him,  
 And spake the while with grief of Siyáwush,  
 Then mounting gripped his legs; the mighty beast  
 Sped like a blast out of the sight of Gív,  
 Who troubled and amazed invoked God's name.  
 "This," he exclaimed, "is subtle Áhriman  
 Appearing in the likeness of a horse!  
 The prince's life is lost and my toil too,  
 My toil—the only treasure that I had!"

When Kai Khusrau had traversed half the mountain  
 He drew his black reins and remained till Gív  
 O'ertook him, then the shrewd and valiant prince  
 Exclaimed: "Shall I inform the paladin  
 What I perceived was passing in his thoughts?"

Gív said to him: "O most exalted prince!  
 All secrets should be open unto thee:  
 Thou with thy Grace divine and Kaian stature  
 Canst penetrate a hair and see within it."

He said: "Thou didst mistrust this noble steed,



And think : ‘ Now Áhriman hath got the youth,  
Who hath gone off and turned my toil to wind.  
My spirit mourneth and the dívs rejoice.’ ”

The veteran Gív dismounted from his horse,  
Invoking blessing on the warrior-prince,  
And said : “ May day and night be fortunate  
To thee, thy foemen’s hearts be rooted out,  
Since God hath given to thee worth and birth,  
With throne and stature, state and Grace divine.”

They left the heights, and set off toward the palace  
With brains absorbed in thought and scheming minds ;  
On reaching Farangís they much discussed  
The toilsome journey, and the way to keep  
The project secret. When she saw Bihzád  
Her face was hidden by a flood of tears,  
She laid her cheek against his mane and chest,  
And called upon the soul of Siyáwush.  
When she had wept she hurried to her hoards,  
For in the palace was a secret treasure—  
Known but to her—of jewels and dínárs,  
Of iron maces and horse-furniture,  
As well as daggers, swords, and massive sparths.  
With cheeks that ran with tears of blood, and liver  
Pierced by her grief, she showed her son the treasure,  
And said to Gív : “ O veteran in toil !  
Choose what thou pleasest from this treasury—  
Dínárs and jewels fit for kings to wear,  
And crowns with patterns wrought in precious stones.  
We are the keepers and the hoard is thine ;  
Thine are the toil and risk.”

V. 724

He kissed the ground,  
And said : “ O chief of dames ! thou makest earth  
A Spring in Paradise, and, as thou willest,  
The sky apportioneth both good and ill.  
Be all the world a slave before thy son,  
And be the heads of all thy foes wrung off.”

When Gív's eye fell upon those precious things  
 He chose the mail of valiant Siyáwush.  
 They then selected all the choicest gems,  
 And bare away as much as they could carry  
 As well as helms, rich armour for the steeds,  
 And weapons suited to a paladin,  
 Then having locked the hoard the prince in haste  
 Made ready for the journey through the waste.

## § 20

*How Farangís went with Kai Khusrau and Gív to Írán*

This done they put the saddles on their steeds,  
 Those fleet and famous steeds, while Farangís  
 Assumed the helmet, and all three departed  
 Like wind and eagerly toward Írán,  
 But secretly and taking all precautions.

The thing, however, could not be concealed  
 A moment; one approached Pírán and said:—  
 "Illustrious Gív came from Írán to seek  
 The brave and shrewd Khusrau, and hath gone back  
 With him and Farangís."

Pírán was grieved,  
 And trembled like the branches of a tree.  
 He thought: "The king's foreboding hath proved true!  
 What shall I say to him? My lustre now  
 Is darkness in his eyes!"

He chose Kulbád  
 And Nastíhan—a man of steel—and bade  
 Three hundred Turkman horse to muster dight  
 For war, and thus addressed them: "Hence with you,  
 Lose no time in your saddles, place the head  
 Of Gív upon a spear, hide Farangís  
 In dust, and bind accurséd Kai Khusrau—  
 The ill-starred lackland. If the miscreant

Shall cross the river what will not befall  
Our land and chiefs!"

Thus went the brave young band  
Commanded by two wary paladins.

The persecuted prince and Farangís,  
Worn out with journeying and nights of toil,  
Had laid them down to sleep, and while they slept  
Gív stood on guard with angry eyes intent  
Upon the road by which the band approached.  
He wore his habergeon; his helm was on;  
His heart was full; he was prepared to die;  
And, like a valiant chief, he had his steed  
Accoutred by his side in case of need.

## § 21

### *How Kulbád and Nastíhan fled from Gín*

Gív saw afar the dust raised by the troops,  
And having drawn his sword sent up a shout  
Like thunder, such a shout as would have dazed  
A lion's brain and spirit, then he rushed  
Like dust among the troop and made earth dark  
By combat. With his sword and mace he showered  
Down iron from above, till by the blows  
The heads of all the chiefs grew sick of strife,  
While to his eyes, such were his pain and rage,  
A river seemed a rill. Anon they hemmed him—  
A raging Lion in a host of men.  
The field became a reed-bed with their spears,  
Both sun and moon were hid, the Lion raged,  
And made a winefat of the bed of reeds  
With blood, o'erthrowing many of his foes:  
Those valiant cavaliers were all astound,  
And thus Kulbád addressed brave Nastíhan:—  
"This is a rock of flint with neck and arms!  
See here the Grace of Kai Khusrau and not

The mace of Gív ! I know not what will come  
 Upon our fields and fells, for who can traverse  
 The will of God ? Astrologers presage  
 Disaster to Túrán and to her lords."

They made a charge at Gív with all their troops  
 Like lions, giving and receiving blows :  
 The battle-shouts and blast of clarions  
 Went up and shook the mountains to their cores,  
 The -alleys and the plains were filled with slain,  
 And earth became like cecis-bloom with blood.  
 The whole host turned away in flight from Gív—  
 That noble chief, the refuge of the troops—  
 And made their way all wounded and fordome  
 To proud Pírán, while gallant Gív returned,  
 With breast and hands all bloody, like a lion  
 To Kai Khusrau, and said : " O prince ! rejoice !  
 May health be thine, and wisdom thy companion !  
 Kulbád and Nastíhan the deft of hand  
 Have been pursuing us with hostile troops,  
 And those that still survive have gone back home  
 With necks and chests in case to ask our tears.  
 I know not any horseman in Írán  
 Save Rustam able to encounter me."

Khusrau, pure in the Faith, rejoiced o'er Gív,  
 Called blessings down on him, and praised him greatly ;  
 They took some food, such as came first to hand,  
 And hasted on toward the trackless waste.

Now when the Turkman troops came to Pírán  
 So stricken, heated, and discomfited,  
 He spake in anger to Kulbád, and said :—  
 " This is a marvel which must not be hidden !  
 What have ye done to Gív ? Where is Khusrau ?  
 How went the matter ? Tell me honestly."

Kulbád said : " If I tell, O paladin !  
 What gallant Gív did to our warriors,  
 Thou wouldst no more of battles. Thou hast seen me

V. 727

Oft with the host, and hast approved my prowess,  
 Yet when I charged him, thinking: 'Now shall I  
 Behold his overthrow,' in sooth he bore  
 Above a thousand buffets of mine ax.  
 Thou wouldst have said: 'His head is but an anvil,  
 His chest and arms are solid ivory!'   
 Oft have I gazed on Rustam in the fight,  
 And hearkened tales of mighty warriors,  
 But never knew one so endure the blows,  
 The rush, and whirl of war. Though we had borne  
 Wax maces, and our horsemen pard-skin lanees,  
 No wonder had his shoulders, arms, and breast  
 Been pounded small. He kept his dash and keenness  
 Throughout, and bellowed like an elephant.  
 The plain was heaped with slain, our warriors  
 Were routed by one man!"

Pírán was wroth ;

"Enough," he said, "'tis shame to tell the tale ;  
 Such words as these are not for cavaliers.  
 Attempt no more to strive with men of war.  
 Thou wentest forth with noble Nastíhan,  
 And troops like lions ; now thou makest Gív  
 A maddened elephant ; thy fame is sped  
 With mighty men ; Afrásiyáb at hearing  
 Will fling away from him the imperial crown,  
 Because two paladins, two gallant horsemen,  
 Accompanied by soldiers dight for war,  
 Turned tail before a single cavalier,  
 Who slaughtered many ! Moeking and disgrace  
 Are thine, not standard, kettledrum, and mace."

## § 22

*How Pírán pursued Kai Khusrau*

V. 728

Pírán chose from his troops six thousand horse—  
 Brave warriors. "Swiftly ply," he said to them,

"Your fleet steeds' reins, like savage lions go  
 By day and night, no girdle must be loosed,  
 For if Khusrau and Gív shall reach Írán  
 The women there will be as lionesses,  
 And neither earth nor water will remain  
 Within Túrán. Afrásiyáb, heart-seared,  
 Will lay the blame of this escape on me,  
 Not on the process of sun, moon, and stars."

Thereat they raised their heads and hurried on  
 By day and night, till scattered and disordered  
 They reached a narrow river, where the stream  
 Was deep and difficult for men to cross,  
 That river which was called Gulzaryún,  
 And was in springtide like a stream of blood.

Upon the further bank the prince and Gív  
 Were sleeping: Farangís was keeping watch,  
 And looking round her from her post descried  
 The banner of the leader of Túrán!

V. 729

She ran to Gív, gave the alarm, and roused  
 The sleepers, crying: "Man of toil! arise!  
 'Tis time to flee, a host pursueth us.  
 Our time, I fear, is come. If they shall take thee  
 They will not leave thee living and will rack  
 Our hearts for thee. Me and my son in tears  
 Pírán will bear bound to Afrásiyáb,  
 And after that I know not what may chance;  
 None wotteth of the secrets of high heaven."

Gív said: "O Moon of dames! why vex thy soul  
 Herein? Ascend yon mountain with the prince;  
 Fear nothing from Pírán or from his host.  
 The conquering Lord of earth is mine ally,  
 The star of fortune lieth on my breast.  
 By help of God, the Author of our lives,  
 I will not leave a rider in the saddle."

Then said Khusrau: "O warrior! my cause  
 Is wearisome to thee. I have been spared

The net of bale. Seek not the Dragon's breath  
So oft. Be mine to go upon the plain,  
And spurt blood heavenward with my scimitar."

V. 730

Gív answered: "Noble prince! the world hath need  
Of thee to wear its crown. My sire and I  
Are paladins whose loins are ever girt  
To serve the Sháhs; threc score and eighteen brothers  
Have I; the world will perish with thy name,  
For paladins are many, Sháhs are few.  
Few? I see none! If I am slain, another  
Will take my place, the royal head and crown  
Will still survive; but if afar from here  
Thou perish <sup>1</sup> I see none fit for the crown  
And throne. The winds will take my seven years' toil,  
My race will be disgraced. Choose then the heights,  
And mark yon host. The World-lord is mine aid.  
Earth is beneath thy shadowing wings; if I  
Succeed thy Grace will give the victory."

## § 23

*How Pírán contended with Gív*

Gív donned his mail and came forth like a lion,  
His steed as 'twere a mountain under him.  
The chief was on this side, the host on that;  
Between the river flowed and barred the way.  
Gív roared out like a thunderclap in spring,  
Inquiring for the captain of the host.  
Pírán was wroth, upbraided Gív, and said:—  
"Thou miscreant by nature and descent!  
Com'st thou alone so hardily to face  
An army? Thou shalt taste two-headed javelins,  
While falcons' talons shall provide thy bier.  
Thou art a single horseman, iron mountain

<sup>1</sup> "Si tu pérís dans une *captivité* lointaine."—MOHL.

Although thou be. A thousand will surround thee  
Like ants, will smash the armour on thy breast,  
And drag thy carrion-carcass in the dust.  
The mighty lion springing spake this saw :—  
‘Whene’er the stag hath reached its destined day  
Fate reckoneth each breath drawn by the prey  
Till it shall cross a lion on the way.’

V. 73<sup>1</sup>

So fortune now hath brought thee in my path  
Here in the presence of this famous host.”

Brave Gív, that chief of mighty paladins,  
Replied in thunder-tones : “Thou miscreant Turkman  
Of dívs begotten ! perish chiefs like thee !  
Thou sawest my revenge for Siyáwush,  
And hadst good reason to admire my prowess,  
For many chieftains of Túrán and Chín  
Fell by my hand in battle. I it was  
Who ravaged all thy home and wrecked thy life.  
Thy two chief dames were in the company  
That I dragged off in bondage from Khutan,  
Thy sister one, the other was thy spouse,  
Who ever tendered thee both soul and body.  
When I beheld those wretched Turkman dames  
I gave them to the meanest of my slaves,  
While thou didst show thy back as women would,  
And run away with shrieks and doleful howls.  
For thee mankind should fight like womankind ;  
Brag not of bravery to warriors,  
For chiefs shall sing hereafter to thy shame  
How Gív unaided carried off Khusrau,  
And all shall hold your names to be disgraced.  
Again, while all the princes of the earth—  
Faghfúr and Cæsar and the Khán of Chín,  
The nobles and the kin of Shah Káús,  
Brave men and warriors with golden casques—  
Sought Rustam’s daughter eagerly in marriage,  
And Tús too sent to ask her, matchless Rustam



V. 732

Met him with scorn, and put their offer by  
Because they were unworthy. Afterward,  
When he had looked throughout the world in vain,  
He gave his favourite daughter to myself—  
A daughter whom he prized above his crown.  
That high exalted and most noble prince  
Gave me the horsewoman Bánúgashasp,  
His eldest daughter, chose me of all lords,  
And raised my head to heaven. I gave my sister,  
That Moon of ladies—Shahr-Bánú-Iram—  
To him. Excepting elephantine Rustam,  
The lion-man, I do not know my match,  
And when I come with him to take revenge  
Ye must make ready to bewail your dead.  
Now with this steel-blue falchion will I turn  
The world before your eyes as black as pitch,  
And if I leave one of your host alive  
Give to me never more the name of man.  
Íránward bear I royal Kai Khusrau  
To bring him to the monarch of the brave,  
To seat him on the famous ivory throne,  
And place upon his head the glorious crown.  
Then will I don again this precious mail,  
And make Túrán the lair of mighty lions.  
Son am I to Gúdarz son of Kishwád;  
The noble Gív am I, the prince of chiefs,  
Thou luckless Turkman, thou accursed Pírán!  
May no crown, throne, or realm be ever thine.  
I will behead thee with mine Indian sword,  
Thy mail and helmet shall weep over thee;  
Death from my twisted lasso shalt thou meet,  
Thy mail and helm shall be thy winding-sheet.”

## § 24

*How Pírán was taken by Gív*

Pírán was furious and wept with rage,  
 Then gripping with his legs urged on his steed,  
 And, with his massive mace upon his shoulder,  
 Launched forth like boat on stream, invoking Him  
 That giveth every good. Gív bode his time  
 Until the chief had crossed, and then, declining,  
 Brave leader though he was, as if through fear  
 The combat, fled. His foe approached, the world  
 Grew night-dark. Gív, when he had drawn Pírán  
 Afar from stream and host, flung mace on saddle  
 And charged "like dragon raging," thou hadst said.  
 Pírán the Lion fled pursued by Gív,  
 Who unobserved took from the straps his lasso,  
 Then whirling round his arm discharged the coil,  
 And caught his foeman's head, dismounted him,  
 Drove him afoot disgraced far from the stream,  
 Then threw him on the ground, secured his hands,  
 And donned his mail. When this was done Gív took  
 His prisoner's flag and rode up to the bank.  
 The Turkmans seeing their commander's flag  
 Advanced to meet him as a thing of course.  
 There rose a shout with din of clarions,  
 Of pipes, and Indian bells. Perceiving this  
 Gív strove as 'twere a boat against the waves,  
 And laid his massive mace upon his shoulder,  
 While all the troops looked at him wondering.  
 Soon with reins lightly held and stirrups pressed  
 He filled the haughty 'Turkmans' heads with fear,  
 And with his sword, his stirrups, arms, and onset  
 Laid them in dust. The plain was like a mountain  
 Of dead, one man discomfited the host.  
 The chieftains turned their backs, the Lion charged

V. 733

V. 734

The Flock, that great host fled from Gív, who crossed  
 The stream again so fresh that thou hadst said :—  
 “He hath not dreamed of foes.” He hurried back  
 To cut Pírán’s head off, but drave him first  
 Afoot, scorned, hustled, and beside himself,  
 In anguish, wan, and wretched to Khusrau.  
 Gív then dismounted, drew anear the prince,  
 And, having kissed the ground and homaged him,  
 Exclaimed : “This miscreant and faithless man  
 Is now a captive in the Dragon’s jaws,  
 So let him now be even as the wind,  
 Like Siyáwush, who hearkened to his words.”

V. 735

Pírán too did obeisance to the prince,  
 Cried with a loud voice, kissed the ground, and said :—  
 “O prince that seekest after understanding,  
 And art a shining sun among the people !  
 Thou knowest mine affliction, my distress,  
 And struggle with the king on thine account.  
 Prince Siyáwush had lived if I thy slave  
 Had been at court. By rede and artifice  
 I saved thee and thy mother from the Dív.  
 So by thy Grace and fortune grant that I  
 Have from this Dragon’s clutch my liberty.”

## § 25

*How Farangís delivered Pírán from Gív*

Gív looked for orders at Khusrau and saw  
 The tearful eyes of Farangís, whose tongue  
 Was fraught with curses on Afrásiyáb.  
 She said to Gív : “O chief, who hast endured  
 Such wanderings ! this hoary paladin  
 Is both a wise and understanding prince ;  
 And know that next to God—our Judge and Guide—  
 He was the means of saving us from death.

He with his love screened us from injury,  
 And seeketh now for quarter in return;  
 So grant him to us, O thou noble one!  
 For he hath never led the way to ill."

Gíiv said to her: "O chief of ladies! live  
 For ever bright in mind and joyfully.  
 I swore a mighty oath by moon and crown,  
 And by the great Sháh's throne: 'If I shall get  
 The best of him in battle I will make  
 Earth with his blood like eercis-bloom.'"

Khusrau

Said: "Keep thine oath to God, thou lion-like!  
 And ease thy heart on that score: pierce his ear  
 Through with thy dagger, and as blood-drops fall  
 Thence to the ground think of both love and ven-  
 geance."

V. 736

Gíiv saw the prince's heart warm to Pírán,  
 Perceived the prince's cheeks all tears and ruth,  
 So went and pierced Pírán's ear with his dagger,  
 And slept in peace because his oath was kept.  
 Pírán said to Khusrau: "I cannot go  
 Back to the host afoot; bid him restore  
 My steed; then thou hast given me life and means."

The valiant prince requested Gíiv: "Bestow  
 On me his charger, O thou mighty Lion!"

Gíiv spake thus to Pírán: "Brave warrior!  
 Why hast thou grown so feeble on the field  
 Of fight? If thou wouldst have thy wind-foot steed,  
 First will I bind thy hands, then thou shalt gain  
 Thy liberty upon a mighty oath  
 That none shall loose thy bonds except Gulshahr,  
 Because she is the chief among thy dames,  
 And knoweth thee completely—skin and marrow."

The paladin agreed and purchased life  
 And charger, swearing: "None shall loose my bonds  
 Upon the way. Gulshahr alone shall do it."

V. 737

Gív bound him, brought the horse, and bade him mount.

Then Farangís and goodly Kai Khusrau  
Embraced him tenderly; he took his leave  
With many blessings on Khusrau and Gív.

## § 26

### *How Afrásiyáb found Pírán on the Way*

The sun turned dark before Afrásiyáb  
When news came from the host; he sounded trump  
And tymbal, called to horse and went like fire.  
In haste he made two stages into one,  
And sped forth like an arrow from the bow.  
Arriving at the place whereat Kulbád  
Had fought he saw troops scattered o'er the land,  
While everywhere lay bodies of the fallen.  
He asked: "How came this paladin with troops  
Here from Írán? None of our warriors  
Knew of a mighty army coming thence.  
Who told those sons of dívs that Siyáwush  
Had offspring here? If dust had been his tutor  
Mine eyes had never seen a day like this."

"Thou mayst be easy," Sipahram replied,  
"So far as thy concern is for an army.

'Twas Gív, son of Gúdarz, none else; we saw  
No other cavalier with him. One man  
Discomfited our troops in fight, and so  
Gív and the prince and Farangís escaped."

On hearing this the monarch's cheeks turned pale:  
His heart was full of pain at this reverse;  
He answered: "This is as the sages said.  
When God bestoweth fortune on a man  
He cometh to the throne without an effort."

While they conversed a host appeared in sight

Led by Pírán besmirched with dust and blood.  
 The king imagined : " He hath captured Gív,  
 And come on first with news of vietory,"  
 But, nearer, saw that he was wounded sore  
 And bound fast as a rock upon the saddle,  
 With both hands pinioned tightly at his baek.  
 The king amazed and pained asked what it meant.  
 Then said Pírán : " No ravening wolf or tiger,  
 Or savage lion, is like Gív in battle,  
 Although alone. The fear of fighting him  
 Would make a erocodile burn under water.  
 He first attacked us with a massive maeë,  
 And dealt us blows as with a blaeksmith's hammer.  
 By dint of steed and dexterous horsemanship  
 He overthrew, smote down our cavaliers,  
 And slaughtered them at will, yet cloud ne'er rained  
 More drops than sword-strokes fell upon his head !  
 In sooth his saddle was no bed of roses ;  
 Thou wouldst have said : ' He is a mountain's match.'  
 At last our troops all turned and I alone  
 Remained to fight with him. He fled from me,  
 But threw his twisted lasso, and my waist  
 Was taken in its coils. I lost my head,  
 And fell with all my weight upon the ground.  
 He lighted from his charger, bound my hands.  
 And then remounting drave me on before him.<sup>1</sup>  
 He earried me in shame to Kai Khusrau,  
 And would have had my head, but Farangís  
 Came to mine aid ; he spared my life but pierced  
 Mine ear, and in a fury bound my hands,  
 Then by the Sháh's own life and head, by sun  
 And moon, by God Almighty, erown and throne,  
 Proposed to me a mighty oath, and I,  
 Since I saw fortune hostile, duly swore  
 That nobody should loose me but my wife,

V. 739

<sup>1</sup> Reading with P.

Gulshahr. Thus did he bind me head and foot  
With lassos and, when that was done, by oaths.  
I know not why the sky hath ceased to love me."

Afrásiyáb on hearing wept for rage,  
And lifting up his voice drave forth Pírán,  
Who writhing as he was made no reply.  
Then blustering and cursing swore the king:—  
"Though Gív and that Dív's child were thunder-clouds  
Or storm-winds I would make them fall from heaven.  
With this," he drew his sword, "this iron-piercer,  
Will I in vengeance rob them both of breath,  
And as for Farangís will make the world  
Both strait and dark to her when I shall catch her,  
For I will cleave her with the scimitar,  
And fling her to the fish to tear in picces.  
Khusrau is fain to seek Írán, but why  
Should Farangís thus bear him company?"

V. 740

## § 27

*How Gív disputed with the Toll-man*

Pírán departed sadly toward Khutan:  
Meanwhile Afrásiyáb pursued his march  
Toward Jíhún, and in his anger trailed  
His skirt in blood. He bade Húmán: "Haste on,  
And draw rein at the river. If Khusrau  
And Gív get over, any pains of ours  
Are but a desert-blast. I was forewarned  
Of this by what a sage said long ago:—  
'The seed of Túr and Kai Kubád combined  
Will raise a monarch of illustrious mind  
To make Túrán a brake of thorns again,  
And leave no city on its wide campaign.  
Írán will have his love, Túrán will know  
The vengeful face that looketh on a foe."

When Gív and Kai Khusrau had reached the stream

In haste to cross they wrangled with the toll-man.

Gív said : " What swift and well appointed boat  
Fit for the use of Kai Khusrau is here ? "

The man replied : " What hath a stream to do  
With king or slave ? If thou hast need to cross  
It is incumbent to bespeak a boat. "

Gív said to him : " Demand whate'er thou wilt,  
But let us cross because a host approacheth. "

The officer, on hearing this from Gív,  
Became extortionate, and said : " I ask  
No little toll, but one of four—thy mail,  
Thy black steed, handmaid, or thy moon-like page. "

Gív answered him : " O thou of broken wits !  
Do words like these become a man like thee ?  
Werc he a subject of the king of kings  
Thou wouldst receive thy portion from the world ;  
But what art thou to ask the Sháh himself ?  
Art thou so hasty, miserable wretch ?  
And then his mother is thy next demand !  
Thou wouldest have the moon's crown as thy toll !  
Or thirdly thou requirest black Bilzád  
Who when he hasteth overtaketh wind !  
Or fourthly in thy folly thou wouldst take  
My mail, when mail is indispensable,  
And this is steel which water will not wet,  
And such as fire and Indian scimitars,  
Or spears or arrows, have no power to harm !  
Thou wouldst have toll : then take it in the river !  
The stream for us, the ferry-boat for thee ;  
'Twill not be easy to collect thy fee ! "

V. 741



## § 28

*How Kai Khusrau crossed the Jíhún*

Gív told the prince : " If thou art Kai Khusrau  
 The stream will favour thee. When Farídún  
 Crossed the Arwand <sup>1</sup> it led him to the throne,  
 And all the world became the slave of him  
 Who had the Grace and glory. Tarry not  
 If thou art Sháh, the shelter of the Lions  
 And warriors. The stream will give thee passage,  
 Who hast the mien and Grace to deck a throne.  
 If I, or if thy mother should be drowned,  
 Grieve not. For thee I lived because the throne  
 Of king of kings was naught. My mother too  
 Bare me for thee. Pause not or else, I doubt not,  
 Afrásiyáb will reach the river-bank  
 In fury, hang me on the shameful gibbet  
 Alive, and fling thyself and Farangís  
 To feed the fish or tread you under hoof."

V. 742

Then Kai Khusrau replied : " So be it. Enough.  
 My refuge is with God the Succourer."

He lighted, groaned, fell prostrate in the dust,  
 And said : " Thou art my refuge and support ;  
 Thou showest justice and Thou art my way.  
 Thy Grace for good or ill sufficeth me ;  
 The shadow of Thy wing is wisdom's soul."

He spake, and radiant as the morning star  
 Bestrode his sable steed, took to the water,  
 Reached like a boat the toll-house opposite,  
 And issued from the bed of the Jíhún  
 With gallant Gív and Farangís behind him.  
 Thus all three safely gained the other side,  
 Where Kai Khusrau, his head and body bathed,  
 Thanked and adored the Maker of the world.

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 160.

As they went o'er the master of the boats  
 Astound said to his mates : " Behold a wonder !  
 This passeth all ! Springtide ! Jíhún in spate !  
 Three steeds and riders mailed ! No sage would deem  
 Him man who went across in such a ease."

He saw his plight, regretted his rash words,  
 Supplied his boat with such things as he had,  
 Set sail and went to ask the prince's pardon.  
 When he arrived upon the farther shore  
 He brought his offerings before Khusrau,  
 He brought a bow, a lasso, and a casque,  
 But Giv thus answered him : " Insensate dog !  
 Thou saidst : ' The stream will sweep a man away,'  
 And when so great and puissant a prince  
 Requireth thee to furnish him a boat  
 Refusest ! Perish all thine offerings !  
 A day will come when thou wilt think of this."

V. 743

The river-warden went off in chagrin,  
 Despairing of his life. On his return  
 The army from Túrán was at the toll-house.  
 Afrásiyáb, not seeing man or boat  
 Upon the stream, cried fiercely to the toll-man :—  
 " How found that div his way across the water ? "

The man replied : " O king ! my father took  
 The toll as I do, yet I never saw  
 Or heard of one who made the water land.  
 In springtime when the waves are running high  
 If thou dost enter there is no escape,  
 Yet those three riders crossed ! Thou wouldst have  
 said :—

' The air supported them upon its breast,'  
 Or, ' They are children of the rushing wind—  
 The messengers dispatched by God to man.' "

Afrásiyáb on hearing this turned pale,  
 And sighing deeply bade the man : " Launch forth  
 A boat upon the river with all speed.

See if thou canst discern the fugitives,  
 Upon the road or stopping for repose,  
 That I may take them prisoners. Make dispatch,  
 Out with the boat, and get thee gone at once."

Then said Húmán to him: "O king! consider,  
 And kindle not a fire within thy breast.  
 Wilt thou essay Írán with these few horsemen,  
 Essay the breath and clutches of the Lions,  
 The elephantine Rustam and Gúdarz,  
 Tús and Gurgín the shatterer of hosts?  
 Thou must be weary of the throne indeed  
 If thou wilt go thus to the Lions' claws.  
 Hence all is thine to Chín and to Máchín;  
 Sun, Saturn, Moon, and Pleiades are thine.  
 Guard thou Túrán and thine own lofty throne:  
 We need not now fear mischief from Írán."

With that they turned them in chagrin away,  
 And matters long continued in this stay.

## § 29

### *How Kai Khusrau came to Ispahán*

When Kai Khusrau and Gív arrived at Zam  
 Most men rejoiced but certain were displeased.  
 Gív sent out messengers to every part,  
 And wrote thus of the valiant prince: "The chieftain  
 Head of the race of noble Kai Kubád—  
 The exalted, blessed Kai Khusrau, to whom  
 The waters of Jíhún were as a throne—  
 Hath come rejoicing from Túrán."

He chose

Among the chiefs of Zam a messenger,  
 A valiant cavalier, wise, shrewd, and prudent,  
 Informed him of the case, and said to him:—  
 "Depart hence unto Ispahán—the land

Of Sháhs, the habitation of the mighty—  
And tell Gúdarz: 'O chief of paladins!  
Thy mind was not asleep when thou didst dream.'  
Then add this: 'Kai Khusrau hath come to Zam,  
And not a blast hath done him injury.'"

He wrote a letter unto Sháh Káús.  
The messenger arose and went his way.  
The wind-foot camels with their lips afoam  
Rushed onward fire-like. First he sought Gúdarz,  
Declared the message, and gave up to him  
The letter, which the paladin in chief  
Placed to his head with tears for Siyáwush  
And maledictions on Afrásiyáb.  
The messenger went on to Kai Káús  
While drops of sweat fell from the camels' necks.  
When he approached the palace-gate a shout  
Of gladness rose, the monarch gave him audience,  
And sprinkled jewels over Gív's dispatch.  
They decked the whole world in their happiness,  
They called for minstrels everywhere, while Rustam,  
When tidings of Gív's triumph reached Nímruz,  
Gave gold in largess to the mendicants  
Because that Lion had received no hurt;  
And afterward dispatched Bánúgashasp,  
Like lightning, bearing treasures, and with her  
Twelve hundred mighty men of name with gifts  
Of thrones and heavy crowns, three hundred damsels,  
And six score youths, all bearing golden goblets.  
The lady left her sire and went to Gív  
As swiftly as a bird upon the wing,  
While news spread everywhere: "The monarch's son,  
The young prince Kai Khusrau, is on his way."

As for the men of leading in the world  
They all resorted unto Ispahán.  
Gúdarz prepared his stately residence,  
And draped it with imperial brocade,

V. 746

Prepared a throne with gold and jewelry,  
Such as must needs be worthy of the Sháh,  
And armlets, torques, and earrings with a crown  
Of royal gems. He had the city decked,  
Prepared the Ground, and mounted on his steed.  
The illustrious chiefs arose and, all being ready,  
Went forward seventy leagues to meet the prince  
Upon the road according to their custom.  
As soon as Gíy appeared with Kai Khusrau  
The valiant cavaliers advanced on foot.  
Gúdarz the chieftain when he saw the prince,  
Accompanied by Gíy upon the road,  
Shed tears of gall and in his deep distress  
Spake much in memory of Siyáwush.  
The paladin then lighted from his steed,  
And clasped the youthful monarch to his breast,  
Paid him high compliments, did reverence,  
And said to him: "O monarch of the earth!  
Be bright in fortune and be bright in heart;  
I would not lose thee for a realm or throne.  
Far from thee be thy foeman's evil eye,  
And may the soul of Siyáwush be bright.  
God is my witness that to see thee lengtheneth  
My life. If I saw Siyáwush alive  
I should not laugh so from the heart as now."

He kissed the head and eyes of Gíy and said:—  
"Thou hast revealed a very heaven to us.  
Thou art no sluggard but a warrior;  
Yet on occasion thou canst bide thy time."

Then all the mighty warriors of Írán  
Bent down their faces to the ground before him,  
And as they turned back on their way rejoicing  
The fortunes of those haughty men grew bright.  
They reached the palace of the paladin,  
All reached it full of joy and happiness.  
There for one sennight in the festal hall

They tarried wine in hand, but toward the city  
 Of Sháh Káús upon the ensuing day  
 With joyful hearts set forward on their way.

## § 30

*How Kai Khusrau came to Káús*

When Kai Khusrau appeared before the Sháh  
 The world was filled with colour, scent, and beauty,  
 And everywhere in festal trim. The doors,  
 The roofs, and walls were full of precious things,  
 While minstrels had been stationed in all quarters,  
 And there were wine, rose-water, musk, and saffron.  
 The horses' manes were drenched with musk and wine,  
 While sweets and drachms were scattered under foot.  
 The tears coursed down the cheeks of Kai Káús  
 When he beheld the visage of Khusrau.  
 He came down from his throne, approached the prince,  
 And with his face caressed the prince's head  
 And eyes. The youthful atheling did homage,  
 And then they paced back to the throne together.  
 The Sháh inquired at large about the Turkmans,  
 And how the ruler of that people fared.  
 The prince replied: "That man of little wit  
 Still walketh on the face of earth for ill.  
 Why doth the Sháh inquire about that wretch?  
 May pleasure, crown, and throne be never his!  
 He slew my father vilely, shamefully,  
 And beat my mother with harsh blows that I  
 Might perish in the womb! May he ne'er scape  
 From woe! As soon as my pure mother bare me  
 That miscreant dispatched me to the mountains.  
 Among the cattle, goats, and buffaloes,  
 I reckoned by the sun my nights and days.  
 At length Pírán arrived, and from the heights

V. 747

Conducted me to that vindictive king.  
 I trembled at his rage and savagery,  
 Afraid of what might come. He asked me questions,  
 While I concealed what wit and worth I had.  
 If he inquired of heads I spake of feet,  
 If he inquired of food I talked of place.  
 God took away his sense and intellect,  
 And so the dullard took me for a fool,  
 Conceived my head to be ill stocked with brains,  
 And sent me to my mother with a curse."

v. 748

Káús said : "Noble youth ! the world desireth  
 That thou shouldst wear the crown, for thou'rt a prince,  
 And, like the king of kings, both wise and worthy."

Khusrau said : "Monarch of this ancient throne !  
 If I should give thee an account of Gív,  
 And what hath been accomplished by his hands,  
 The Sháh would wonder, and no marvel too,  
 Because it passeth bounds. Full many a hardship  
 Did he endure, and sought me in Túrán  
 With strivings, yet he bore not toils so great  
 As those which followed in my company,  
 For then two noble paladins with troops  
 Came after us like fire upon the road.  
 Idolater of Hindústán beholdeth  
 No maddened elephant do what I saw  
 Gív do. Methought : 'No crocodile will come  
 Forth from the streams to fight thus !' That great host,  
 And those two paladins, were seized with panic—  
 Both old and young alike—and afterward,  
 What time Pírán came boldly with girt loins  
 Upon a wind-foot steed, Gív flung his lasso  
 And caught the paladin. I interceded,  
 O king ! for him, else Gív had ruthlessly  
 Struck off his head. Know that Pírán had suffered  
 Through anguish for my sire, had never spoken  
 Aught ill of me, and saved me and withal

v. 749

My mother from the fierce, grim Lion's claws,  
 Who else had ta'en my head just like my father's.  
 Thus till we reached the banks of the Jíhún  
 Gív with his ox-head mace ceased not from combat.  
 A paladin like him should keep his youth  
 For ever."

When Káús had heard Khusrau  
 His cheeks bloomed like a rose. He clasped Gív's head,  
 And kissed his face and bosom many times,  
 Then gave him presents such as in the world  
 None, whether great or small, had seen before.  
 They wrote a patent out on painted silk  
 For Khurásán, Rai, Kum, and Ispahán.  
 The prince, whose Grace divine was as Jamshíd's,  
 Gave these to Gív, whose head rose to the sun.  
 "Thou hast," the Sháh said, "undergone much toil,  
 So now, O toiler! take thy fill of treasure."

Gúdarz and all his sons with faces laid  
 Upon the ground called blessings down on him.  
 He had a golden pleasure-house prepared  
 For Farangís with earrings and a torque,  
 Set golden seats within the halls thereof,  
 Embellished the interior with brocade  
 Of Chín, and said to her: "O chief of dames!  
 May'st thou ne'er weep for sorrow. Thou hast left  
 Both land and kin, and borne much on the way.  
 Írán is now thy home, thy rede my guide."

That Moon of ladies blessed him. "May," said she, v. 750  
 "The world and age ne'er be deprived of thee."

### § 31

*How Tús refused Allegiance to Kai Khusrau*

Kishwád possessed a palace at Istakhr—  
 The glory of the nobles. Thither went,  
 Their audience with the monarch being closed,



Gúdarz with Kai Khusrau. When they had reached  
 That pleasance with its arabesques of gold  
 They placed the prince upon a golden throne,  
 And called down blessings on him as their Sháh.  
 The warriors of Írán all did him service  
 Save Tús, son of Naudar, who turned away :  
 'Twas he that had the drums, the golden shoes,  
 And charge of Káwa's standard. Much displeased  
 Gúdarz dispatched a friendly embassy  
 By brave, ambitious Gív, the man that had  
 The clutch of heroes and the leap of lions.  
 Gúdarz said : " Say to Tús, son of Naudar :—  
 Seek for no pretexts at this time of joy.  
 The nobles and the Lions of Írán  
 Have all invoked a blessing on the prince.  
 Why dost thou draw back at the Dív's command,  
 And quit the way of Him who ruleth earth ?  
 If thou refusest to obey Khusrau  
 There will be strife and vengeance 'twixt us twain.  
 The messenger is Gív, the words are mine,  
 And sanctioned by the nobles here assembled."

V. 751

Gív left the presence of his sire with words  
 Of anger in his heart. On reaching Tús  
 He said : " Thy rede and wisdom are not mates."

Tús hearing that replied : " It is not good  
 To play off tricks on me, for in Írán,  
 Save elephantine Rustam, I am first  
 Among the chieftains that command the host,  
 And grandson of the valiant Minúchihr,  
 The Sháh who with his sword subdued the world.  
 Naudar my father was the king of earth,  
 I represent the race of Farídún.  
 Whenever I engage myself in fight  
 I rend the lion's heart and leopard's hide.  
 Ye have, without my counsel and consent,  
 Established a new monarch in the world :

I will not be a party to this thing,  
 So talk not in my presence of Khusrau.  
 If from the offspring of Afrásiyáb  
 We make a king, then will our fortunes sleep.  
 We want no Sháh descended from Pashang;  
 A flock is ill entrusted to a leopard.  
 This is the fruitage of these toils of thine,  
 For Kai Khusrau is young and violent,  
 While he that ruleth earth should have high lineage,  
 Worth, Faith, and Grace. Now Fariburz, the son  
 Of Sháh Káús, is worthier of crown  
 And throne, not sprung from foes on either side,  
 But having Grace and glory, fame and right."

Then Gív arose in dudgeon, doubting both  
 The wisdom and the honesty of Tús,  
 And said: "O Tús, illustrious warrior!  
 Withdraw not when the drums sound. When thou  
 seest

The spear-heads of the kindred of Gúdarz  
 The gain that thou expectest will prove loss.  
 The many toils that we have borne together  
 Thou throwest to the winds. Hadst thou the Grace  
 And counsel we had sought not from Alburz  
 A monarch; and thy head hath not the crown  
 Because thou lackest brains and royal rede;  
 God doth bestow the throne of sovereignty  
 On one who hath the Grace, mien, sense, and counsel."

V. 752

He spake thus wrathfully and showed his back  
 In anger; thence returning to Gúdarz  
 He said: "Tús is no mate for rede and wisdom.  
 Thou wouldest say: 'His eyes are blind.' His choice  
 Is Fariburz, although no sovereign  
 On golden saddle is our prince's peer,  
 Nor have we such another cavalier."

## § 32

*How Gúdarz was wroth with Tús*

Gúdarz was full of wrath and said: " May Tús  
Cease from among the nobles of the world.  
Now will we let him see to whom belong  
The Grace, the sovereign sway, throne, state, and  
fortune."

His sons and grandsons numbered seventy-eight.  
He beat the drums and marched forth from the palace  
Out to the open with twelve thousand men  
Of his own kin, brave troops on barded steeds,  
Led by himself, that shatterer of hosts.  
Upon the other side came Tús, the chieftain,  
And bound the drums upon the elephants,  
While many warriors girded up their loins,  
And Káwá's standard led the central host.  
Tús saw Gúdarz with such a multitude  
As dazed the eyes of sun and moon, he saw  
A mighty elephant which bore a throne  
Of turquoise as resplendent as the Nile.  
Upon it sat the aspiring Kai Khusrau,  
With loins girt up and crown upon his head,  
Surrounded by ten score huge elephants ;  
Thou wouldst have said: " The world hath not a Sháh  
Save him." Khusrau shone moonlike on the throne,  
With earrings, torque, and armlets, on his head  
A crown of glittering gems, and in his hand  
An oxhead mace. Tús thought with saddened heart:—  
" If I shall fight to-day there will be slain  
A multitude of warriors in both hosts.  
This feud shall not arise within Írán,  
For naught would better please Afrásiyáb,  
The fortune of the Turkmans would awake,  
The throne of empire pass to Túrán,

And our prosperity be at an end."

He sent a man of wisdom and resource  
To Sháh Káús to say: "If any here  
Among us lay a shaft of poplar wood  
Upon his bow there will arise a fight  
Whereof Afrásiyáb will dream all night."

### § 33

*How Gúdarz and Tús went before Káús on the Matter  
of the Kingship*

Káús, on hearing these wise words, dispatched  
A messenger to summon both the chiefs.  
He went before the captain of each host,  
And mildly said: "Experienced veteran!  
Put not fell poison in a cup of milk,  
Replace thy sword, and loose thy girdlestead;  
This gain of ours must not be turned to loss.  
Let both the captains of the hosts appear  
Before me and without a retinue."

They went before the Sháh and Tús spake thus:—  
"If now the Sháh is weary of the crown  
And throne, his son should have the world, the might,  
The diadem, and throne of majesty.  
Why should a grandson, when there is a son,  
Put on the crown and sit upon the throne?  
Now Fariburz hath Grace and royal mien,  
And girdeth him as 'twere a savage lion."

V. 754

Gúdarz replied: "O thou of little wit!  
No sage would reckon thee to be a man.  
None in the world hath equalled Siyáwush  
Or been so great, discreet, and reticent.  
Now this aspirant is a son of his,  
'The same,' thou wouldest say, 'in face and form.'  
If on his mother's side he is from Túr

The grandson of the Sháh must still prove just.  
 There is not in Írán or in Túrán  
 One like him : to what end is thy crude talk ?  
 Thine eyes have never even seen his face,  
 His lofty mien, and lovingkindliness.  
 He crossed Jíhún and needed not a boat,  
 Such were his royal Grace and steadfast purpose.  
 As with Sháh Farídún, who crossed the Arwand  
 Without a boat, his courage and God's Grace  
 Preserved him from the hand and eye of ill.  
 Moreover, to avenge his father's blood,  
 He like a savage lion girdeth him  
 To banish toil and trouble from Írán,  
 And over-reach astute Afrásiyáb.  
 Surúsh the glorious said to me in sleep :—  
 ' His Grace will still the war-cry in Írán,  
 And when he shall adorn the crown and throne  
 Of chiefs, the world will cease from toil and hardship.'  
 Thou art no alien ; thou art from Naudar :  
 Thy father was perverse and thou art mad.  
 Had I my weapons I would drench thy neck  
 And breast in blood, would slay thee with my sword,  
 And end thy silly talk. Thou makest discord  
 Among the Kaians for thy selfish ends.  
 The king of kings acknowledgeth Khusrau,  
 And will bestow the throne on whom he will.

V. 755

Tús said : " O ancient chief ! what rancorous words !  
 Though thou art from Kishwád yet I am Tús,  
 Son of Naudar, a Sháh and a Sháh's son,  
 And if thy sword will penetrate an anvil  
 My spear will rend the centre of Mount Káf.  
 What booteth wordy war betwixt us twain ?  
 The king of kings doth know who is the chief."

V. 756

Gúdarz replied to him : " Talk not so much ;  
 I see not that thy glory is so great."

Then said he to Káuś : " Experienced Sháh !

Turn not from rule and custom, call before thee  
 The noble youths, and let thy clear mind judge ;  
 Discern between them which is worthier  
 As having royal mien and Grace divine,  
 And give to him the crown and throne if thou  
 Art weary of the crown and host thyself."

Káús replied to him : " This is not well,  
 For both alike are dear ; when I have chosen  
 One then the other will seek vengeance on me.  
 I will take means that this may not betide  
 Among our folk. Let both, each with a host,  
 Go to the entering in of Ardabíl—  
 The march where is the castle of Bahman,  
 And Áhriman is ever making war  
 On those that worship fire. No archimages  
 Dare settle there. I will give up the throne  
 Of kings to him who captureth that fortress."

V. 757

Gúdarz and Tús, contented with the plan  
 Of their clear-sighted chief, proposed no better,  
 But set their hearts on its accomplishment,  
 And from the monarch's presence forth they went.

## § 34

*How Tús and Fariburz went to the Castle of Bahman  
 and came back foiled*

Now when Sol rose in Leo, and the night  
 Was turned beneath, came Fariburz and Tús  
 In haste before the Sháh, and Tús spake thus :—  
 " Now will I take the drums, host, elephants,  
 With Káwa's flag, and turn the ruddy cheeks  
 Of foemen pale. The Grace of Fariburz,  
 And royal might, shall gird me royally."

The Sháh replied : " When men go forth to war

Their number more or less importeth not,  
 But by the purpose of the Lord of sun  
 And moon they may have triumph and success :  
 So if it seemeth good to Fariburz,  
 Array thine army and be diligent."

v. 758

Tús with the golden boots upon his feet  
 Went forth with Káwa's standard. Fariburz,  
 Son of Káuś, was at the army's centre,  
 While Tús went first with troops and elephants.  
 When he drew near the castle of Bahman  
 The ground seemed breathing fire, the lances' points  
 Flamed in the heat, the men of war were scorched  
 Beneath their mail. Thou hadst said: "Earth is  
     burning,  
 Air is a net of rebel Áhriman's!"  
 The ramparts rose to heaven; none knew a way  
 To battle there. Tús said to Fariburz:—  
 "A man of mettle going into fight  
 With lasso, falchion, and artillery,  
 Will strive to wreck his foes, but to this castle  
 Is no approach, at least we know it not.  
 Our loins are scorching underneath our mail,  
 The bodies of our beasts of burden burn.  
 Have no anxiety within thy heart:  
 Thou hast not ta'en, and none can take, this hold."

They went about the castle seven days,  
 And found no entrance, then turned back again  
 Despairing; their long journey proved in vain.

## § 35

*How Kai Khusrau went to the Castle of Bahman  
 and took it*

When tidings reached the chiefs and old Gúdarz,  
 The offspring of Kishwád: "Tús hath returned

With Fariburz, prepare thyself to go,"  
 He donned his mail, shouts rose, the world's new lord V. 759  
 Khusrau came forth. They set a golden throne,  
 Inlaid with emeralds, on an elephant;  
 Around the prince were warlike cavaliers  
 With flags of violet, with golden boots,  
 With crowns of amber, and with torques of gold  
 Adorned with divers gems. Gúdarz thus spake:—  
 "This is the first of days, for Kai Khusrau,  
 The atheling, accedeth to the throne."

The atheling sat on the golden seat,  
 Crowned and with mace in hand; he with Gúdarz,  
 Gív, and a numerous host went toward the castle.  
 When near the hold he girded up his loins,  
 Put on his mail, and, mounted on his charger,  
 Dictated to a scribe in lofty terms  
 A letter, which they wrote in royal style  
 With ambergris, and in the olden tongue:—  
 "This letter cometh from the Almighty's slave—  
 From noble Kai Khusrau the atheling,  
 Who, freed from wicked Áhriman's constraint,  
 Hath cleansed his hands from ill by help of God,  
 Who is eternally the Lord most high,  
 The Giver of our daily bread, our Guide,  
 The Lord of Mars, of Saturn, and the Sun,  
 The Lord of Grace, the Lord of puissance,  
 Who gave the throne and Grace of kings to me,  
 Fierce lion's claws and elephantine bulk.  
 The whole world is my kingdom; all is mine  
 From Pisces downward to the Bull's head. Now  
 If this hold be of Áhriman's domain,  
 The enemy of Him who made the world,  
 I by the Grace, and Holy God's command,  
 Wilt cast it headlong from the clouds to dust;  
 And if it is a hold of sorcerers  
 I can dispose of them without a host,



For when I have looped up my leathern lasso  
I take the heads of sorcerers in the noose ;  
While if the blest Surúsh himself is there  
The host is one at the command of God.  
I am not of the seed of Áhriman ;  
My soul hath Grace, my body lofty stature ;  
By God's command I will reduce the castle,  
Such are the orders of the king of kings."

Khusrau then took a lengthy lance and fixed  
Thereto the haughty letter banner-wise ;  
He asked for naught on earth but royal Grace,  
And ordered Gív to hasten with the spear  
Up to the lofty ramparts, saying thus :—  
" Take thou this letter of admonishment,  
And bear it to yon lofty castle's wall ;  
Plant there the spear, call on the name of God,  
Then quickly turn thy rein and hurry back."

That worshipper of God, that glorious chief,  
Gív, took the spear in hand and went his way.  
He set the letter by the wall, delivered  
The message of Khusrau, pronounced the name  
Of God who giveth good, and fled like wind.  
That noble letter vanished with a crash,  
Dust flew, and by command of Holy God  
The rampart of the stronghold split asunder ;  
Thou wouldst have said : " It thundereth as in spring."  
A shout went up from plain and mountain-top,  
The earth became black as a negro's face,  
Sun, Moon, and Pleiades were lost to sight,  
And thou hadst said : " A murky cloud ariseth,  
The air is like a mighty lion's maw."

Then Kai Khusrau urged on his sable steed,  
And shouted to the captains of the host :—  
" Make arrows rain in showers upon the hold,  
And let your bows be like a cloud in spring."

Immediately a cloud rose charged with hail,

Hail charged with death ; full many a dív was slain  
 And many venom-stricken fell to earth.  
 At length a brilliant light began to shine,  
 And all the heavy darkness cleared away ;  
 A glorious breeze sprang up ; the heaven above,  
 And all the face of earth, began to smile ;  
 The world became as 'twere the shining moon  
 By God's name and the prince's Grace, the dívs  
 Went at his bidding, and the gate was seen.  
 The monarch of the free made cntry there  
 With old Gúdarz, the offspring of Kishwád,  
 And saw a mighty city in the hold,  
 All gardens, spaces, halls, and palaces.

Upon the spot where darkness cleared and light  
 First shone Khusrau commanded to erect  
 A dome ascending to the darksome clouds.  
 It was ten lassos long and broad, its circuit  
 Was half a rapid Arab charger's course,  
 And round it there were lofty cupolas.  
 He brought and stablished there Ázargashasp,  
 And round it settled the astrologers,  
 The archmages, and the men of lore. He tarried  
 Till that Fire-fane attained to good repute,  
 And, when a year had passed, led forth his force,  
 Made up the baggage-train, and called to horse.

### § 36

#### *How Kai Khusrau returned in Triumph*

When news of Kai Khusrau, of his success,  
 And of God's Grace upon him, reached Írán  
 The world was in amazement that the prince  
 Had won that Grace and greatness ; all the chiefs  
 Went forth with joy and brought him offerings.  
 Prince Fariburz approached him with a band

Of warriors from Írán as 'twere a mountain,  
 And seeing him gat off his rose-red steed,<sup>1</sup>  
 Whilst brave Khusrau alighted from his black.  
 The uncle kissed the nephew on the face,  
 And, having set for him a throne of gold  
 Inlaid with turquoise, seated him thereon,  
 And joyfully saluted him as Sháh.  
 Then Tús approached him, bringing Káwa's flag,  
 The drums, and golden boots, and, having kissed  
 The ground, surrendered them to Kai Khusrau,  
 And said: "See who deserveth in the host  
 The drums, gold boots, and Káwa's glorious flag.  
 Give them to him; I merit them no more:  
 Mine errors cannot hope for aught but life."

Thus he apologised, abandoning  
 His foolish enterprise. The conquering prince  
 Received him well, placed him upon the throne,  
 And said: "For Káwa's standard, for the post  
 Of paladin, and for the golden boots,  
 I see none fitter in the host than thee,  
 Thine is the office and the rank is thine;  
 I have no wrath against thee in my heart,  
 Thou needest not to tender an excuse;  
 Thou didst not wish to have an alien Sháh."

The atheling both shrewd and fortunate  
 Departed thence upon his way to Párs,  
 And Kai Káuś, when he received the news:—  
 "The youth of lucky steps hath come," went forth  
 With cheeks like cereis-bloom to welcome him:  
 The old man's heart grew young with happiness.  
 Khusrau beheld his grandsire from afar,  
 And smiled; his heart was throbbing with delight;  
 He went afoot and offered reverence.  
 His grandsire, fain to look on him, embraced him

<sup>1</sup> At the present day the horses of the Sháh and of his sons have their tail-tips dyed red. (C. J. Wills, M.D., "Persia as it Is," p. 9.)

With smiles and praises well deserved, and said :—  
 “The Lion hath returned victorious,  
 Confounding his opponents’ hearts and eyes.”

They sought the palace and the world-lord’s throne—  
 His who had made the diadem his own.

### § 37

#### *How Káús set Khusrau upon the Throne of Kingship*

When they arrived they lighted from their steeds  
 With heartfelt, joyful greetings on their tongues.  
 Khusrau advancing kissed his grandsire’s hand,  
 And laid his cheek against the throne. Káús  
 Took the young prince’s hand, right joyfully  
 Set him upon the Sháh’s own seat, and bade  
 The treasurer bring forth the royal crown.  
 He kissed Khusrau and, having crowned him, quitted  
 The splendid ivory throne and sat below.  
 He brought an offering of emeralds  
 With many royal jewels from his treasures,  
 Invoking blessings oft on Siyáwush,  
 Whose image was Khusrau. Then all the nobles,  
 The chiefs, the leaders, and great men assembled,  
 They called down blessings on him as their Sháh  
 And sprinkled gold and jewels over him.

V. 764

The use and fashion of this world it is  
 To take with that hand and to give with this ;

We are aggrieved because of its caprice,  
 And alternate ’twixt summit and abyss.

If then thy heart alloweth thee be glad,  
 Ensue but pleasure while it may be had,

Provide thee well and give the rest away,  
 And suffer not one moment to be sad.

Enjoy thy wealth and be not niggardly,  
But share not earnings with thine enemy ;  
    God gave to thee and will give to thy child—  
That sucker springing from the parent tree.

Perceivest not how fully earth is stored  
With wealth and furnished with good things ? The Lord  
    Abateth nothing in His bounteousness :  
Abstain from sorrow and let joy be toward.

# INDEX

*This Index and the Table of Contents at the beginning of the volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Roman numerals.*

## A

ABBREVIATIONS, list of, 5

Abú Raihán Muhammad. *See*  
Albírúní

Aden, 79

Afrásiyáb, ruler of Túrán, *v seq.*,

11, 13, 14, 16 *seq.*, 20, 79,

81, 92, 98 *seq.*, 118, 127,

129, 149, 184, 189, 242 *seq.*,

257 *seq.*, 283, 286, 288, 296

*seq.*, 312 *seq.*, 335, 347 *seq.*,

360 *seq.*, 369, 373, 380, 381,

386, 392 *seq.*, 401 *seq.*

fights the Arabs for Irán and  
 takes it, 92

king of Túrán and Chín, 99

expelled from Irán by Kai

Káuś and Rustam, 101

fights with the Seven War-  
 riors, 111 *seq.*

nearly taken prisoner by

Rustam, 14, 116, 354

his plot against Suhráb and

Rustam, 129

his gifts to Suhráb, 130

identical with Astyages in

legend, 191

sends host to invade Irán,

224 *seq.*

determines to sue for peace

and sends hostages, 235 *seq.*

receives Zanga and consults

Pírán, 253 *seq.*

sends Pírán to welcome

Siyáwush, 258

plays at polo with Siyáwush,

264

Afrásiyáb, marries Farangís to  
 Siyáwush, 275

recalls Siyáwush from Gang-  
 dizh, 285

sends Garsíwaz to Siyáwush-  
 gird, 289

is deceived by Garsíwaz re-  
 specting Siyáwush, 296 *seq.*

sends Garsíwaz to summon  
 Siyáwush and Farangís to  
 court, 300 *seq.*

attacks, takes, and has Siyá-  
 wush executed, 314 *seq.*

appealed to by Farangís, 317  
 his treatment of Farangís,

320, 322

appealed to by Pírán, 324

spares Farangís, 325

and her son Kai Khusrau,

327

sees and questions Kai  
 Khusrau, 332

sends Surkha against the  
 Iránians, 344

marches to avenge Surkha,  
 348

fights with Tús, 353

is rescued from Rustam by

Húmán, 354

crosses the sea of Chín, 356

consults Pírán about Kai

Khusrau, 356

returns, 362

his vengeance on Irán, 363

pursues Kai Khusrau, 388

*seq.*

disgraces Pírán, 390

turns back at the Jíhún, 394

- Áfrigh, king of Kharazm, 190  
 Age, old, Firdausi's lament over his, 336  
 Agni, 25  
 Áhriman, the Evil Principle, 34, 42, 43, 51, 53, 56, 78, 160, 208, 214, 217, 250, 260, 303, 315, 324, 358, 361, 374 *seq.*, 405 *seq.*  
 Ahura, Mazda (Urmuzd), 25  
 Aírán-végó, region (Yrán-vej), 189  
 Albirúni, Abú Raihán Muham-mad, 189  
     his account of Alfir (Gang-dizh?), 190  
 Alburz, mountain, 11, 23, 27, 79, 96, 144, 336, 401  
     Káús' buildings on, 81  
 Alexander, the Great (Sikandar), 8 *seq.*  
     era of, 190  
 Alfir, fortress (Gang-dizh?), 190  
 'Alí, Khalifa, 337 and *note*  
 Alkús, Túránian hero, 114  
 Alp-Arselan, Sultán, 219 *note*  
 Ámul, city, 18, 104  
 Andariman, Túránian hero, 264  
 Angra Mainyn (Áhriman), 28  
 Antiochus, Sidetes, 80, 81  
 Arabia, 100  
 Arabs, 79, 81, 99  
     rebel against Kai Káús, 83  
     fight with Afrásiyáb for Yrán and are defeated, 92  
 Ard, day of, 287  
 Ardabíl, city, 336, 405  
 Ardshír Pápakán, Sháh, 10  
 Arjásp, ruler of Túrán, 9, 29  
 Arjásp, Túránian hero, 264  
 Arnold, Matthew, his "Sohrab and Rustum," 118  
 Artang, the, 19 and *note*  
 Arwand, river (the Tigris), 392, 404  
 Arzhang, a div, vi, 41, 43, 44, 56 *seq.*, 63, 64  
 Asfandiyár, Yránian hero, 29  
 Asp, as Persian termination, 9  
 Astyages, king of the Medes (Manda), 190, 191  
 Astyages, identical with Afrási-yáb in legend, 191  
 Athenæus, 10  
 Ázar (Ázarbáiján), 195  
 Ázarbáiján, province, 336  
 Ázargashasp, spirit of the light-ning, 57, 294, 345  
 Azi, Dahaka (Zahlák), 81
- B
- BABYLON, 80  
 Babylonia, 80, 81  
 Badar, battle of, 337 *note*  
 Bahar, fire-temple, 286  
 Bahman, Sháh, 9  
 Bahman, castle of, x, 336, 405 *seq.*  
 Bahrám, Yránian hero, viii, 33, 35, 38, 58, 62, 85, 127, 138, 144, 158, 249, 257, 258, 271, 290, 318, 338, 340  
     takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, 107 *seq.*  
     accompanies Siyáwush against Afrásiyáb, 226  
     put in command by Siyá-wush, 250  
 Bahrám, moralist, quoted by Fir-dausi, 186  
 Balkh, city, 9, 101, 228, 229, 231, 242, 246, 249  
 Balúch, Balúchistán (Makrán), 80, 226  
 Bánúgashasp, daughter of Rus-tam and wife of Gív, 365  
     stays with Rustam while Gív seeks Kai Khusrau, 365  
     her suitors, 383, 384  
     rejoins Gív, 395  
 Barbar, Barbaristán, country, vi, 79, 82 *seq.*, 90, 93, 98 *seq.*  
     identification of, 79  
     king of, 83, 94, 95  
     taken prisoner by Guráza, 97  
 Bármán, Túránian hero, vii, 18, 119, 129, 130, 150, 349

Bármán, his death and revival in legend, 119  
 marches on Írán, 228  
 defeated by Siyáwush, 229  
 Barzín, Íránian hero, 12, 22, 73  
 Barzín, fire-temple, 107  
 Berbera, trading-station, 79  
 Bíd, a div, 44, 54, 55, 64, 93  
 Bihzád, the horse of Siyáwush, ix, 312, 374 *seq.* 391  
 Birth-mark of the Kaian race, 372  
 Bístún, mountain, 128  
 Bízhan, Íránian hero, 366 and *note*  
 Black Stone, the, 163 and *note*  
 Bukhárá, city, 241  
 Bull, Bull-fish, mythological, 128, 407  
 Bundahish, Pahlaví treatise, 3 *note*, 11, 26, 81, 118, 189  
 Buzgúsh, name of a tribe, 55 and *note*

## C

CÆSAR, 383  
 Canbyses, father of Cyrus, 190  
 identical with Siyáwush in legend, 191  
 Canopus, star, 203  
 of Yaman, 203  
 Carnelians, of Yaman, 123  
 Caspian, sea, 189, 336  
 Castle, White, Íránian stronghold, vii, 118, 131, 138  
 evacuated by Gazhdaham, 137  
 Castle of Bahman, x, 336, 405, 406  
 Central clime, the, 27  
 Chách, city of Túrán famous for its bows (Táshkand), 241, 258, 358  
 Chares, of Mytilene, 10  
 Chevy Chase, 82  
 Chín country (often = Túrán), 77, 82, 111, 143, 154, 156, 237, 277, 286, 287, 289, 297, 305, 307, 357, 359, 383, 394  
 sea of, 12, 256, 276, 285, 356, 357

Chín, brocade of, 39, 203, 262, 290  
 king of Túrán and (Afrásiyáb), 99  
 helm of, 132  
 ornaments of, 232  
 cloth of gold from, 275  
 Khán of, 383  
 Clime, the central, 27  
 Climes, the seven, 15 *note*, 372  
 "Cloud," name given by Rustam to himself, 53  
 Cloud, of bale (Afrásiyáb), 13  
 Contents, table of, v  
 Courses, the Seven, of Rustam, v, 29, 44 *seq.*  
 Ctesias, 9  
 Ctesiphon, city, 80  
 Cyrus, the Great, 9, 190, 191  
 identical with Kai Khusráu in legend, 191

## D

DAÉVAS (dív), 28  
 Daghwí, desert, 193  
 Dakíkí, 3 *note*, 8  
 Dámaghán, city, 15  
 Dámúr, Túránian hero, 296, 319  
 overthrown by Siyáwush, 295  
 advocates execution of Siyáwush, 317  
 Dará, Sháh, 9  
 Dáráb, Sháh, 9, 11  
 Darband, pass of, 336  
 Darmesteter, Professor, on Firdausí's geography, 79, 80  
 Death, early, Firdausí's justification of, 119  
 Deipnosophistae, 10  
 Díná-í Mainóg-í Khirad, Pahlaví treatise, 189  
 Dinkard, Pahlaví treatise, 26, 81  
 Dív, demon (Daéva), 27, 33, 34, 38, 41 *seq.*, 57 *seq.*, 68, 73, 101, 102, 144  
 title of honour, 29  
 = Ahriman, 46, 324, 342, 370, 386, 400



- Div, Black, the, 53  
 White, the, vi, 27, 39 *seq.*,  
 43, 44, 54, 55, 58 *seq.*,  
 66, 93, 163, 373  
 defeats Káuś, 40  
 his blood cures blindness,  
 58, 62  
 song of a, 31  
 Dīvs, white, 27  
 Dragon, slain by Rustam and  
 Rakhsh, 48 *seq.*  
 Drought and famine, in Irán, 363  
 Duncker, Professor, his views as  
 to date of the Zandavasta, 9  
 Dynasty, Kaian, Kaiánian, 7 *seq.*  
 Pishdádian, 9, 336  
 Sásánian, 10

## E

- EGYPT (Misr), 80  
 Ekbatana, city (Hamadán), 191  
 Elburz, mountain. *See* Alburz  
 Elephantine, the (Rustam), 65, 67  
 Elixir, vii, 177, 178  
 Euphrates, river, 80  
 Euxine, sea, 191, 336  
 Eyes, metaphor for children, 297.  
 328

## F

- FAGHFŪR, dynastic title of the  
 princes of Chín and Máchín,  
 383  
 Famine and drought, in Irán, 363  
 Farámarz, son of Rustam, ix, 319,  
 341 *seq.*, 349, 351, 354  
 takes Surkha prisoner, 345  
 Farangís, daughter of Afrásiyáb,  
 wife of Siyáwush, mother  
 of Kai Khusrau, viii *seq.*,  
 188, 288 *seq.*, 299, 306, 373,  
 376 *seq.*, 381, 386 *seq.*  
 identical with Mandane in  
 legend, 191  
 marries Siyáwush, 270 *seq.*  
 summoned to court by Afrá-  
 siyáb, 300 *seq.*

- Farangís, confided in by Siyáwush,  
 307 *seq.*  
 appeals to Afrásiyáb, 317 *seq.*  
 imprisoned, 320  
 sentenced, 322  
 saved and taken charge of  
 by Pírán, 324 *seq.*  
 gives birth to Kai Khusrau,  
 326  
 dwells at Siyáwushgird, 333  
 instructs Kai Khusrau how  
 to find Bilhád, 374  
 gives Giv the mail of Siyá-  
 wush, 376  
 crosses the Jíhún, 392  
 provided for by Kai Káuś, 399  
 Farhád, chieftain, 63 *seq.*, 73, 85,  
 138, 316, 338, 340  
 goes as envoy to the king of  
 Mázandarán, 63  
 takes part in the Fight of the  
 Seven Warriors, 111  
 Faríburz, son of Kai Káuś, x, 62,  
 199, 316, 335, 336, 340, 358,  
 405 *seq.*, 409  
 his encampment described,  
 155  
 his claims to the throne sup-  
 ported by Tús, 401  
 recognises Kai Khusrau as  
 Sháh, 410  
 Farídún, Sháh, 11, 17, 19, 21, 29,  
 33, 36, 37, 99, 193, 195, 204,  
 237, 274, 318, 327, 392, 400,  
 404  
 saying of, 219 and *note*  
 Farshídwad, Túránian hero, 323,  
 summons Pírán to save  
 Farangís, 322  
 Farúd, son of Siyáwush, viii, 291  
 Fight of the Seven Warriors, vi,  
 82  
 Firdausí, ix, 9, 10, 82, 119  
 his geography, 28, 79, 80  
 Professor Darmesteter  
 on, 79, 80  
 proud of his version of the  
 Story of Siyáwush, 188, 191

Fire, ordeal by, vii, 218 *seq.*  
 Firúzi Kuhl, mountain and pass,  
 28  
 Fish, mythological, 15, 299  
 Flying-machine of Kai Káuś, 103  
 Frangrasyan (Afrásiyáb), 81, 189  
 Frásiyáv (Afrásiyáb), 81  
 Fravashí, immortal principle, 82

## G

GANG, stronghold, 241, 261, 309,  
 344, 357, 369  
 sea of, 362  
 Gang-dizh, stronghold, viii, 189,  
 190  
 possible identification of, 189  
 meaning of, 190  
 building and description of,  
 279 *seq.*  
 Gang-i-Siyáwush. *See* Gang-dizh  
 Garsíwaz, brother of Afrásiyáb,  
 viii, 188, 189, 193, 195, 228,  
 231 *seq.*, 249, 253, 264, 268,  
 269, 286, 289 *seq.*, 313 *seq.*  
 defeated by Siyáwush, 229  
*seq.*  
 sues for peace to Siyáwush,  
 237 *seq.*  
 fails to string the bow of  
 Siyáwush, 266  
 visits Siyáwush, 289 *seq.*  
 envies Siyáwush, 292 *seq.*  
 challenges Siyáwush, 294  
 slanders Siyáwush, 296 *seq.*  
 betrays Siyáwush, 301 *seq.*  
 compasses the death of Siyá-  
 wush, 315 *seq.*  
 charged with the execution  
 of Farangís, 322  
 Garshasp, Sháh, 336  
 Gáthas, 8  
 Gazhdaham, Iránian hero, vii, 131,  
 132, 134, 138, 139, 145, 146  
 his description of Suhráb, 136  
 evacuates White Castle, 137  
 Genealogical tables, 3, 4  
 Geography, Firdausí's, 28

Geography, Firdausí's, Professor  
 Darmesteter on, 79, 80  
 Ghundí, a dív, 44, 54, 55, 93  
 Glúr, district, 101  
 Gílán, district, 226, 293  
 Girdáni, Sirdarra, pass, 28  
 Sawachi, pass, 28  
 Giv, Iránian hero, ix, x, 25, 33,  
 35, 38, 39, 58, 62, 70, 73,  
 85, 91, 127, 138 *seq.*, 148,  
 151, 158, 160, 188, 193, 197,  
 271, 318, 319, 335, 338, 340,  
 349, 351, 362, 388 *seq.*  
 harries Mázandarán, 39  
 taken prisoner in Mázan-  
 darán, 40  
 released by Rustam, 58  
 taken prisoner in Háiná-  
 varán, 90  
 released by Rustam, 97  
 goes in search of Kai Káuś, 104  
 takes part in the Fight of the  
 Seven Warriors, 107 *seq.*  
 bears letter from Káuś to  
 Rustam, 139  
 his encampment described,  
 155  
 son-in-law of Rustam, 155  
 helps to saddle Rakhsh for  
 the fight with Suhráb, 160  
 his account of Suhráb, 166  
 quarrels with Tús over the  
 future mother of Siyáwush,  
 194  
 meaning of, 335  
 sent by Gúdarz to seek Kai  
 Khusráw, 364 *seq.*  
 finds Kai Khusráw, 370 *seq.*  
 receives the mail of Siyá-  
 wush, 377  
 his exploits in defence of Kai  
 Khusráw, 378 *seq.*  
 tells how he captured Pírán's  
 wife and sister, 383  
 his wife, 384  
 his sister, 384  
 overthrows Pírán and his  
 host, 385

- Giv, releases Pírán, 387  
 at the Jíhún, 391 *seq.*  
 announces Kai Khusráu's  
 arrival in Irán, 394  
 accompanies Kai Khusráu to  
 Ispahán, 396  
 rewarded by Kai Káuś, 399  
 goes on an embassy to Tús,  
 400  
 bears Kai Khusráu's letter to  
 the castle of Bahman, 408
- Gívgán, Iránian hero, 109, 155
- Glory, the divine. *See* Grace
- Grace, or Glory, the divine, 81,  
 82, 90, 99, 101, 102, 106, 207,  
 209, 265, 283, 289, 302, 327,  
 356, 358, 361, 364, 371, 373.  
*seq.*, 382, 386, 392, 399, 401  
*seq.*, 407 *seq.*
- Greek history and legend in  
 relation to Persian history  
 and legend, 9
- Gúdarz, Iránian hero, ix, x, 33,  
 35, 38, 62, 70, 73, 83, 90, 91,  
 127, 138, 142, 157, 177, 178,  
 193, 250, 286, 290, 316, 318,  
 335, 338, 340, 349, 371 *seq.*,  
 384, 388, 394, 406  
 taken prisoner in Mázan-  
 darán, 40  
 released by Rustam, 58  
 receives Ispahán from Kai  
 Káuś, 78  
 taken prisoner in Hámávarán,  
 90  
 released by Rustam, 97  
 censures Kai Káuś, 105  
 takes part in the Fight of the  
 Seven Warriors, 107 *seq.*  
 mediates between Kai Káuś  
 and Rustam, 144 *seq.*  
 his encampment described,  
 153  
 his sons, 158  
 consoles Siyáwush for his  
 mother's death, 199
- Gúdarz, appointed ruler of Sughd  
 and Sipanjáb, 358  
 returns to Irán, 362  
 sees Surúsh in a dream, 363  
 sends Giv to seek for Kai  
 Khusráu, 364  
 hears of Kai Khusráu's arri-  
 val in Irán, 395  
 welcomes Kai Khusráu and  
 Giv, 396  
 accompanies them to Istakhr,  
 399  
 his dispute with Tús, 400 *seq.*  
 goes with Kai Khusráu to  
 the castle of Bahman, 407
- Gulshahr, wife of Pírán, 269, 275,  
 276, 288, 326, 387, 390
- Gulzaryú, river (the Jaxartes?),  
 358, 381
- Guráza, Iránian hero, 73, 340  
 takes king of Barbar prisoner,  
 97  
 takes part in the Fight of the  
 Seven Warriors, 107 *seq.*  
 his encampment described,  
 155
- Gurdáfríd, daughter of Gazhdah-  
 an, vii, 119, 131 *seq.*, 138  
 beguiles Suhráb, 133
- Gurđya, sister of Bahráam Chu-  
 bína, 119
- Gurgín, Iránian hero, 33, 35, 62,  
 70, 73, 85, 90, 127, 138, 144,  
 316, 340, 394  
 takes part in the Fight of the  
 Seven Warriors, 107 *seq.*
- Gurwí, Turánian hero, ix, 296,  
 314, 319, 338, 340  
 challenges and is overthrown  
 by Siyáwush, 295  
 advocates the execution of  
 Siyáwush, 317  
 carries out the execution of  
 Siyáwush, 320
- Gustaham, son of Gazhdaham,<sup>1</sup>  
 12, 58, 177

<sup>1</sup> This is assumed in all cases where it is doubtful which Gustaham is meant. Cf. vol. i. p. 369.

Gustaham, takes part in the  
Fight of the Seven War-  
riors, 107 *seq.*

Gustaham, son of Nandar, 127,  
336

Gushtásp, Sháh, 9  
in Rám, story of, 10

## H

HAFT Khán, 29

Khván, 29

Mán, 29

Hajir, Iránian hero, vii, 131, 134,  
136, 140, 349  
taken prisoner by Suhráb, 131  
misleads Suhráb, 152 *seq.*  
his life attempted by Rustam,  
176

Hámávarán, country (Yaman), vi,  
25, 78 *seq.*, 93, 94, 96 *seq.*,  
139, 143 *seq.*, 213, 215, 218,  
250

king of, vi, 85 *seq.*, 93, 207 and  
*note*

asks quarter of Rustam,  
97

releases Kai Káuś, 97

Handgrip, as test of strength, 64,  
66, 67

Harát, city, 101

desert of, 228

Harpagus, 190

identical with Píran in  
legend, 191

Haug, his theory of the origin of  
Zoroastrianism, 8

Herodotus, 9

his account of the youth of  
Cyrus the Great, 190

Himyar = Hámávarán (Yaman), 79

Hind, Hindústán, 92, 228, 287, 289

Hindu Kush, 80

Hírbad, keeper of the women's  
house of Kai Káuś, 202, 206

Horses, of Persian royalty, how  
distinguished, 410 *note*

Humái, Sháh, 9, 10

Húmán, 'Túránian hero, vii, 129,  
130, 132, 148, 150, 165, 264,  
390

his account of Rustam, 165,  
169

reproaches Suhráb for sparing  
Rustam, 171

throws the blame for Suhráb's  
death on Hajir, 176

withdraws from Irán under  
safe conduct, 176, 181, 182,  
184

rescues Afrásiyáb from  
Rustam, 354, 355

persuades Afrásiyáb to aban-  
don the pursuit of Kai  
Khusrau, 394

Húshang, Sháh, 204

Hyreania, country (Mázandarán),  
27

## I

IBLÍS, the Muhammadan Devil,  
vi

occasional substitution of for  
Áhriman, 82, 110

Ighrírás, brother of Afrásiyáb, 18,  
20, 303, 304

Indra, god, 25

Indus, river, 21

Íraj, youngest son of Farídún, 8,  
16, 19, 20, 237, 297, 302

Iram, garden of, 78

Írán, vi, ix, 17 *seq.*, 33, 35, 39, 76,  
78 and *passim*

Shahr, 81

fought for by Afrásiyáb and  
the Arabs, 92

invaded by Suhráb, 130

Íránians, the, 9, 20, 27, 42 and  
*passim*

Ispahán, city, x, 394, 399

given to Gúdarz, 78

arrival of Kai Khusrau at,  
396

Ispurúz, mountain, 38, 56, 57

Istakhr, city, v, 11, 22, 28, 399

## J

- JAHN, son of Afrásiyáb, 264, 268  
 Jámásp, chief minister of Sháh  
 Gushításp, 9  
 Jamshíd, Sháh, 33, 37, 168, 204,  
 358, 399  
 Jaríra, daughter of Pírán, wife of  
 Siyáwush, mother of Farúd,  
 188, 269  
   marries Siyáwush, 268 *seq.*  
   birth of her son Farúd, 291  
 Jihún, river (the Oxus), x, 15, 19  
*seq.*, 99, 229, 237, 248, 258,  
 311, 340, 390, 394, 399, 404  
 Jupiter, planet, 115  
 Jnyá, a div, 71  
   slain by Rustam, 72

## K

- KABÁB, small pieces of meat  
 skewered together for roast-  
 ing, 103  
 Kábul, Kábulistán, city and  
 country, 12, 18, 21, 92, 228,  
 260, 271, 341  
 Káchár Báshí, city in Túrán, 258,  
 260, 361  
 Káf, mountain, 83, 404  
 Kai, meaning of, 8  
 Kaian, Kaians, race and dynasty,  
 8, 9, 22, 404  
   birth-mark, 372  
   stature, 375  
 Kaiánian, Kaiánians, race and  
 dynasty, v, 7 *seq.*  
 Kai Arash, son of Kai Kubád, 23,  
 204, 205  
 Kai Armín, son of Kai Kubád, 23  
 Kai Káuís, Sháh, v *seq.*, 8, 10, 11,  
 23 *seq.*, 33 *seq.*, 54 *seq.*, 61  
*seq.*, 109, 110, 117, 127, 129,  
 130, 233, 243 *seq.*, 264, 269  
*seq.*, 273, 284, 286, 290, 296,  
 301, 316, 318, 319, 335, 347,  
 361, 364, 371, 373, 383, 401  
   tempted by divs, 30 *seq.*, 81,  
 102

- Kai Káuís, goes to Mount Káf, 83  
 defeats Afrásiyáb and regains  
 Irán, 100  
 makes Rustam paladin of  
 paladins, 101  
 his buildings on Mount  
 Alburz, 81, 101  
 his flying-machine, 103  
 his fall from the sky, 104  
 his repentance, 105  
 hears of Suhráb and summons  
   his chiefs, 136 *seq.*  
 bids Tús hang Rustam and  
 Giv, 143  
 his apology to Rustam, 147  
 his encampment described,  
 153  
 his camp-enclosure over-  
 thrown by Suhráb, 160  
 refuses to cure Suhráb, 178  
 attempts to console Rustam,  
 181  
 marries the future mother of  
 Siyáwush, 194  
 receives Siyáwush at court, 198  
 bestows Kuhistán upon him,  
 199  
 his conduct in the case of Siyá-  
 wush and Súdába, 200 *seq.*  
 sends Siyáwush to fight  
 Afrásiyáb, 225  
 rejects terms of peace and  
 quarrels with Rustam,  
 244 *seq.*  
 hears of the defection of  
 Siyáwush, 258  
 his grief at the death of  
 Siyáwush, 337  
 hears of Kai Khusráu's arrival  
 in Irán, 395  
 receives him, 397  
 rewards Giv, 399  
 provides for Farangís, 399  
 arbitrates between Tús and  
 Gúdarz, 403 *seq.*  
 welcomes Kai Khusráu on his  
 return from the castle of  
 Bahman, 410

- Kai Khusran, Sháh, ix, x, 9, 25, 104, 189, 190, 310 *seq.*, 334 *seq.*, 336 *seq.*  
 fravashi of, 82  
 identical with Cyrus the Great in legend, 191  
 prophecies respecting, 310, 372, 390  
 birth of, 325 *seq.*  
 account of his youth, 328 *seq.*  
 questioned by Afrásiyâb, 332  
 dwells at Siyâwushgird, 333  
 is sent to Khutan, 356  
   Mâchín, 357 *note*  
 described by Surúsh, 363  
 Gúdarz sends Gív to seek, 364 *seq.*  
 recalled, 370  
 found by Gív, 370  
 shows his birth-mark to Gív, 372  
 saves Pírân's life, 387  
 at the Jihûn, 391 *seq.*  
 arrives at Zam, 394  
 visits Gúdarz at Ispahán, 396  
 tells his story to Kai Káuś, 397  
 praises Gív to Kai Káuś, 398  
 goes to Istakhr, 399  
 enthroned as Sháh, 400, 411  
 supported by Gúdarz and opposed by Tús, 400 *seq.*  
 his letter to the defenders of the castle of Bahman, 407  
 establishes Fire-worship at the castle of Bahman, 409  
 pardons Tús, 410
- Kai Knbád, Sháh, v, 8, 11, 12, 14, 16, 18 *seq.*, 26, 33, 34, 36, 37, 87, 143, 144, 249, 260, 270, 274, 327, 336, 363, 390, 394  
 his origin, 11 and *note*  
 makes peace with Afrásiyâb, 20  
 his gifts to Zál and Rustam, 21
- Kai Pashín, son of Kai Kubád, 23, 204, 205
- Kaláhúr, a div, 67
- Kalât-i-Nadíri, a stronghold, 189
- Kalír, mountain, 328
- Kangdez (Gang-dizh), 189, 190
- Kangha, country (Kharazm), 189, 190
- Káran, Iránian hero, 11 *seq.*, 18, 22, 119
- Kargasárs, tribe, 98
- Karímán, Iránian hero, father of Narímán, 125
- Kashmír, country, 271, 338
- Káuś. *See* Kai Káuś
- Kavi (Kai), 8, 25  
   Usa, 25
- Kávyân (Kaian), 8  
   Ushaná, 25
- Káwa, flag of, 12, 227, 341, 349, 354, 400, 402, 405, 406, 410
- Kercasavasda (Garsiwaz), 189
- Kharazm, country (Khiva), 189, 190
- Kharazmians, people, 190
- Kharrád, Iránian hero, 11, 22, 33, 73, 340
- Kharzarwán, Túránian hero, 18
- Khatá, region in Túrân, 357
- Khazar, region, 285
- Khiva, country (Kharazm), 190
- Khshathró - saoka, stronghold (Gang-dizh), 189, 190
- Khurásán, province of Irán, 399
- Khusrau. *See* Kai Khusrau
- Khutan, region in Túrân, ix, 277, 288, 325, 357, 383
- Kishwád, Iránian hero, 11, 12, 18, 22, 33, 70, 73, 107, 112, 138, 318, 384, 399, 404, 409
- Kubád, Sháh. *See* Kai Knbád
- Kúch, region, 226
- Kuhistán, Transoxania (Má wara 'n'n-Nahr), 199
- Kuhram, Túránian hero, 349
- Knbád, Túránian hero, ix, 18, 264, 388  
 his death and revival in legend, 119  
 pursues Kai Khusrau, 377 *seq.*
- Kum, city in Irán, 399
- Kunár, cape, 103 and *note*

## L

- LAHHAK, Túránian hero, 323 *note*  
summons Pírán to save Farangís, 322  
Leo, constellation, 405  
Luhrás, Sháh, 9

## M

- MÁCHÍN (China), 357 *note*, 370, 394  
Machine, flying, of Kai Kátús, 103  
Magi, priests of the Medes, 190  
advocates of next-of-kin marriage, 189  
Makrán, country (Balúchistán), 80, 82  
Malcolm, Sir John, his version of Sahráb, 118  
Man, of Sigz (Rustam), 100 and *note*  
Manda, empire of the, = empire of the Medes, 191  
Mandane, daughter of Astyages, 190  
identical with Farangís in legend, 191  
Mání, heresiarch, 19 *note*  
Manicheism, 19 *note*  
Mark, birth, of the Kaian race, 372  
Marriage, next-of-kin (Khvairák-das), 189  
Mars, planet, 247, 407  
Marv, city, 101  
Marvrúd, river, 228  
Mashad, city, 189  
Má wara 'u'n-Nahr (Kuhistán, Transoxania), 19, 199  
Mázana (Mázandarán), 28  
Mázandarán, country (Hyrcania), v, vi, 25 *seq.*, 33, 34, 36 *seq.*, 45, 55, 60 *seq.*, 66 *seq.*, 75, 76, 78, 81, 93, 105, 139, 143 *seq.*, 293

- Mázandarán, approach to from Irán, 28  
description of, 27  
king of, vi, 39, 43, 54, 62 *seq.*  
his interview with Rustam, 67  
his fight with Rustam, 73  
turns himself into a rock, 74  
death of, 75  
Mazda, Ahura (Urmuzd), 81  
Medes, empire of the, = empire of the Manda, 191  
Median, empire, 9  
Mihráb, king of Kábul, 12, 14, 18, 21  
Minúchihir, Sháh, 19, 29, 33, 36, 37, 302, 318, 400  
Misr (Egypt), 79, 80, 84, 94, 96, 143, 286  
king of, 94, 95, 98  
Mithridates I., 80  
Muhammad, the Prophet, 337 *note*  
Mytilene, Chares of, 10

## N

- NARIMÁN, Iránian hero, father of Sám, 49, 115, 119, 125, 126, 162, 354  
Narnpái, name of a tribe, 55 and *note*, 63, 64  
Nárwau, forest of, 341  
Nastihán, Túránian hero, ix, 264  
pursues Kai Khusráu, 377 *seq.*  
Naudar, Sháh, 20, 36, 70, 153, 336, 400, 404  
Nawand, place, 107  
Néryósang, 82  
Nile, river, 96, 153, 217, 310, 402  
Nimrúz, country,<sup>1</sup> 21, 34, 69, 77, 80, 84, 338, 395  
Nishápúr, city, 101

## O

- ORDEAL by fire, 218 *seq.*  
Ox of Kai Kátús, 26  
Oxus, river (Jílúin), 190

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 396 *note*.

## P

PAHLAV, district, 77, 102  
 Pahlaví, texts, 27  
 Párs, country, v, 23, 28, 76, 101,  
 226, 275, 286, 362, 410  
 Parthian kingdom, 80  
 Pashang, ruler of Túrán, v, 11,  
 13, 18, 20, 21, 297, 401  
 Paurúshasp, 9  
 Persia, 191  
 Persian, empire, 9  
     history and legend in rela-  
     tion to Greek history and  
     legend, 9  
 Persians, 190  
 Phosphor, morning star, 123  
 Phraates II., 80, 81  
 Pilsan, Túránian hero, vi, ix,  
 112 *seq.*, 320, 323 *note*, 350  
*seq.*  
     pleads for Siyáwush, 315  
     summons Pírán to save  
     Farangís, 322  
 Pírán, Túránian hero, viii *seq.*,  
 112, 188, 257 *seq.*, 264, 277,  
 278, 282 *seq.*, 291, 311, 315,  
 316, 322 *seq.*, 335, 350, 370,  
 377, 379 *seq.*, 397, 398  
     identical with Harpagus in  
     legend, 191  
     advises Afrásiyáb to receive  
     Siyáwush, 253 *note* and *seq.*  
     goes to welcome Siyáwush,  
     258 *seq.*  
     arranges marriages for Siyá-  
     wush, 268 *seq.*  
     entertains Siyáwush, 278  
     offers to help Siyáwush to  
     build Gang-dizh, 278  
     the prophecy of Siyáwush to,  
     282 *seq.*  
     goes to collect tribute, 285  
     visits Siyáwush, 287  
         Afrásiyáb, 288  
     summoned to save Farangís,  
     322 *seq.*  
     pleads for Farangís, 324

Pírán, takes charge of Farangís, 325  
     his dream of Siyáwush, 325  
     protects the infant Kai  
     Khusráu, 326  
     advises Afrásiyáb respecting  
     Kai Khusráu, 356  
     sends Kulbád and Nastihán  
     to pursue Kai Khusráu, 377  
     overthrown with his host by  
     Gív, 385  
     appeals to Kai Khusráu, 386  
     released, 387  
     describes Gív's prowess to  
     Afrásiyáb, 389  
     disgraced, 390  
     retires to Khutan, 390  
 Pisces, constellation, 407  
 Pishdádian dynasty, 9, 336  
 Pleiads, Pleiades, 148, 282, 394, 408  
 Polo, game of, viii, 263 *seq.*, 292  
 Pronunciation, *note* on, 6  
 Pseudo - Callisthenes, romantic  
     Greek history of Alexander  
     the Great, 9  
 Púlád, Túránian hero, 264  
 Púlád, Iránian hero, 22  
 Púlád, a div, 44, 54, 55, 64, 93  
 Pun-t (Berbera), 79

## R

RAKISH, Rustam's steed, v, 13,  
 42 *seq.*, 67, 74, 94, 97, 110,  
 116, 139, 143, 160, 311, 354  
     slays a lion, 45  
     encounters a dragon, 48  
     stolen by Turkmans, 121 *seq.*  
     sire of Suhráb's charger, 128  
     saddled by Gív, Rukhám, and  
     Tús for the fight with  
     Suhráb, 160  
 Rai, city, 23, 399  
 Ram, Rustam's life saved by a, 46  
 Ram, constellation, 299  
 Red Sea, 364  
 Rizwán, angel, 39 and *note*, 288  
 Rúdába, the mother of Rustam,  
 44, 180



- Ruhhám, Iránian hero, 62, 73, 144, 158, 340  
 helps to saddle Rakhsh for the fight with Suhráb, 160
- Rúin, son of Afrásiyáb, 264
- Ráin, son of Pinín, 323 and *note*
- Rám, the Eastern Roman Empire, 143, 297, 307, 360
- Rustam, Iránian hero, *v seq.*, 11  
*seq.*, 18, 21, 25, 34, 35, 42  
*seq.*, 79, 92 *seq.*, 188, 236, 237, 271, 286, 290, 311, 316, 318, 319, 335, 344 *seq.*, 349  
*seq.*, 371, 372, 380, 394, 400  
 his first campaign, 11 *seq.*  
 nearly takes Afrásiyáb prisoner, 14, 116, 354  
 rewarded by Kai Kubád, 21  
 his life saved by a ram, 46  
 song of, 51  
 resenes Kai Káuś in Mázandarán, 58  
 his handgrip, 66, 67  
 his encounter with Kaláhur, 67  
 his audience with the king of Mázandarán, 67 *seq.*  
 his encounter with Juyá, 71  
 his encounter with the king of Mázandarán, 73  
 rewarded by Kai Káuś, 77  
 entertains Kai Káuś, 83  
 takes the king of Shám prisoner, 97  
 defeats Afrásiyáb, 100  
 made paladin of paladins by Kai Káuś, 101  
 goes in search of Kai Káuś, 104  
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, 107 *seq.*  
 slays Alkús, 115  
 and Suhráb, Story of, 118 *seq.*  
 loses Rakhsh, 121  
 Afrásiyáb's plot against, 129  
 holds a drinking-bout, 141  
 quarrels with Kai Káuś, 142
- Rustam, reconciled by Gúdarz, 144 *seq.*  
 goes in disguise to see Suhráb, 149  
 his adventure with Zhanda Razm, 149 *seq.*  
 his account of Suhráb, 151, 166  
 his encampment described, 154  
 armed by Tús, Gív, and Ruhhám for his fight with Suhráb, 160  
 challenges Suhráb, 161  
 his charge to Zawára, 167  
 declines Suhráb's advances, 169  
 saves his life by a ruse, 170  
 prays that his strength may be restored, 171  
 learns too late that Suhráb is his son, 173  
 his grief, 173 *seq.*  
 makes a truce with Hámán, 176  
 tries to slay Hajír, 176  
 himself, 177  
 brings up Siyáwush, 196  
 marches with him against Afrásiyáb, 225 *seq.*  
 returns and quarrels with Kai Káuś, 242 *seq.*  
 his grief and wrath at the death of Siyáwush, 338 *seq.*  
 puts Surkha to death, 346  
 fights with the Turániains, 349 *seq.*  
 appoints Tús ruler of Cháeh, 358  
 appoints Gúdarz ruler of Sughd and Sipanjáb, 358  
 his daughter, 383, 384  
 his wife, 384  
 hears of Kai Khusráu's arrival in Irán, 395
- Rustum and Suhráb, Matthew Arnold's, 118

## S

SAGSÁR, district, 143  
 Sakláb, country (Slavonia), 360  
 Salm, eldest son of Farídán, 19,  
 237, 318  
 Sám, Iránian hero, father of Zál,  
 16, 17, 33, 34, 49, 125, 126,  
 137, 140, 173, 182, 183  
 Samangán, city in Túrán, vi, 118,  
 121 *seq.*, 130, 140  
 king of, vi, 118, 140, 184  
 entertains Rustam, 122  
 father of Zhanda Razm,  
 150  
 Samarkand, city (Sughd), 241  
 Sanja, a div, 39, 40, 44, 55  
 Sarakhs, city, 108  
 Sarúch, desert, 226  
 Sásánian dynasty, 10  
 Saturn, planet, 183, 208, 215, 247,  
 263, 310, 319, 394, 407  
 Seleucia, city, on the Tigris, 80  
 Semiramis, 10  
 Seven climes, the, 15 *note*, 372  
 Seven Courses of Rustam, v. 44 *seq.*  
 Seven Warriors, Fight of the, vi,  
 25, 82, 107 *seq.*  
 Sháha, city in Hámávarán, 89  
 Shahd, river, 108  
 Sháhnáma, editions of, 5  
 Shahr-Bánú-Iram, Gív's sister  
 and Rustam's wife, 384  
 Shám (Syria), 80, 84  
 king of, taken prisoner by  
 Rustam, 97  
 Shamásás, Túránian hero, 12, 18  
 Shápúr, Iránian hero, 271, 338, 340  
 Sháwarán, Iránian hero, 73, 90,  
 111, 228, 249, 250, 255, 271, 318  
 Shepherds, Kai Khnsrau brought  
 up by, 328 *seq.*  
 Shidúsh, Iránian hero, 58, 85, 158,  
 340  
 Sigz, man of (Rustam), 100 and *note*  
 Sikandar (Alexander the Great),  
 8 *seq.*

Sind, river (the Indus), 285  
 Sipahram, Túránian hero, 228,  
 229, 388  
 Sipand, mountain (White Castle),  
 118  
 Sipanjáb, region, 241, 342, 344,  
 345, 358  
 Sístán, country,<sup>1</sup> 80, 335, 365  
 Siyáwush, son of Kai Káuś, vii  
*seq.*, 25, 104 *note*, 187 *seq.*,  
 335, 338 *seq.*, 346 *seq.*, 363,  
 371, 372, 374 *seq.*, 383, 386,  
 388, 396, 403, 411  
 his mother, vii  
 Story of, 188 *seq.*  
 Prelude to, 191  
 good example of Fir-  
 dausi's method, 188  
 identical with Cambyzes, the  
 father of Cyrus, in legend,  
 191  
 adventure of the mother of,  
 193  
 destined to misfortune from  
 birth, 196  
 brought up by Rustam, 196  
 returns to court, 197  
 made ruler of Kuhistán, 199  
 mourns for his mother's  
 death, 199  
 his temptation by Súdába,  
 200 *seq.*  
 marches against Afrásiyáb,  
 225 *seq.*  
 demands hostages of Afrási-  
 yáb, 239 *seq.*  
 goes over to Afrásiyáb, 258  
*seq.*  
 plays at polo with Afrásiyáb,  
 264  
 his archery, 266, 293  
 his marriage with Jaríra, 268  
*seq.*  
 his marriage with Farangís,  
 270 *seq.*  
 entertained by Pírán, 278  
 builds cities, 278 *seq.*

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 396 *note*.

Siyáwush, foretells the future to  
 Pírán, 282 *seq.*  
 entertains Pírán, 287  
 entertains Garsíwaz, 290 *seq.*  
 plays at polo with Garsíwaz,  
 292  
 challenged by Garsíwaz, 294  
 overthrows Gurwí and  
 Dámúr, 295  
 slandered by Garsíwaz to  
 Afrásiyáb, 296 *seq.*  
 summoned to court by  
 Afrásiyáb, 300 *seq.*  
 betrayed by Garsíwaz, 301 *seq.*  
 excuses himself from going  
 to court, 306  
 his passion, 307 *seq.*  
 foretells the future to Far-  
 angís, 310  
 charges and turns loose  
 Bihzád, 312  
 attacked and taken by  
 Afrásiyáb, 314  
 his execution, 320  
 Blood of (plant), 321  
 Siyáwush, wild duck, 104 *note*  
 Siyáwakhsh (Siyáwush), 82  
 Syáwashána (Siyáwush), 189  
 Siyáwushgird, city, viii, ix, 301,  
 314, 373  
 building and description of,  
 285 *seq.*  
 becomes the home of Kai  
 Khusrau, 333  
 Sohrab and Rustam, Matthew  
 Arnold's, 118  
 Soma, 8  
 Song of a div, 31  
 of Rustam, 51  
 Sorceress, Súdába and a, vii, 214  
 Spendyád, mountain, 118  
 Spentódáta, mountain, 118  
 Stages, the Seven, of Asfandiyár, 29  
 Stone, the Black, 163 and *note*  
 Strength, handgrip as test of, 64,  
 66, 67  
 Súdába, daughter of the king of  
 Hámávarán and wife of Kai

Káús, vi, vii, ix, 79, 86  
*seq.*, 91, 188, 189, 200 *seq.*,  
 225, 249, 257, 335, 339  
 description of, 86  
 marries Kai Káús, 88  
 imprisoned with him by her  
 father, 91  
 released by Rustam, 97  
 her temptation of Siyáwush,  
 200 *seq.*  
 slain by Rustam, 340  
 Sughd, district and city (Samar-  
 kand), 230, 232, 237, 241, 249,  
 358  
 Suhráb, son of Rustam and  
 Tahmína, vi, vii, 25  
 Story of, 118 *seq.*  
 purely episodic, 118  
 Prelude to, 119  
 Sir John Malcolm's ver-  
 sion of, 118  
 Matthew Arnold's ver-  
 sion of, 118  
 his lament for the loss of  
 Gurdáfrid, 119 *note*  
 questions his mother as to  
 his father, 126  
 his charger sired by Rakhsh,  
 128  
 Afrásiyáb's plot against, 129  
 gifts to, 130  
 invades Irán, 130  
 takes Hajir prisoner, 131  
 beguiled by Gurdáfrid, 133  
 described by Gazhdaham, 136  
 sees from White Castle the  
 Iránian host advancing,  
 148  
 seen, while feasting, by  
 Rustam, 150  
 hears of the death of Zhanda  
 Razm, 151  
 misled by Hajir, 152 *seq.*  
 overthrows the camp-enclo-  
 sure of Káús, 160  
 challenged by Rustam, 161  
 his account of Rustam, 154,  
 169

Suhráb, his advances to Rustam, 169  
 spares Rustam's life, 170  
 again encounters Rustam, 172  
 makes himself known to Rustam, 173  
 his last requests to Rustam, 175  
 the mourning for, 182 *seq.*  
 Surkha, son of Afrásiyáb, ix, 344 *seq.*  
 taken prisoner by Farámarz, 345  
 death of, 347  
 Surúsh, angel, 288, 289, 364, 408  
 appears to Gúdarz in a dream, 363  
 Syria (Shám), 80

## T

TABLE of Contents, v  
 Tables, genealogical, 3, 4  
 Talmásp, 11  
 Talmína, mother of Suhráb, vi, 118  
 her precautions for her son's safety, 127, 140, 149  
 her mourning for Suhráb, 184 *seq.*  
 her death, 186  
 Talmúras, Sháh, 168  
 Tálikán, city, 228  
 Taráz, city and district, 123  
 Idols of, 123, 206  
 Tihrán, city, 28  
 Tirmid, place where the route from Balkh to Samarkand crosses the Oxus (Jihún), 229, 258  
 Tollman, Giv and the, x, 390  
 Thraétaona (Farídún), 81  
 Túr, second son of Farídún, 8, 17, 19, 99, 237, 262, 297, 302, 303, 318, 327, 363, 390  
 Túrán, v, ix, 9, 18, 25, 79, 82, 101, 112, and *passim*

Túrán, king of Chín and (Afrásiyáb), 99  
 host of, 110  
 Túránians (Turkmans), the, vi, 11, 81, 265  
 Turkestán, 19  
 Turkmans (Túránians), the, 12, 14, 15, 92, 100 and *passim*  
 Tús, son of Nandar, x, 33, 35, 38, 58, 62, 70, 73, 85, 90, 91, 127, 138, 142, 143, 148, 177, 188, 193, 197, 199, 226, 257, 316, 319, 335, 338, 340, 349, 353 *seq.*, 371, 383, 394  
 appointed captain of the host, 78  
 taken prisoner in Hámavarán, 90  
 released by Rustam, 97  
 goes in search of Kai Káuś, 104  
 engaged in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, 107 *seq.*  
 commanded by Káuś to hang Rustam and Giv, 143  
 his encampment described, 153  
 summons Rustam to fight Suhráb and helps to saddle Rakhsh, 160  
 quarrels with Giv over the future mother of Siyáwush, 194  
 supersedes Siyáwush, 246 *seq.*  
 leads the host home, 258  
 intercedes for Surkha, 347  
 is worsted in fight by Afrásiyáb, 353  
 appointed ruler of Chách, 358  
 returns to Yrán, 362  
 his dispute with Gúdarz over Kai Khusrau, 400 *seq.*  
 advocates the claims of Fariburz, 401  
 asks pardon of Khusrau, 410  
 Tuwurg, Túránian hero, 253

## U

- ÚLÁD, a div, v, 28, 52 *seq.*, 59, 61  
made king of Mázarán, 76  
Urmuzd, the Good Principle, 82

## V

- VEDAS, 8, 11, 25  
Venus, planet, 115, 275, 345  
Verethraghna, the raven, 25  
Vritra, demon, 25

## W

- WARÁZÁD, king of Sipanjáb, ix,  
341 *seq.*, 346  
Warriors, the Seven, Story of the  
Fight of, vi, 25, 82, 107 *seq.*  
White Castle, Iránian stronghold,  
vii, 118, 131, 138  
evacuated by Gazhdaham, 137  
Div. *See* Div  
Wisa, Túránian hero, 112, 354  
Witch, v, 50

## Y

- YAMAN, country (Hámávarán), 80  
carnelians of, 123  
Canopus of, 203

## Z

- ZÁBUL, Zábulistan, country,<sup>1</sup> vii,  
21, 28, 42, 61, 83, 92, 126,  
138, 141, 142, 156, 168, 227,  
228, 245, 260, 338, 362, 363  
vintage of, 110  
Zahhák, Sháh, 33, 81, 318  
saying of, 171 and *note*  
Zainigan, 81

Záinigáv, 81

Zál, father of Rustam, v, 11 *seq.*,  
18, 19, 21, 33 *seq.*, 49, 58,  
61, 62, 69, 77, 140, 168, 169,  
180, 182, 227, 228, 271, 286,  
290, 318, 319, 338, 362, 371

Zam, city and river, 97, 394, 395  
Zandavasta, 8, 25 *seq.*, 81, 118,  
189, 190

Zanga, Iránian hero, viii, 73, 90,  
228, 249, 271, 318  
takes part in the Fight of the  
Seven Warriors, 107 *seq.*  
accompanies Siyáwush  
against Afrásiyáb, 226  
sent on embassy to Afrásiyáb,  
250 *seq.*

Zardushst (Zoroaster), 8, 9

Zav, Sháh, 11, 36

Zawára, brother of Rustam, ix,  
96, 228, 347, 349  
engaged in the Fight of the  
Seven Warriors, 110 *seq.*  
made leader of Rustam's  
host, 142

left in charge of Rustam's  
host, 161

goes on embassy to Húmán,  
176

safe-conducts Húmán from  
Írán, 176, 181, 182

incites Rustam to avenge  
Siyáwush, 360

Zhanda Razm, maternal uncle of  
Suhráb, vii, 149 *seq.*, 160

Zinigáv, 81

Zira, Túránian hero, 295, 314

Zirih, sea or lake, 80

Zú'lfakar, 337 and *note*

<sup>1</sup> See vol. i. p. 396 *note*.

END OF VOL. II.

Printed by BALLANTYNE, HANSON & Co.  
Edinburgh & London